

GEORGE R.



GEORGE, by the Grace of God, King of Great-Britain, France and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. To all to whom these Presents shall come, Greeting. Whereas Our Trusty and Well-beloved *Samuel Buckley*, Citizen and Stationer of our City of *London*, has humbly represented unto Us, that he is now printing a Book written by Our Trusty and Well-beloved *Humphrey Bland*, Esq; Lieutenant-Colonel of our own Regiment of Horse, Intitled, *A Treatise of Military Discipline; in which is laid down and explained the Duty of the Officer and Soldier, thro' the several Branches of the Service*: And whereas the said *Samuel Buckley* has informed Us, that he has been at a great Expence in carrying on the said Work, and that the sole Right and Title of the Copy of the said Book is vested in the said *Samuel Buckley*; he has therefore humbly besought Us to grant him our Royal Privilege and Licence for the sole Printing and Publishing thereof, for the Term of Fourteen Years: We, being willing to give Encouragement to so useful a Work, are pleased to condescend to his Request, and do therefore hereby, so far as may be agreeable to the Statute in that Behalf made and provided, grant unto the said *Samuel Buckley* our Royal Licence for the sole Printing and Publishing the said Book, for and during the Term of Fourteen Years, to be computed from the Day of the Date hereof; strictly prohibiting all our Subjects within Our Kingdoms and Dominions to reprint or abridge the same, either in the like or in any other Volume or Volumes whatsoever; or to import, buy, vend, utter or distribute any Copies of the same, or any Part thereof, reprinted beyond the Seas, within the said Term of Fourteen Years, without the Consent and Approbation of the said *Samuel Buckley*, his Heirs, Executors, and Assigns, by Writing under his or their Hands and Seals first had and obtained, as they and every of them offending herein will answer the contrary at their Perils. Whereof the Master, Wardens, and Company of Stationers of Our City of *London*, Commissioners and other Officers of our Customs, and all other Our Officers and Ministers whom it may concern, are to take Notice, that due Obedience be given to Our Pleasure herein signified. Given at Our Court at *St. James's* the Twenty-fourth Day of *April* 1727, in the Thirteenth Year of our Reign.

By His Majesty's Command.

HOLLES NEWCASTLE.

A. GEORGE R.

TREATISE

OF

Military Discipline;

In which is Laid down and Explained

The Duty of the Officer and Soldier,
'Thro' the several Branches of the SERVICE.

By **HUMPHREY BLAND**, Esq;
Major-General of His Majesty's Forces.

The SIXTH EDITION.

In omni Prælio non tam Multitudo & Virtus indocta, quam Ars & Exercitium solent præstare Victoriæ. Vegetius, Lib. 1.



LONDON, Printed for JOHN and PAUL KNAPTON in
Ludgate-Street; SAM. BIRT, in Ave-Mary-Lane; and
T. LONGMAN and T. SHEWELL in Pater-Noster-Row.

M DCC XLVI.

TO THE

KING



218.

Most Humbly beg
Your Majesty
Pardon for laying
this Treatise at Your
Feet; which I presume to do
upon no other Foundation, than
that of my Zeal for your Ser-
vice: And I hope, from Your
Majesty

TO THE
K I N G.

S I·R,



Most Humbly beg
Your MAJESTY'S
Pardon for laying
this Treatise at Your
Feet ; which I presume to do
upon no other Foundation, than
that of my Zeal for your Ser-
vice : And I hope, from Your

DEDICATION.

MAJESTY's known Goodness,
that you will be pleased to excuse
its Errors, since the only Motive
I had for Writing it, was the
Desire I have every Way to ap-
prove myself,

May it please Your most
Sacred MAJESTY,

Your Majesty's most Humble,

Most Obedient, and

Most Devoted,

Subject and Servant,

Humphrey Bland.



PREFACE.

FROM the great Reputation of the British Arms, Men would be apt to imagine, that several Treatises, of the Art of War, were to be met with in our Language; but when they come to enquire, they will be strangely surprized to find nothing of this Kind of our Native Growth, that I know of, except what has been left by the Earl of Orrery, who wrote fifty Years ago: And tho' his Writings might have been very instructive at that Time, yet so many Improvements have been since made, (several Instances of which I could easily produce, were there an Occasion) that they can be but of very little Use, at present, to young Officers, for whose Sake chiefly, this Book is published.

P R E F A C E.

As the Nation has abounded with Officers, whose Services leave no Doubt of their Abilities to perform a Work of this Nature, it must be supposed that their Indolence, or their imagining no Want of it, was the Reason that nothing of this Kind has hitherto appeared : But considering how few old Officers remain, and that they are diminishing every Day, I hope I shall not be censured for having ventured to commit to Writing the little Knowledge I have acquir'd in Military Matters, for the Instruction of those who are yet to learn ; who, in a little Time longer, if they have no Opportunity of going Abroad, and wanting the Example of old Officers to guide them, may not think it useless to have Recourse to this Account of their Duty, however imperfect it may be.

I am well aware how little Thanks some People may think I deserve for this Attempt ; and am very sensible that Standing Armies, and consequently the modelling of them, are little relished in Time of Peace in this Kingdom ; and, I must own, as much a Soldier as I am,
not

P R E F A C E.

not to be desired, if we can preserve our King, our Trade, (and, I had almost said, our Civil Government) without them : But such is the State of the World at present, that, I doubt, it will be in vain to flatter ourselves with the Hopes of opposing our Militia to Troops who have the Advantage of Discipline on their Side : Neither are our Treaties nor Alliances (as appears by Proofs too recent) sufficient without the Ratio Ultima : And, I believe, it is a true Observation, that First or Last, Force has been the conclusive Argument of most Treaties, and those have been found the best, which have been supported by the best Troops.

I have, throughout my Book, taken every Occasion to inculcate the Necessity of Legal Military Subordination. It has been the Practice of all Nations, Ancient and Modern, even where the People have been blessed with the highest Liberty, never to admit of a Military Independance upon their Military Superiors : I look upon it as the Band which ties the whole together, and without it all other Rules and Forms

P R E F A C E.

to be of no Use. Perhaps it is the great Distinction between Regular Troops and Militia, and the Cause why the Former have always had the Advantage over the Latter.

I know it will be objected, that the better our Troops are, the more dangerous they may be; and I confess the Objection to be of so great Weight, that it fits not me to enter into the Question: All that I am pleading for, is, that as long as it shall be thought necessary to keep up a Body of Regular Troops, those Troops may be put upon such a Foot as may answer the End, and the sole End, which is expected from them by the Publick. Give me Leave to add, to the Honour of the Officers, that more Instances than One might be given, when, instead of being those servile Tools, (which is so much apprehended) of bringing their Country into Slavery, they have Behaved themselves with a Zeal for its Liberty, equal, I think, with the best Englishman; if exposing themselves and Families to the Hazard of Starving, may be allowed to be an Instance of it.

CON-



CONTENTS.

CHAP I.

Directions for the Forming of Battalions, Posting of Officers, &c.

ARTICLE I.

D irections to the Officers and Soldiers about Parading of Companies.	Page 1
About the Sizing of Men, and Method of doing it.	2
In what Manner the Companies are to march to the General Parade.	ibid.
How the Companies are to draw up in Battalion, with a Plan of the same.	3
The old Way of compleating of Files rejected, and a new Method proposed.	ibid.
Directions for the drawing up of the Company of Granadiers.	4
ARTICLE II. How the Officers take their Posts in Battalion.	ibid.
How the Serjeants, Hautboys, and Drummers are to be posted.	5
How the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel are to post themselves.	ibid.
No Officer to be absent without Leave when the Battalion draws out.	ibid.
ARTICLE III. Method of sending for the Colours.	6
Compliment paid to the Colours.	ibid.
How the Colours may be brought by the Field-Officers Companies.	8
Method of Lodging the Colours.	ibid.
The Battalion told off into Divisions, and the Officers appointed to them.	9
ARTICLE IV. Directions for the Opening of Files, with proper Rules for the doing of it both for the Officers and Private Soldiers.	ibid.
Distances of Ranks and Files.	10
ARTICLE V. How the Officers are to take their Posts in the Rear by Beat of Drum.	14
	How

C O N T E N T S.

<i>How they are to return to the Front by Beat of Drum.</i>	Page 15
<i>How it is to be perform'd by Word of Command.</i>	16
ARTICLE VI. <i>Directions for the Closing of Files.</i>	ibid.
<i>Manner of dismissing of the Battalion after Exercise.</i>	17
<i>How the Officers are to march the Companies with clubb'd Arms.</i>	ibid.
<i>The Major and Adjutant to exercise the Regiment on Horseback.</i>	ibid.
<i>Other Officers, when order'd, to exercise it on Foot.</i>	ibid.
<i>Directions to those who exercise the Regiment.</i>	18
<i>Instructions for delivering of the Words of Command.</i>	ibid.
<i>Position of a Soldier under Arms.</i>	ibid.

C H A P. II.

<i>Of the Words of Command of the Manual Exercise of the Foot, with an Explanation.</i>	19
---	----

C H A P. III.

<i>Manual Exercise of the Granadiers, with an Explanation.</i>	34
--	----

C H A P. IV.

<i>Evolutions of the Foot, with an Explanation, and General Rules for Wheeling.</i>	41
---	----

C H A P. V.

Of Passing in Review.

ARTICLE I. <i>The Companies to be inspected before the Review.</i>	56
ARTICLE II. <i>When the Regiment is form'd, what is necessary to be done before the General comes to review it.</i>	ibid.
<i>Compliment to be paid the General who Reviews.</i>	ibid.
<i>Directions for the Facing of the Regiment.</i>	57
	Offi-

CONTENTS:

<i>Officers to remain in the Front, when the General passes along the Rear.</i>	Page 58
ARTICLE III. <i>After the Regiment has been review'd Standing, what further Ceremonies are commonly perform'd.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE IV. <i>How the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel are to post themselves during the Exercise.</i>	59
<i>The Major to exercise the Regiment on Horseback though he should command it.</i>	ibid.
<i>When a Captain commands the Regiment, how he is to proceed.</i>	ibid.
<i>How the Hautboys, Drummers and Serjeants on the Flanks are to post themselves during the Exercise.</i>	ibid.
<i>Officer who exercises not to find Fault before the General.</i>	60
ARTICLE V. <i>After the Exercise how they are to march by the General.</i>	ibid.
<i>What Grand and Sub-Divisions are.</i>	ibid.
<i>How they are to march by Grand and Sub-Divisions.</i>	61
<i>Manner of posting the Officers to them.</i>	ibid.
<i>Directions about Saluting.</i>	ibid.
<i>How they are to pass by in Companies.</i>	63
<i>When they have passed by the General, to draw up on their former Ground.</i>	64
ARTICLE VI. <i>When the Regiment marches off from the Left, how the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel are to post themselves.</i>	ibid.

CHAP. VI.

Consisting of Directions for the different Firings of the Foot.

ARTICLE I. <i>How the Battalion is to be form'd to go through the Firings.</i>	65
<i>Bayonets may be fix'd or not at common Exercise.</i>	66
<i>Telling off the Platoons, and what Number of Files they consist of.</i>	ibid.
<i>Officers to command the Platoons, and Manner of Posting them.</i>	ibid.
<i>The rest of the Officers fall in the Rear, and Reason why.</i>	ibid.
<i>Platoons divided into several Firings, and Number each Firing commonly consists of.</i>	67
<i>Platoons of each placed in different Parts of the Battalion, and Reasons for it.</i>	ibid.

ARTICLE

CONTENTS.

ARTICLE II. <i>Manner of dividing the Platoons in different Parts of the Battalion.</i>	Page 68
<i>Three Plans, shewing how it is generally done.</i>	69, 70, 71
<i>Words of Command of the Platoon Exercise, with an Explanation.</i>	72
<i>Necessary Care in the making up of the Cartridges.</i>	73
<i>Inconveniencies that may attend their not being ramm'd down.</i>	ibid.
<i>The Major to be exact in the Telling off the Platoons, and the Officers to be thoroughly inform'd of their Firing and Number.</i>	74
<i>Method to try if they know it, to prevent Mistakes in the Execution.</i>	ibid.
<i>The whole to be inform'd in what Manner they are to fire.</i>	ibid.
<i>Whether Standing, Advancing, or Retiring, or all three; and if the Platoons of each Firing are to fire in their Order (and what is meant by their Order) or together.</i>	ibid.
<i>If to proceed by Beat of Drum, what Beatings the Major will use.</i>	ibid.
<i>Common Beatings used, and what is generally perform'd at each.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE III. <i>Directions to fire Standing, which is perform'd in their Order.</i>	75
<i>Directions to the Officers who command the Platoons in giving the Words of Command.</i>	76
<i>How to go through the Firings Advancing, and to vary it from the other, in which the Major is to give the Words of Command.</i>	77
<i>Directions to fire Retiring, and to finish with the Whole.</i>	78
ARTICLE IV. <i>Method of going through the Firings without Halting of the Battalion.</i>	79
<i>Danger which may attend it; particularly in Retiring.</i>	80
<i>For what Number of Men the Plans are calculated.</i>	81
ARTICLE V. <i>Directions for the Firing by Ranks, with Remarks on it.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE VI. <i>Parapet Firing, on what Occasion used, with the Method of performing it.</i>	83
ARTICLE VII. <i>Street-Firing, when used, and how perform'd at Exercise.</i>	86
ARTICLE VIII. <i>Running-Fire or Feu de Joye, how perform'd in Camp and Garrison.</i>	87

CONTENTS.

CHAP. VII.

Containing Directions how a Battalion of Foot is to defend itself when attack'd by Horse.

ARTICLE I. *Directions for their Telling off, that they may act either in Battalion, or in the Square.* Page 90

The first Plan the most perfect, as being proper for both. *ibid.*

Apprehensions from Horse, proceed from the Foot not knowing their own Strength. 91

A Situation suppos'd, where they can be only attack'd in Front. *ibid.*

Directions for the Management of their Fire in that Situation. *ibid.*

In this Case, the Front Rank to fire with the rest, and Reason for it. 92

How to judge of real or feint Attacks by the Disposition of the Enemy, *ibid.*

Proposal to advance small Platoons to disappoint their feint Attacks. *ibid.*

Directions to those Platoons in Advancing and Giving their Fire. 93

Platoons of the first Firing to make ready when those Advanced do, and when to give their Fire. 94

A Situation supposed where one Flank is expos'd. *ibid.*

Manner of securing that Flank. *ibid.*

ARTICLE II. *Directions for the forming of the Square from Three deep, according to the Dutch Manner.* 95

Two Plans shewing how it is done. *ibid.*

Directions for the reducing of the Square into Battalion. 99

ARTICLE III. *Directions for the forming of the Square by four Grand Divisions, commonly practis'd by the English, with a Plan of the same.* 101

How it is reduced into Battalion. 104

Remarks on the different Ways of forming the Square. 105

ARTICLE IV. *Directions for Firing and Marching in the Square.* *ibid.*

The Platoons of each Face divided into different Firings. 106

Figures on the Inside shew what Firings they belong to. *ibid.*

How they are to fire in their Order. 107

How they are to face in Marching towards the different Fronts. *ibid.*

How

CONTENTS.

How they are to Fire marching towards each Front. Page 108
To end with the Fire of the whole Square 113

CHAP. VIII.

General Rules for the Marching of a Battalion, or a Detachment of Men, where there is a Possibility of meeting with the Enemy.

ARTICLE I. *An Officer's Character hardly retrievable if surpriz'd without being prepar'd.* 114

Reflections to induce young Officers to the Study of the Service. *ibid.*

No Military Man above the Knowledge of the minutest Part of the Service. 115

Confirm'd by the Practice of the Germans, and the late Glorious King WILLIAM. *ibid.*

ARTICLE II. *Method proposed to march by Platoons instead of Divisions. Reasons for it.* 116

Van and Rear-Guards, what Numbers they generally consist of. 117

General Instructions to the Van and Rear-Guards, and Advantage of a Rear-Guard. 118

ARTICLE III. *Directions for the Marching of the Regiment, and how the Officers are to march their Platoons.* 120

Major and Adjutant, their Duty in the above Case. *ibid.*

Directions for the passing of a Defile. *ibid.*

The Soldiers not to fasten the Tent-Poles to their Firelocks. 121

Consequence that happen'd by this, and other Neglects. *ibid.*

Reflections on the said Miscarriage, by Way of Precaution to others. 122

ARTICLE IV. *In inclosed Countries, to have small Parties on the Flanks: Design and Use of them.* 123

Precautions in Reconnoitring. If cut off, how to make it known. *ibid.*

How to be reliev'd, with Directions to those who are sent. 124

Young Officers apt to exceed their Orders from a mistaken Zeal. *ibid.*

Reflections on the Consequences of that, and the contrary Behaviour. *ibid.*

When

CONTENTS.

- When the Vanguard discovers any Troops, necessary Precautions to be taken.* Page 125
- Instructions to the Officers who shall be commanded from the Body to attack a Partizan-Party, for fear of being driven into an Ambuscade.* ibid.
- Necessary Precautions of the Commanding Officer, if his March is obstructed.* ibid.
- His Orders must determine him in these Cases.* 126
- ARTICLE V. *Necessary Precautions, and Disposition of the Regiment, in marching through an Open or Champaign Country.* ibid.
- When proper to march in four grand Divisions, and Method of doing it upon the March.* 127
- Directions to form the Square from grand Divisions on the March.* 128
- Necessary Precautions on the Appearance of the Enemy's Horse, and not to form the Square, but march in grand Divisions, 'till there's a Necessity for it.* 129
- When in Danger, not to be solicitous about their Baggage.* ibid.
- Van and Rear Guards drawn in, and to be divided into the Platoons.* ibid.
- If the Enemy retires, or keeps at a Distance, to pursue their March.* ibid.
- Directions for reducing the Square into Grand Divisions.* 130
-

CHAP. IX.

General Rules for Battalions of Foot, when they Engage in the Line.

- ARTICLE I. *Necessary Inspection into the Arms and Ammunition the Day before the Action.* 132
- Regiments to be as strong as possible when they go on Service* ibid.
- To be Told off into Platoons, and the Officers divided to them.* ibid.
- Inspection of those Officers, and Reason why it is necessary.* ibid.
- A profound Silence in marching up to, and during the Action with the Enemy.* ibid.

The

C O N T E N T S.

<i>The Commanding Officer to give the Words of Command for all Movements.</i>	Page 133
<i>Drummers to regulate their Beatings according to the said Words of Command.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE II. <i>The Line to move slow in marching up to the Enemy.</i>	ibid.
<i>The Battalions to march up close before the fire, and then fall upon the Enemy with their Bayonets, with the Advantage which may arise from it.</i>	ibid.
<i>But if deferr'd, how dangerous.</i>	134
ARTICLE III. <i>When the Enemy gives Way, the Soldiers not to break in the Pursuit of them.</i>	ibid.
<i>No Battalion to advance before the Line in Pursuit of the Enemy.</i>	ibid.
<i>Granadiers to advance and fire on them to keep up their Terror.</i>	135
<i>Directions to the said Granadiers in Advancing.</i>	ibid.
<i>Danger in Battalions advancing before the Line.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE IV. <i>An Article of War quoted against the Soldiers leaving their Ranks to plunder and pillage, before the Enemy are entirely beat.</i>	136
<i>Consequences on its not being punctually obey'd.</i>	ibid.
<i>Two Instances related, wherein it appear'd by way of Precaution to others.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE V. <i>Field-Officers to observe what Regiments they are to sustain, or who sustains them.</i>	138
<i>They are to remark the Cloathing and Colours of their own Troops, that they may distinguish them from the Enemy.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE VI. <i>When the Enemy have Men posted in the Front of their Line, to annoy yours in marching up, the Granadiers should be order'd to dislodge them.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE VII. <i>When a Battalion is order'd to retire, what Precautions are necessary for the performing of it, with the Reasons, why they may be order'd.</i>	139
<i>When the greatest Part of the Line retires, the rest to do the same.</i>	ibid.
<i>The Battalions in the Line to act in Concert with one another.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE VIII. <i>When the first Line gives Way, how they are to retire.</i>	140
<i>How the Officers are to act on this Occasion.</i>	ibid.

Danger

CONTENTS.

<i>Danger which the second Line runs of being broke by the first.</i>	Page 140
<i>Officers of the first Line to use their utmost Diligence to prevent it.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE IX. <i>An Expedient offered in order to prevent it.</i>	141
ARTICLE X. <i>Directions to the second Line, on the first giving Way.</i>	142
<i>If follow'd, how easy to repulse the Enemy.</i>	ibid.
<i>Danger which the Men of the second Line apprehend, on their seeing those of the first give Way, more imaginary than real.</i>	ibid.
<i>Reasons shewing them to be so, in order to remove them.</i>	143
<i>The second Line's moving on briskly, will in some Measure remove them.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE XI. <i>A Remark, that the private Men form their Notion of the Danger from the Appearance of their Officers.</i>	144
<i>To prevent bad Impressions, the Officers should appear serene and chearful.</i>	ibid.
<i>Which will have a good Effect, if they have an Opinion of their military Capacity.</i>	ibid.
<i>Young or unexperienced Officers can't influence them in the same Manner.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE XII. <i>When a Battalieu in the Line is press'd for Room, what they are to do.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE XIII. <i>If attack'd in the Line, or in Brigade, by Horse, how they are to act.</i>	145
ARTICLE XIV. <i>The Alternate Firing, practis'd by the Dutch, described.</i>	ibid.
<i>Advantage and Disadvantage which may attend it.</i>	146
<i>The Dutch, by the Excellency of their Discipline, have surmounted the Danger.</i>	ibid.
<i>Common Notion, that the Sang froid of the Dutch is owing to Phlegm.</i>	147
<i>Advanced only to excuse our own Neglect of Discipline.</i>	ibid.
<i>The French look upon us in the same Light, though they have had Reason to be convinced of the contrary.</i>	ibid.
<i>Foreigners have a Notion that we can't be brought into Discipline.</i>	ibid.
<i>Our Neglect of it has produced that Notion.</i>	ibid.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. X.

Duty of the Infantry in Garrison.

- ARTICLE I. *Upon marching to Garrison, the Quarter-master to be sent before.* Page 148
Directions to him on his taking of Quarters. ibid.
ARTICLE II. *When the Caserns or Barracks can't contain the Troops, Manner of Quartering them on the Inhabitants, which is call'd Cantoning.* 149
ARTICLE III. *Directions to the Quarter-master about meeting the Regiment, and what is proper to be done before they enter the Town.* ibid.
ARTICLE IV. *Ceremony at the Barrier before they enter, and how conducted to the Parade.* 150
When drawn up on the Parade, the Colonel to wait on the Governor. 151
Town-major to read the general Orders of the Garrison to the Regiment. ibid.
Then to conduct them to the Regimental Parade, Alarm-Posts and Quarters, where they are dismiss'd. 152
-

CHAP. XI.

Usual Guards in a Garrison, and Manner of Forming the Parade.

- ARTICLE I. *How the Guards are compos'd.* 153
Number who mount, according to the Troops in Garrison. ibid.
Method commonly observed in it. ibid.
Number each Guard generally consists of. ibid.
The Citadel, generally a Garrison of its own. ibid.
The Guards mount in the Morning. 154
ARTICLE II. *Directions about viewing the Men who mount the Guard.* ibid.
ARTICLE III. *Directions for the Beating of the Assembly or Troop.* 155

How

CONTENTS.

<i>How the Detachments are to draw up on the Parade.</i>	Page 155
ARTICLE IV. <i>Manner of forming the Guards, and posting the Serjeants to them.</i>	156
<i>Officers to draw for their Guards, and their Names to be enter'd.</i>	ibid.
<i>Manner of drawing up the Reserve and Horse Guards.</i>	157
<i>When the Guards are to exercise together, how perform'd</i>	ibid.
<i>How the Guards are to march off.</i>	ibid.
<i>Horse-Guards to march last. Reason supposed for that Custom.</i>	158
<i>Adjutants to attend the Town-major 'till dismiss'd.</i>	ibid.
<i>Orderly Serjeants and Corporals to attend their Adjutants.</i>	ibid.
<i>French Governors obliged to see the Guards march off.</i>	ibid.
<i>Dutch Governors not, but often do.</i>	ibid.
<i>Garrisons remote from the Enemy, the Orders deliver'd in the Morning.</i>	ibid.
<i>In Frontiers, not 'till the Gates are shut.</i>	159
<i>Upon the Arrival of a Person entitled to a Guard, the eldest Regiment in Garrison is to furnish it.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE V. <i>Directions for the Mounting and Dismounting of Guards.</i>	ibid.
<i>Corporals of Guards to inspect into the Things committed to the Charge of their Sentries.</i>	160
<i>How they are to proceed when any of those Things are damag'd or lost.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE VI. <i>Manner of relieving Sentries.</i>	162
<i>Directions how Sentries are to behave on their Posts.</i>	ibid.

CHAP. XII.

Instructions to the Officers on Guard 'till they are Relieved.

ARTICLE I. <i>The Officers to keep their Guards, and how they may give their Men Leave.</i>	166
<i>Officers on the Port-Guards to examine all Strangers, and how they are to proceed with suspected Persons.</i>	ibid.

CONTENTS.

ARTICLE II. Officers of the Port-Guards to send their Reports to the Captain of the Main-Guard, with the Time and Manner of doing it.	Page 167
Directions to the Captain of the Main-Guard, about entering of the several Reports, and Time of delivering them to the Governor.	ibid.
Reserve-Guard, only under the Direction of the Governor.	168
ARTICLE III. Time the Draw-Bridges are kept up, and the Barrier shut.	ibid.
Port-Guards to be under Arms, when Troops enter the Town. Reasons for it.	169
Upon a Fire, the Port-Guard, to be under Arms, and the Gates shut. Reason for it.	ibid.
The same Precaution when a Riot happens near a Port-Guard.	170
Main Guard to quell those in the Middle of the Town.	ibid.
In Frontier Garrisons the Guards to be doubled on Market-Days. Reasons for it.	ibid.
ARTICLE IV. Port Guards to send for the Keys at Sunset, and the Drummers to beat the Retreat on the Ramparts.	ibid.
The Gates to be then closed, and the Wickets only left open.	ibid.
No Soldier to have Port-Liberty then.	ibid.
The Keys brought to the Main-Guard, and delivered to the Serjeants of the Ports.	ibid.
Port-Guards, how they receive the Keys, and Ceremony of shutting the Gates.	171
How Guards are to be posted in the Outworks during the Night.	ibid.
When they are numerous, a Method propos'd for the doing of it.	ibid.
When the Gates are lock'd, how the Keys are to be return'd.	ibid.
Manner of delivering of the Night-Orders.	172
Captain of the Main-Guard to distribute the Tickets for the Rounds.	ibid.
Additional visiting Rounds, on what Occasions appointed.	ibid.
Manner of doing it, and by whom.	ibid.
Time of beating the Tat-too, and by whom.	173
All Soldiers to retire to their Quarters at Tat-too.	ibid.

CONTENTS.

<i>Burghers to carry Lights with them, when they go out after Tat-too.</i>	Page 173
<i>Penalty if they don't.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE V. <i>Patrols to go every Hour after Tat-too, and Duty of the Patrols.</i>	ibid.
<i>Proper Districts to be assigned for the Patrols of each Guard.</i>	ibid.
<i>What Places are most proper for the Horse to patrol in.</i>	174
<i>Serjeants of the Patrol make a Report to their Officers.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE VI. <i>Ordinary and Extraordinary Rounds.</i>	175
<i>Town-Major's Round to go first, with the Design of it.</i>	ibid.
<i>Manner of going and receiving of Rounds.</i>	ibid.
<i>Reasons for the said Ceremonies, to shew the Necessity of keeping them up.</i>	177
<i>Town-Major to make a Report to the Governor after his Round.</i>	178
<i>In France the Officers give the Parole to the Town-Major.</i>	179
<i>Their Reason for it.</i>	ibid.
<i>When the Rounds or Sentries discover any Men from the Ramparts, what they are to do.</i>	180
<i>How the Officers, who command the Guards, are to act on such Notice.</i>	181
<i>The Design and Duty of Rounds.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE VII. <i>At Reveille the Keys to be carried to the Main-Guard, and delivered to the Serjeants from the Ports.</i>	182
<i>Patrols of Horse to be sent with the Keys.</i>	ibid.
<i>Precaution in letting the Patrols of Horse out of the Gates.</i>	ibid.
<i>Design, Manner, and Time of their Patrolling.</i>	ibid.
<i>When the Patrols return, the Gates to be opened, and the Keys sent back.</i>	183
<i>Port-Guards to remain under Arms while the Horse are patrolling.</i>	ibid.



C O N T E N T S.

C H A P. XIII.

Of Detachments, visiting the Soldiers Quarters, and the Hospital.

ARTICLE I. *Upon what Occasion Detachments are order'd.*

Page 184

A separate Duty from the Town-Guards. ibid.

Manner of appointing Officers and Serjeants for those Commands. ibid.

Every Battalion to furnish an equal Proportion. ibid.

When Officers are detach'd, their ordinary Complement of Men. 185

Contrary to the Rules of War to send less than 19 Men. ibid.

ARTICLE II. *Not to pass for a Duty unless they march beyond the Barrier.* ibid.

How an Officer is to mount Guard when he returns from a Party. 186

Less than an Officer and 25 Men should not be detach'd but on Necessity. ibid.

All Detachments to have Passports from the Governor. ibid.

Consequence if they have not, or consist of less than 19 Men. ibid.

Reason suppos'd for this Custom, and how far it should be adhered to. ibid.

How an Officer on Party is to act, when he sends a Detachment from him. 187

All Parties to return at the Time limited, unless prevented by the Enemy. ibid.

ARTICLE III. *Orderly Serjeants and Corporals, their Duty.* ibid.

The Soldiers divided into Messes, and Manner of doing it. 189

Necessary to see their Victuals dress'd. Reason for it. Consequence if neglected. ibid.

Directions about visiting the Soldiers Quarters. 190

ARTICLE IV. *Directions about visiting the Sick Soldiers.*

Incumbent on the Captains to assist their own Men, and not let them remain too long in the Hospital. ibid.

Where there is no Hospital, an Infirmary to be appointed. 191

C H A P.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. XIV.

*Command of the Governor. Compliment due to him,
and the other Officers, from the Troops in Garrison.*

ARTICLE I. *The Governor has the chief Command of the
Troops in his Garrison, tho' Officers of a superior Rank
should be ordered in with them.* Page 192

*Who the Command falls to in the Absence of the Governor,
&c.* *ibid.*

*His Power over the Civil, determined by the Constitution of
the Country.* 193

That over the Military much more extensive 194

*Officers and Soldiers not to lie out of the Garrison without his
Leave.* *ibid.*

General Method of granting his Leave of Absence. *ibid.*

His Power not limited in this, Consequences if it was. 195

How Officers and Soldiers are to apply for Leave of Absence.
ibid.

ARTICLE II. *Soldiers who have Leave must have Passports
sign'd by the Governor.* 196

Those who go without, to be taken up and try'd as Deserters.
ibid.

*Officers on the Port-Guards to examine all Soldiers who enter
the Gates.* *ibid.*

Officers on a Party to examine all Soldiers they meet. *ibid.*

*Regiments can't hold Courts-Martial without Leave from the
Governor.* *ibid.*

*Nor appear under Arms but by the said Leave, and mention'd
in Orders.* 197

Reason suppos'd for this Custom. *ibid.*

ARTICLE III. *On an Alarm, all the Troops to repair to
their Alarm-Posts.* 198

How the Colours are to be conducted there. *ibid.*

*On what Occasions the Troops may be ordered to their Alarm-
Posts.* *ibid.*

When assembled, none can dismiss them but the Governor. *ibid.*

ARTICLE IV. *Compliment paid the Governor by the Guards.*
199

Compliment

CONTENTS.

<i>Compliment due to General Officers and others, in Camp and Garrison.</i>	Page 199
<i>Compliment paid to a Marshal of France in the French Garrisons.</i>	201
<i>His Authority superior to all Governors, even in their own Garrisons.</i>	ibid.
<i>A Copy of the late Duke of Marlborough's Commission of Captain-General.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE V. <i>Governors of Citadels, &c. to send for the Word from the Governor of the Town.</i>	203
<i>Governor of a Citadel, his Power over his own Garrison.</i>	ibid.
<i>Not to suffer above one Third of his Garrison to go out at a Time.</i>	ibid.
<i>Governors of Towns and Citadels in France, their Command separate, &c.</i>	204
<i>Common to find it so there, and Reason alledged for it.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE VI. <i>Town-Major and his Adjutants to view the Fortifications, &c. frequently.</i>	ibid.
<i>Inhabitants to give in the Names of those who lodge with them, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>A Table for the several Duties in a Garrison.</i>	205

C H A P. XV.

Duty of the Infantry in Camp.

Of Guards Ordinary.

ARTICLE I. <i>What is generally meant by Camp-Duty.</i>	206
<i>Guards Ordinary, what they are, and Numbers they generally consist of.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE II. <i>Method of Mounting and Dismounting of the Quarter-Guard, Duty and Design of it.</i>	207
ARTICLE III. <i>Directions for the parading the Men of the other Guards Ordinary.</i>	210
ARTICLE IV. <i>How the Guards are form'd on the Grand Parade.</i>	212
ARTICLE V. <i>Picquet-Guard, the Design, and Time it continues on Duty.</i>	213
<i>Time of Drawing out, with the Captain's Directions to the Men.</i>	214
	<i>Men</i>

C O N T E N T S.

<i>Men of the Picquet not to be changed, and Reasons why.</i>	214
<i>How far the Picquet is to march when it passes for a Duty.</i>	215
<i>General Officers of the Day have the immediate Command of it.</i>	ibid.
<i>Order for the marching of the Picquet, to be sent to the Lieutenant-General of the Day.</i>	ibid.
<i>According to the Number of Regiments, Field-Officers are appointed for the Picquet.</i>	216
<i>Infantry divided into Wings for the Ease of appointing them.</i>	ibid.
<i>When the Army is large, each Wing furnishes its own Field-Officers.</i>	ibid.
<i>Manner of appointing them to their several Commands.</i>	ibid.
<i>A Plan of a Body of Foot formed into two Lines, divided into Wings and Brigades, to shew how the Field-Officers are appointed for the Picquet.</i>	217
<i>Colonels of the Picquet to go the Grand Round, the other Field-Officers go theirs, as they shall direct, and when to make their Reports.</i>	218
<i>General-Officers of the Day always received as Grand Rounds.</i>	ibid.
<i>None but the Lieutenant-General of the Day can draw out the Picquet by Night.</i>	ibid.
<i>Upon an Alarm, a Method propos'd of joining the Picquet.</i>	219
<i>ARTICLE VI. In what the German and French Picquets differ from ours.</i>	220
<i>Method of the Foot Picquet of the Germans, with Reflections on it.</i>	ibid.
<i>Method of the Horse Picquet, preferable to that of the Foot.</i>	222
<i>Reason why, and how it may be improved.</i>	223
<i>When follow'd, the necessary Precautions which should be taken.</i>	ibid.
<i>Method of the Foot Picquet of the French.</i>	226



C H A P.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. XVI.

Guards Ordinary of the Cavalry, and Guards Extraordinary of the Foot.

ARTICLE I. <i>Guards Ordinary, Standard-Guard, Number they consist of.</i>	Page 227
<i>Remarks on their Mounting in Boots.</i>	228
ARTICLE II. <i>Grand-Guard, Number unfix'd, divided into Captains Commands. How posted.</i>	ibid.
<i>Design and Duty of the Grand-Guard.</i>	229
<i>Manner of Relieving it.</i>	230
<i>Day and Night Posts of the Grand-Guard, and Reason why.</i>	ibid.
<i>To whom the Posting of the Grand-Guards belong.</i>	ibid.
<i>In Proportion to the Number of the Grand-Guard, Field-Officers are appointed.</i>	231
<i>Directions to the Officer who commands it, when the Enemy approaches.</i>	ibid.
<i>To whom he is to make his Report when relieved.</i>	232
ARTICLE III. <i>Guards Extraordinary of the Foot, on what Occasions order'd.</i>	ibid.
<i>What is meant by Out-Posts, and Reason for them.</i>	ibid.
<i>Usual Time of relieving Out-Posts.</i>	ibid.
<i>Adjutants to see the Men who mount supplied with Bread and Pay.</i>	ibid.
<i>Out Posts, necessary Precautions for their Security.</i>	233
<i>Their Orderly Men to attend the Major of Brigade of the Day. Reason why.</i>	ibid.
<i>Out-Posts, how they are to receive the Generals who visit them.</i>	ibid.
<i>Those near the Camp to have the Parole which is given to the Army.</i>	ibid.
<i>Those at a Distance to have one of their own, and by whom sent.</i>	ibid.
<i>Necessary Conduct of an Officer who commands an Out-Post.</i>	ibid.
<i>How far he is to maintain his Post, must depend on his Orders and Situation.</i>	235
<i>Custom of War in these Cases.</i>	ibid.

ARTICLE

CONTENTS.

ARTICLE IV. *Foraging Parties, Design and Duty of them.*

Page 235

ARTICLE V. *Convoys, or Escorts, on what Occasions ordered'd.*

236

ARTICLE VI. *Expeditions, Nature and Design of them.*

237

CHAP. XVII.

General Rules for Incamping an Army, &c.

ARTICLE I. *Distance of the Lines, with the Ground allowed to a Battalion and Squadron.*

238

The Ground allowed to a Squadron not sufficient, with the Reason why.

ibid.

To remedy this, a new Method propos'd to incamp a Regiment of Horse or Dragoons, with the Advantage it has over the old Way

239

ARTICLE II. *Common Proportion of a Trooper's Tent, with Directions for Incamping a Regiment of Horse or Dragoons of nine Troops, and a Plan of the same.*

241

Usual Proportion of Officers Tents.

244

Method of making Kitchens for the Private Men, with the Conveniency of them.

ibid.

ARTICLE III. *Directions for Incamping a Regiment of thirteen Companies, with a Plan of the same.*

246

Duty of the Quarter-master, and Camp-Colour-Men.

248

ARTICLE IV. *The several Beatings used the Day the Army marches, and what is to be done at each.*

249

ARTICLE V. *Duty of the Quarter-Master-General, with the Method of Drawing out an Incampment or Line of Battle.*

250

CHAP. XVIII.

Duty of the Troops at a Siege.

ARTICLE I. *The Foot employed in making the Trenches, but paid for the same.*

256

The

CONTENTS.

<i>The Prices paid during the late War.</i>	Page 256
<i>Time the Men work in the Trenches.</i>	257
<i>Fascines, Gabions, &c. made by the Foot, with a Description and the Proportion of them, and Method of carrying them to the Magazine.</i>	258
ARTICLE II. <i>Directions to the Covering-party and Workmen, at the opening of the Trenches.</i>	260
<i>Manner of making Trenches, with the common Proportion of the several Parts.</i>	263
<i>When the Workmen leave off, the Covering-party takes Possession of the Trenches.</i>	265
<i>Directions to the Officers who command the Workmen, when a Sortie is made.</i>	266
ARTICLE III. <i>Guard of the Trenches, done by entire Battalions, and commanded by General Officers.</i>	267
<i>Manner of Relieving the Guard of the Trenches, with Directions to those who mount, and the necessary Precautions to be taken.</i>	ibid.
<i>Practice of the French Battalions when they mount the Trenches.</i>	272
ARTICLE IV. <i>A Guard of Horse commanded to each Attack, but remain at the Queue of the Trenches.</i>	273
<i>When a Sally is made, the Horse are to assist the Foot in repulsing the Enemy.</i>	ibid.
<i>Method of the French Governors, by making small Sorties to retard the Progress of the Besiegers.</i>	274
<i>When any little Attack is to be made, it is to be done by the Guard of the Trenches, and the Battalions on Duty give an equal Number of Men for that Service.</i>	275
ARTICLE V. <i>General Rules for a considerable Attack, with the Disposition of the Troops who make it.</i>	277

C H A P. XIX.

Manner of receiving and distributing the daily Orders, with the general Detail of Duty, according to the Method in Flanders.

ARTICLE I. *General Officers of Horse and Foot, separate Commands and Duty.* 281

Distinct

CONTENTS.

<i>Distinct General Officers of the Day for the Horse and Foot.</i>	Page 281
<i>Number of each, and Time they remain on that Duty.</i>	ibid.
<i>Generals of the Day command the Picquet, and visit the Grand-Guard and Out Posts.</i>	282
<i>Majors of Brigade roll for the Day, and Duty of him who is of the Day.</i>	ibid.
<i>Duty of the Adjutant-General.</i>	283
ARTICLE II. <i>How the Orders are received and distributed.</i>	284
ARTICLE III. <i>How the Duty of General Officers and others is regulated ; as also that of entire Battalions.</i>	286
<i>Plan of a Roster, or Table, by which the Duty of Field-Officers, Captains, Subalterns, entire Battalions and Squadrons is regulated, with an Explanation of the Roster.</i>	289
<i>Table of Proportion for the Detaching of private Men, with an Explanation of the Table.</i>	292

CHAP. XX.

Manual Exercise and Evolutions of the Cavalry explained.

ARTICLE I. <i>Proper Arms of a Trooper, and Manner of placing them.</i>	313
<i>Directions for the forming and drawing up of Squadrons.</i>	314
<i>The several Distances of Ranks and Files.</i>	315
<i>How the Officers post themselves at the Head of the Squadrons.</i>	ibid.
<i>How the Standards are brought to the Regiment and returned.</i>	ibid.
<i>How the Squadrons are to be told off, or divided for the Exercise.</i>	317
<i>General Rules for Wheeling</i>	318
ARTICLE II. <i>The Manual Exercise on Horseback, with an Explanation.</i>	320
ARTICLE III. <i>Evolutions of the Horse, explained.</i>	327
ARTICLE IV. <i>Words of Command for Dismounting, Linking the Horses, Forming into Battalion, and Exercising on Foot ;</i>	

CONTENTS.

- Foot; as also the reducing them into Squadron, and returning to their Horses, with an Explanation.* Page 347
- ARTICLE V.** *How a Regiment of two Squadrons is to proceed when they dismount.* 360
- ARTICLE VI.** *Directions for the Reception of a General, and the Manner of passing in Review before him.* 361





A
TREATISE
OF
Military Discipline.

CHAP. I.

*Containing Directions for the forming of
Battalions, Posting of Officers, &c.*

ARTICLE I.



WHEN the Battalion is ordered to draw out to Exercise, or upon any other Occasion, the Soldiers are to repair, at the Time appointed, to their Captain's Quarters, or the Place order'd for that Purpose, compleatly arm'd and accouter'd. The Subalterns and Non-Commission Officers are to be there at the same time.

As soon as the Men are paraded, the Lieutenant, or in his Absence the Ensign, must order them to stand to their Arms, and form them into a Rank entire, or three or six deep; after which he is to view their Arms, Ammunition,

B

Cloaths

Cloaths and Accoutrements, and to see if they are clean, and dress'd in a Soldier-like Manner, in order to make a Report of each Particular to his Captain, when he comes to march the Company to the general Parade.

As there is not any one thing which contributes more to the Appearance of a Regiment than the Sizing of the Men, great Care should be taken in the doing of it, before they march to the general Parade. For which End, there should be a Size-roll made for each Company, that the Men may know what Rank they are to form in, which will save the Officers both the Time and Trouble of doing it: For, by casting their Eye over the Size-roll, they can immediately see if the Men are drawn up according to that, or not.

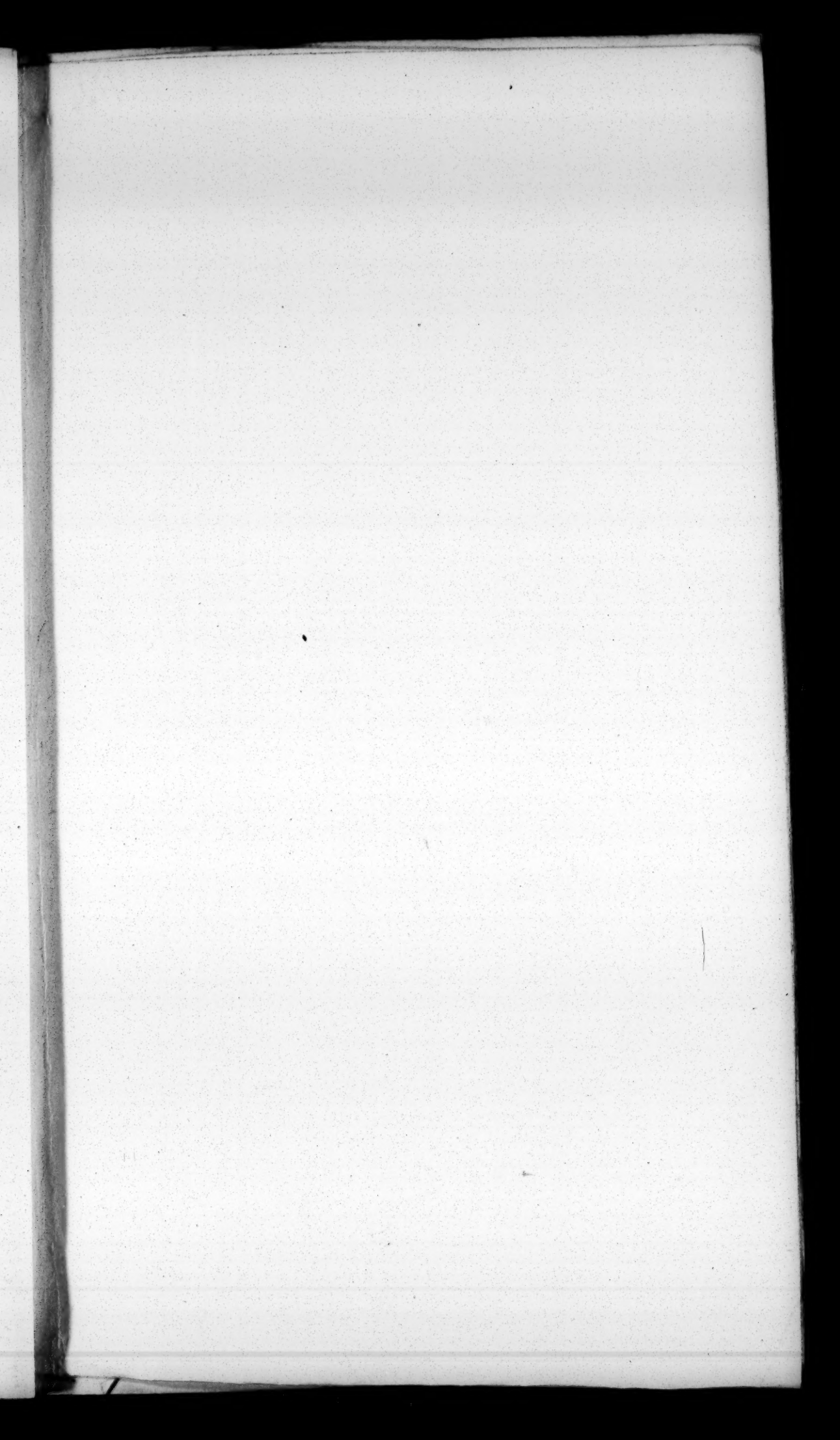
The Sizing of Men, is the placing, as near as possible, those of an equal Height into each Rank.

In forming six deep, the tallest Men must be placed in the Front and fourth Ranks. The Reason for it is, that when the Rear-half-files are doubled up, the Men of the fourth Rank may size with those of the first. The same Rule must be observ'd in sizing the Men of the second and fifth Ranks; as also, those of the third and sixth, without which Precaution the Battalion will appear to a great Disadvantage.

The easiest and most exact Method for the doing of this, is to draw up the Companies at the Captain's Quarters three deep, placing the tallest Men in the Front and Rear-ranks, and the lowest in the Center, and from thence to march them off in two Divisions, ordering the second Division to draw up in the Rear of the first, when they are to form in Battalion, the second Division then composing the Rear-half-files; by which Means, when they are order'd to double either in the Evolutions, or to go through the Firings, the Ranks will appear equally siz'd.

In the forming of four deep, (which is seldom done but when a Battalion is very weak) the same Regard must be had, that the Ranks may appear equally sized when they double.

The Companies being form'd and siz'd, the Men's Arms, &c. inspected according to the above Directions, they are to march with shoulder'd Arms, the Captain leading the first Division, the Ensign at the Head of the second, and the Lieutenant in the Rear. The Serjeants are to march on the Flanks, and to see that they carry their Arms well, and keep their Ranks strait. The Drummers are to fall in between the first and second Ranks of the first Division; but when

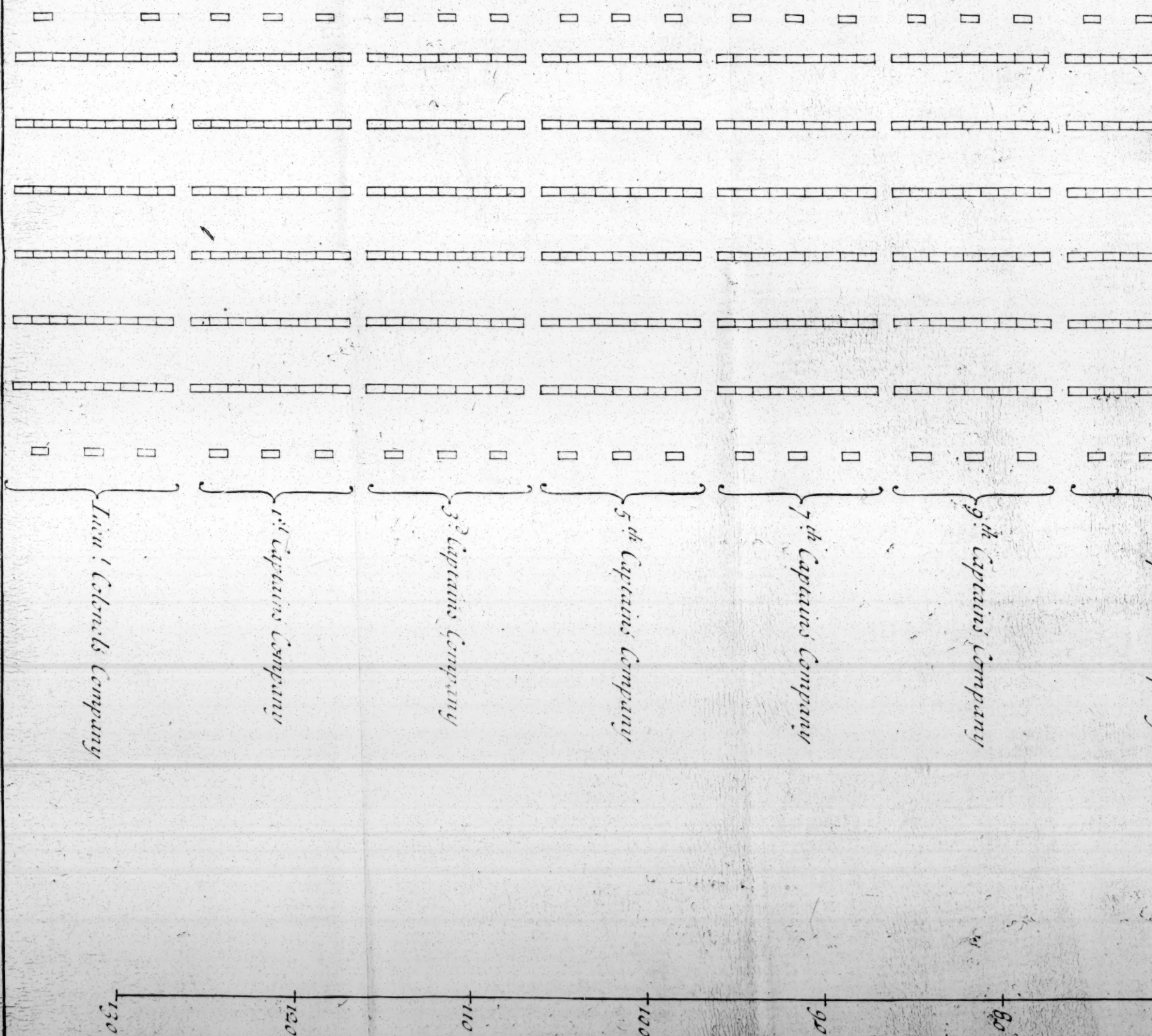


*A Plan of a Battalion of Foot Drawn up according to Seniority of Companies
They are supposed by this Plan just Drawn up to Form the Battalion, having their
at their proper Distance of 4 Paces. There is 3 Foot allow'd to each Man; and the Co*

Explanation

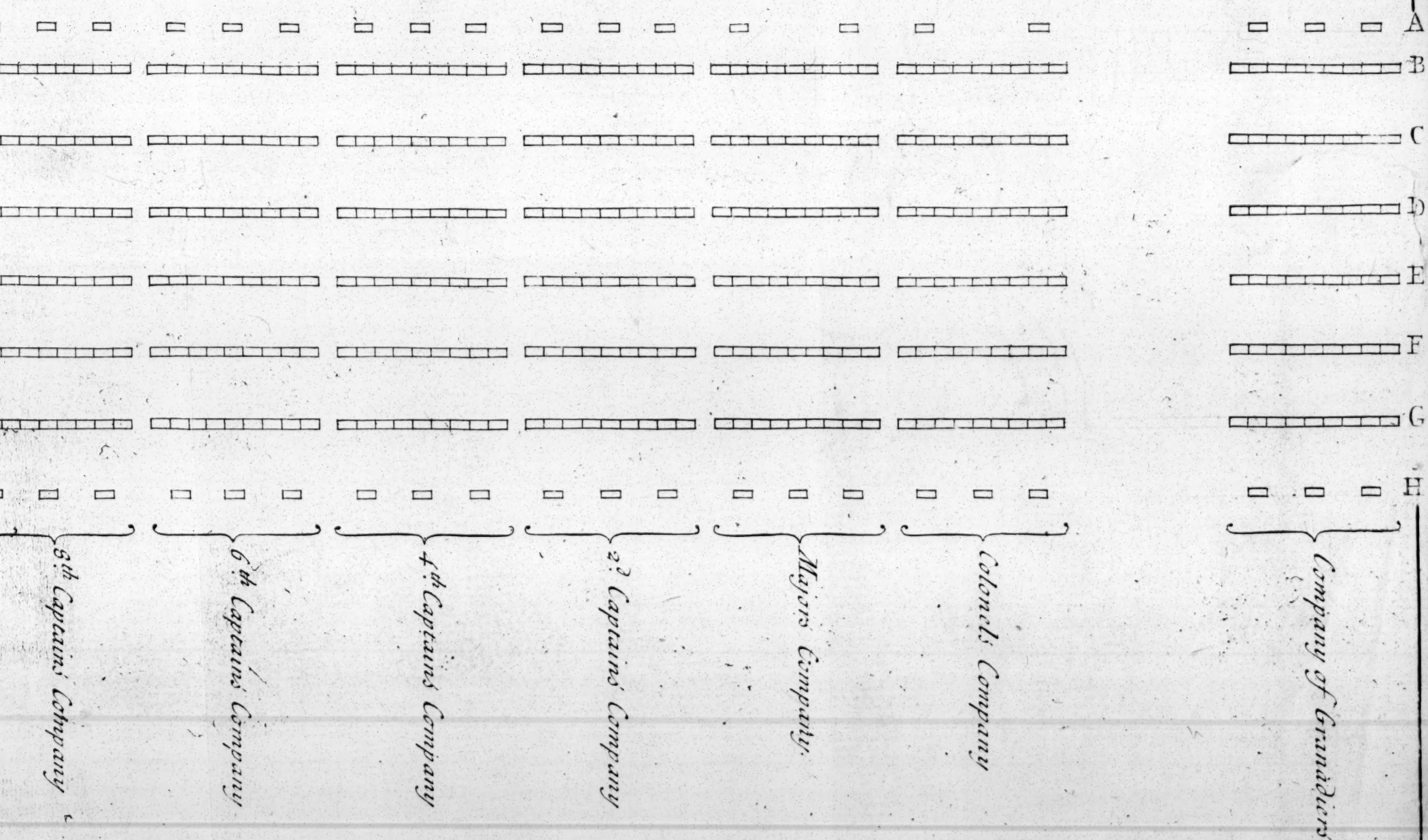
- A. The Rank of Officers.
- B. Front Rank of the Regiment.
- C. Second Rank.
- D. Third Rank.
- E. Fourth Rank.
- F. Fifth Rank.
- G. Sixth Rank or the Rear.
- H. Rank of Serjeants.

The Front of t



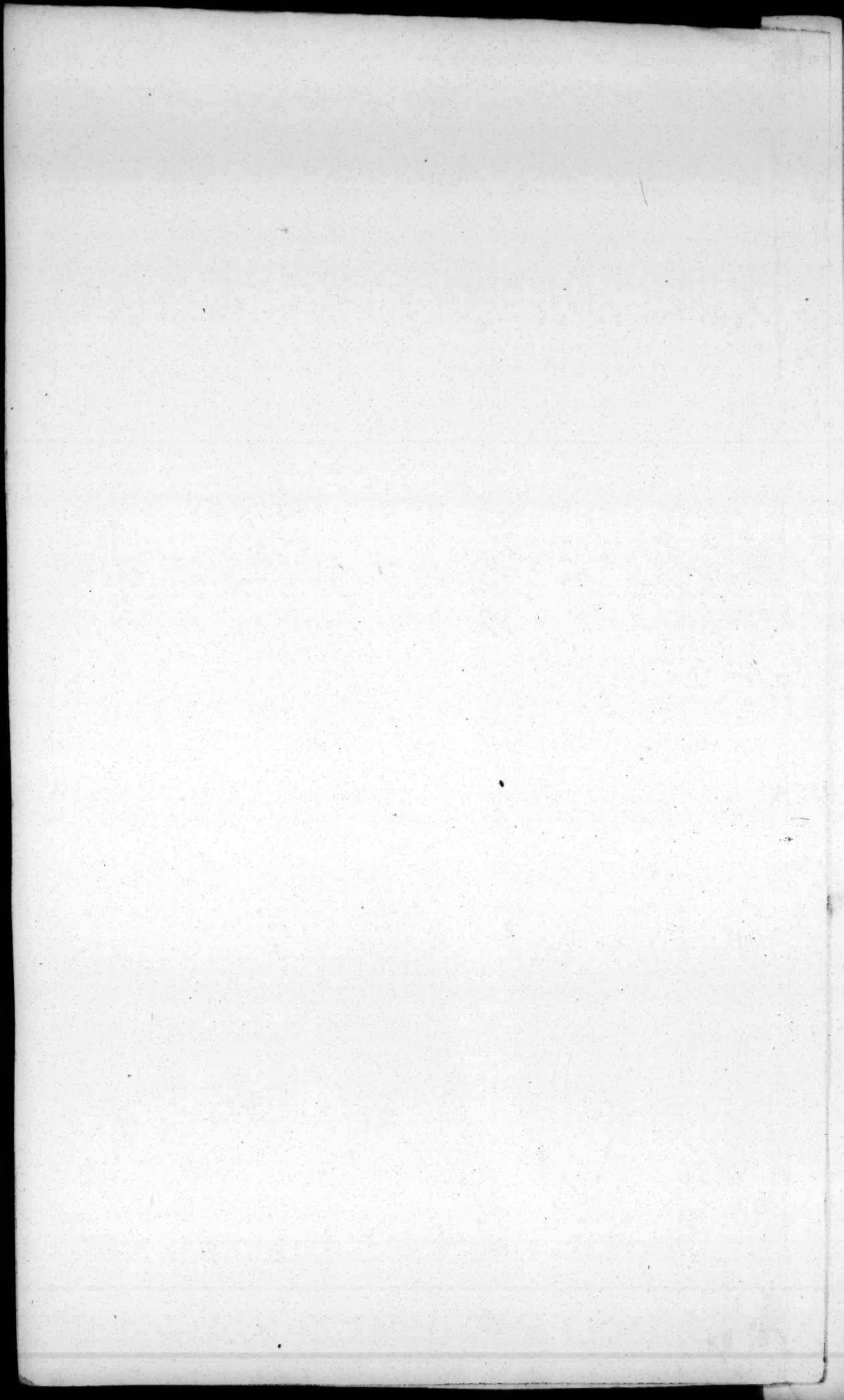
Companies, with an Interval of 3 Foot between each, that they may be the easier Distinguished.
 their own Officers in their Front and their Serjeants in their Rear, with their Files Close and the Ranks
 the Companies are supposed to consist of 51 Private Men and 3 Corporals, in Rank and File, each.

of the Regiment.



Scale of Paces

70 60 50 40 30 20 10



when they march six deep, they are then to fall in between the third and fourth. In this Order the Companies are to march whenever they march with shoulder'd Arms; except at Reviews; the Difference of which shall be shewn in its proper Place.

When the Companies come to the Parade, or Place where they are to form into Battalion, they are to draw up according to Seniority, thus: The Colonel's Company on the Right, the Lieutenant-Colonel's on the Left, the Major's on the Left of the Colonel's, the eldest Captain's on the Right of the Lieutenant-Colonel's, and so on from Right to Left, 'till the youngest comes in the Center. See the annexed Plan.

As the Companies draw up, the Subalterns are to move up to the Front, the Lieutenants placing themselves on the Right of their Captains, and the Ensigns on their Left, towards the Flanks of their Companies. The Serjeants are to form themselves in the Rear of the Rear-rank, and the Drummers are to march about thirty Paces in the Front, where the Drum-major is to form them into a Rank entire, opposite to the Center, and facing the Battalion; in which Position the whole are to remain, 'till the Major, or Officer who is to exercise the Battalion, orders the Officers to their Posts. But before I proceed to this Part of the Ceremony, I shall lay down some Rules, whereby that tedious, and, in my Opinion, Unfoldier-like Method of compleating the Files of the whole Battalion to the Right and Left may be avoided.

Let it be a standing Rule for the Companies to leave an Interval of a Pace between them, when they draw up in Battalion, and to march in with their Files compleat, ordering their odd Men, if they have any, to fall in the Rear of the Rear-rank, where the Adjutant, or the Serjeant-major, should immediately join them together, form them into Files, and draw them up in the Intervals between the Companies, which they may do in an Instant, by beginning on the Right, and joining those of two or three Companies, or as many as will make a File, and then placing them in the first Interval; and so on till they are all form'd.

As the Companies draw up, the Captains or Officers who command them, should immediately face their Men, and order them to cover their File-leaders, and see that they do it; after which, they are to face to their proper Front.

If this Method be duly observ'd (which, from its being so easy and plain, can admit of no Difficulty) it will effectually answer the End propos'd, that of saving both the Trouble and Time, which the other will of course take up; a Fault which ought to be avoided, that the Soldiers may not be kept too long under Arms, before they proceed to the Exercise, in order to have it well perform'd. Besides, the old Method of compleating the Files of the whole Battalion to the Right and Left, has, in my Opinion, more the Air of Militia than Soldiers.

The Intervals which remain between the Companies, after the odd Men are form'd, may be clos'd by facing the Companies to the Right and Left inwards, or by ordering the Flank Men of those Companies where the Intervals happen, to divide the Ground between them, which is by much the easiest and shortest Way.

The Company of Granadiers is always to draw up on the Right of the Colonel's, and to leave an Interval between them equal to the Front of the Company, that when the Files are opened, they may join the Battalion.

When the Battalion draws up six deep, the Granadiers are to do the same; and when the Battalion is drawn up four deep, for the punishing of the Soldiers, by making them run the Gauntlet, the Granadiers are to do so too; but if the Battalion does it on Account of its being weak, then the Granadiers generally draw up three deep.

ARTICLE II.

As soon as the odd Men are formed, and the Intervals clos'd, the Major is to order the Officers to take their Posts in Battalion; which is done by Seniority of Commission, thus: The eldest Captain is to place himself on the Right of the Battalion, the second Captain on the Left, the third Captain on the Left of the eldest, the fourth on the Right of the second Captain, and so on till the youngest Ensign comes in the Center.

The Captains and Subalterns are to dress in the same Line, about two good Paces before the Front-rank of Men, and to divide the Ground equally between them, so as to cover the Front of the Battalion.

There must be a Serjeant placed on the Right and Left Flank of each Rank, who are to dress them as often as there is an Occasion; the rest of the Serjeants are to range

themselves in the Rear of the Battalion, about four Paces from the Rear-rank of Men.

When a good many Serjeants are absent, or wanting, they should place but three on the right Wing, and three on the left, giving to each Serjeant an entire Rank to dress. Thus, to those on the Right, the first, third, and fifth Ranks; and to those on the Left, the second, fourth, and sixth Ranks.

The Drummers are to be divided into three Divisions, the Drum-major with the first Division are to post themselves on the Right of the Colonel's Company, the second Division on the Left of the Lieutenant-Colonel's, and both to dress in a Line with the Front-rank of Men. The third Division of Drummers and the Hautboys are to post themselves in the Rear of the Ensigns in the Center.

The Officers of Granadiers, with the Serjeants and Drummers, remain with their own Company, and the Officers and Serjeants dress with those of the Battalion. The Captain posts himself in the Center, the eldest Lieutenant on the Right, and the second Lieutenant on the Left of the Company. The Drummers place themselves on the Right, and in a Line with the Front-rank of Granadiers.

When the Battalion is drawn up, the Colonel's Post is in the Center, and about four Paces before the Ensigns with the Colours. The Lieutenant-Colonel's Post is a little to the Left of the Colonel's, and about three Paces from the Rank of Officers, that the Colonel may be a Pace advanced before him.

When there is no General, or superior Officer present to see the Exercise perform'd, the Colonel does not take his Post at the Head of the Battalion, but remains in the Front, without taking his Half-pike in his Hand, to give the Major the necessary Orders about the Exercise, &c. In this case the Lieutenant-Colonel is to post himself at the Head of the Battalion with his Half-pike in his Hand; but if the Colonel is absent, he then remains in the Front in the same Manner as before mentioned for the Colonel, the sole Command then devolving on the Lieutenant-Colonel.

Whenever the Regiment is drawn out, no Officer must be absent without Leave from the Commanding Officer; but each stand at the Post assign'd him in the Rules of Exercise, with his Arms in his Hand, expecting such Orders as he may receive, either to exercise the whole Battalion, a Part of it, or a single Company, as the commanding Officer

shall direct; which he is always to perform with his Half-pike or Partisan in his Hand.

ARTICLE III.

The Officers having taken their Posts in the Front of the Battalion, and the Ranks and Files being dressed, the Colours are then to be sent for; which is usually perform'd in the following Manner.

The Major is to order one of the Granadier Drummers to beat the Drummers Call; upon which the Ensigns who are to carry the Colours, and the Drum-major with one Half or two Thirds of the Drummers, are to repair to the Head of the Company of Granadiers, where the Drummers are to be form'd into Ranks in the Rear of the Ensigns, facing outwards. A Lieutenant, 2 Serjeants, and 24 Granadiers are to march with the Ensigns, and guard the Colours to the Regiment, who are generally taken from the Left of the Company, and march with their Firelocks rested on their Left Arms, without fixing their Bayonets 'till they receive the Colours. The Words of Command to the Granadiers (and which are given by the Lieutenant) are as follow:

- | | | |
|---|---|-------------------------|
| I. Poize your Firelocks - - - - - | 2 | } Number of
Motions. |
| II. Rest your Firelocks on your Left Arms - - - | 1 | |

When this is done, the Lieutenant places himself two Paces before the Ensigns, and marches to the Colonel's Quarters, or Place where the Colours are lodg'd; the Drummers, with the Drum-major at their Head, marching in the Rear of the Ensigns, beat the Troop, and the Granadiers, four in a Rank, march immediately after the Drummers, one Serjeant marches on the right Flank of the Guard, and the other in the Rear of the Rear-rank, with their Halbards advanced.

Note, In sending for the Colours, the Compliment then paid by the Battalion, is that of Shoulder'd Arms; but when the Colours are brought to the Regiment, they are receiv'd with rested Arms, and the Drummers, who remain, beat a March, which is the Reason that one Third of the Drummers, at least, remain with the Battalion. The same Compliment is paid to the Colours when they are sent from the Battalion; but when the Ensigns go for the Colours, and return

return without them, the Battalion is only to be shoulder'd.

As soon as the Lieutenant comes to the Place where the Colours are lodged, he is to draw out his Detachment three deep, by ordering the Rear-half-files to draw up on the Left of the Front-half-files, and then order the Granadiers to fix their Bayonets, as follows:

- | | | |
|---|-------------|-------------------------|
| I. Poize your Firelocks | — — — — — 2 | } Number of
Motions. |
| II. Rest on your Arms | — — — — — 3 | |
| III. Draw your Bayonets | — — — — — 2 | |
| IV. Fix your Bayonets | — — — — — 4 | |
| V. Recover your Arms | — — — — — 2 | |
| VI. Rest your Firelocks on your Left Arms | — — — — — 1 | |

After these Motions are perform'd, the Ensigns are to take the Colours, and the Lieutenant marches back to the Battalion in the same Order that he came from it, the Ensigns carrying the Colours advanced, and letting them fly.

As soon as the Lieutenant comes to the Battalion, he must draw up his Detachment on the right or left Flank, (according to which Flank he comes to first) and halt his Men; but the Ensigns with the Colours, followed by the Drummers, are to move on 'till they advance a little before the Officers of the Battalion, and then wheel to the Right or Left inward, according to the Flank they are on, and march along the Front of the Officers 'till they come to their Posts in the Center, which they are to fall into, the Ensigns with the Colonel's Colours taking the Right, the Ensign with the Lieutenant-Colonel's Colours the Left, and the Major's (if they have three Colours) the Center. When the Ensigns fall into their Posts, the Drum-major is to wheel the Drummers to the Front, and march them about ten Paces forward, then halt; and after he has order'd them to cease Beating, he is to send them to their respective Posts.

When the Ensigns with the Colours and the Drummers have wheel'd inwards, in order to march to the Center, the Lieutenant is to order the Granadiers to face to the Right, (if they are drawn up on the Left of the Battalion) and march along the Ranks to their former Ground, the Lieutenant with the Front-rank of Granadiers marching between the Officers and the Front-rank of the Battalion; but if they are drawn up on the Right of the Granadier Company, he is then to face his Detachment to the Left, and march it

along the Front of the Granadiers only, and as soon as they come on their former Ground, he is to order them to halt, and immediately proceed to unfix the Bayonets, by the following Words of Command.

I. Poize your Firelocks —	1	} Number of Motions,
II. Rest on your Arms —	3	
III. Unfix your Bayonets —	2	
IV. Return your Bayonets —	4	
V. Poize your Firelocks —	3	
VI. Shoulder your Firelocks —	3	

After this, the Major is to order the Battalion to shoulder their Arms.

When the Parade is at any considerable Distance from the Place where the Colours are lodged, it is usual for the Field-Officers Companies to assemble there, and carry them with them to the Place of Exercise, that no Time may be lost in the sending for them. In this Case, the Captain-Lieutenant marches at the Head of the first Division, or Front-half-files, and the Ensign who carries the Colonel's Colours, at the Head of the second Division, or Rear-half-files; the Soldiers having their Arms shoulder'd, and the Drummers, (who fall in between the first and second Ranks of the first Division) beating a March. The Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's Companies, if there are three Colours, are to observe the same Method in carrying their Colours with them; and if the proper Officers belonging to those Companies are absent, others must be ordered to them for that Purpose.

When the Colours are brought in this Manner, they are to remain with the Companies till the Officers are order'd to take their Posts at the Head of the Battalion, at which Word of Command, the Ensigns are to march with them to the Center.

As soon as the Colours are to be sent back, (or lodged, according to the military Phrase) the Drummers Call is to be beat at the Head of the Granadiers; on which the Ensigns with the Colours, and the Drum-major, with the same Number of Drummers, are to repair thither immediately, and draw up as before. The Lieutenant of Granadiers is then to order the same Detachment, or an equal Number of Granadiers to fix their Bayonets, and rest them on their Left Arms: And as soon as the Major has ordered the Battalion to present their Arms, he is to march back the Colours to the

the Place where they are to be lodg'd, the Drummers beating the Troop as before. The Ensigns are to carry the Colours back in the same Manner they brought them, that is, advanced and flying; and as soon as they arrive at the Place, and the Detachment is drawn up, they are to furl the Colours, and lodge them. When this is done, the Lieutenant is to order the Granadiers to unfix, and return their Bayonets, and rest their Firelocks on their left Arms; after which he is to march back in the same Manner he carried the Colours to the Battalion, unless he is ordered to dismiss his Men as soon as the Colours are lodged; in which Case, when the Bayonets are returned, instead of Poizing, he is to order them to rest their Firelock, then club, and dismiss them with the Ruff of a Drum.

As soon as the Colours are brought to the Battalion, the several Divisions are to be told off, and the Officers appointed to them, that they may know on which they are to march or wheel. After which each Division is to be subdivided into two equal Parts, that on the Right of each Division being called Right-half-ranks, and that on the Left of each, Left-half-ranks, of which the Men are to be thoroughly apprized, lest a Mistake should happen in the Doubling to the Right or Left in the Evolutions.

ARTICLE IV.

After the Divisions are told off, the Major is to proceed to the Opening of Files by the following Words of Command.

To the Left open your Files.

At this, both the Officers and Soldiers face nimbly to the Left on their right Heels, with this Exception, that the File on the Right of the Granadiers, with the Lieutenant on the Right of that Company, and the File on the Right of the Battalion, and the eldest Captain stand still.

The Serjeants on the right Flank of the Battalion, and the first Division of Drummers face at the same Time to the Right on their left Heels, in which Position the whole are to remain till the next Word of Command. But before we proceed, it will be necessary to give Directions for the proper Distances of Ranks and Files, according to the several Occasions, that what is now treating of may be clearly understood by the Reader.

The

The several Distances of Ranks.

In the Drawing up of a Battalion for Exercise, or a Review, the Ranks are to be at four ordinary Paces Distance from one another.

When they are to fire, either by Ranks, Platoons, the whole Battalion, or in the Square, the Ranks are to be moved up to half Distance, which is two Paces.

In all Wheelings, either by Division or the whole Battalion, the Ranks are to be closed forward to close Order, which is to one Pace Distance.

Distances of Files.

When a Regiment is to exercise or to be reviewed, the Files are to be opened, the Distance of which between one another, is one Pace, or the Length of an out-stretch'd Arm; but that this may appear more plain, as soon as the Files are open'd, and the Men faced to their proper Front, order those of the Front-rank to stretch out their right Arms to the Right, and if they can touch the left Shoulders of their Right-hand Men, they have then their true Distance; the doing of which now and then, will give them a just Notion of the proper Distance. As the Men of the Rear-ranks are to be govern'd by, and dress with those in the Front, who are called their File-leaders, there is no Occasion for their doing it.

When they are to fire, the Files are to be at half a Pace Distance; that the Men may have room to handle their Arms in firing and loading; which Distance is the half of an out-stretch'd Arm; that is, when the Hand is set bent against the Side, the Elbow is to touch the Right-hand Man.

In Marching or Wheeling, the Files must be so close, that the Men almost touch one another with their Shoulders. These being all the Distances of Ranks and Files which is necessary to be known for the performing of every Part of the Service now practis'd, I shall proceed to the second Word of Command in the Opening of Files.

MARCH.

As soon as this is given, the Division of Drummers on the Left lift up their right Feet together, and march very slow (without opening their Distance from one another)

ther) in a direct Line to the Left. The Serjeants on the left Flank of the Battalion, carrying their Halbards with both Hands before them, the Spears upwards, move at the same Time to the Left, beginning also with the right Feet; and as soon as they have open'd to a proper Distance (which is a Pace) from the left-hand File of the Battalion, that File is then to move; and so one File after another, 'till the whole are open'd, taking care to keep their proper Distance as already directed.

The left-hand File of the Company of Granadiers move at the same Time with that on the Left of the Battalion, each File of the said Company doing the same when that before it has got its Distance; and when the File on the Left of the Granadiers comes within a large Pace of the File on the Right of the Battalion, it is to stand, on which, all the Granadiers are to do the same, and to remain in that Position 'till the whole Battalion have open'd. If the Interval between the Granadiers and the Battalion was only equal to the Front of the Company when the Files were closed, that Space will be entirely taken up when open'd, without leaving any other Interval between them than what should be, which is a Pace.

The Drum-major with the first Division of Drummers, and the Serjeants on the right Flank of the Battalion, who faced to the Right, are to move at the same Time with the left-hand File of Granadiers, beginning with their left Feet, and march very slow to the Right of the Company of Granadiers, which when they pass'd, they are to stand, 'till the Word *Halt* is given to the Whole. The Serjeants are to carry their Halbards before them, as those on the Left are directed.

In opening of Files, each File must move at once, all the Men in it beginning with the same Feet, and taking them up and setting them down together. For this End, the Men in the Front-rank, who are called the File-leaders, must take great Care not to begin, 'till those before them are at a proper Distance, the other five Ranks being to observe their Motions, and keep an equal Pace with them, that the Whole may move like one Man. For the doing of this in exact Time, and with the more Ease, the following Rule, if observ'd, will make it appear both regular and beautiful; as also give to each File its proper Distance.

Rules

The several Distances of Ranks.

In the Drawing up of a Battalion for Exercise, or a Review, the Ranks are to be at four ordinary Paces Distance from one another.

When they are to fire, either by Ranks, Platoons, the whole Battalion, or in the Square, the Ranks are to be moved up to half Distance, which is two Paces.

In all Wheelings, either by Division or the whole Battalion, the Ranks are to be closed forward to close Order, which is to one Pace Distance.

Distances of Files.

When a Regiment is to exercise or to be reviewed, the Files are to be opened, the Distance of which between one another, is one Pace, or the Length of an out-stretch'd Arm; but that this may appear more plain, as soon as the Files are open'd, and the Men faced to their proper Front, order those of the Front-rank to stretch out their right Arms to the Right, and if they can touch the left Shoulders of their Right-hand Men, they have then their true Distance; the doing of which now and then, will give them a just Notion of the proper Distance. As the Men of the Rear-ranks are to be govern'd by, and dress with those in the Front, who are called their File-leaders, there is no Occasion for their doing it.

When they are to fire, the Files are to be at half a Pace Distance; that the Men may have room to handle their Arms in firing and loading; which Distance is the half of an out-stretch'd Arm; that is, when the Hand is set bent against the Side, the Elbow is to touch the Right-hand Man.

In Marching or Wheeling, the Files must be so close, that the Men almost touch one another with their Shoulders. These being all the Distances of Ranks and Files which is necessary to be known for the performing of every Part of the Service now practis'd, I shall proceed to the second Word of Command in the Opening of Files.

MARCH.

As soon as this is given, the Division of Drummers on the Left lift up their right Feet together, and march very slow (without opening their Distance from one another)

ther) in a direct Line to the Left. The Serjeants on the left Flank of the Battalion, carrying their Halbards with both Hands before them, the Spears upwards, move at the same Time to the Left, beginning also with the right Feet ; and as soon as they have open'd to a proper Distance (which is a Pace) from the left-hand File of the Battalion, that File is then to move ; and so one File after another, 'till the whole are open'd, taking care to keep their proper Distance as already directed.

The left-hand File of the Company of Granadiers move at the same Time with that on the Left of the Battalion, each File of the said Company doing the same when that before it has got its Distance ; and when the File on the Left of the Granadiers comes within a large Pace of the File on the Right of the Battalion, it is to stand, on which, all the Granadiers are to do the same, and to remain in that Position 'till the whole Battalion have open'd. If the Interval between the Granadiers and the Battalion was only equal to the Front of the Company when the Files were closed, that Space will be entirely taken up when open'd, without leaving any other Interval between them than what should be, which is a Pace.

The Drum-major with the first Division of Drummers, and the Serjeants on the right Flank of the Battalion, who faced to the Right, are to move at the same Time with the left-hand File of Granadiers, beginning with their left Feet, and march very slow to the Right of the Company of Granadiers, which when they pass'd, they are to stand, 'till the Word *Halt* is given to the Whole. The Serjeants are to carry their Halbards before them, as those on the Left are directed.

In opening of Files, each File must move at once, all the Men in it beginning with the same Feet, and taking them up and setting them down together. For this End, the Men in the Front-rank, who are called the File-leaders, must take great Care not to begin, 'till those before them are at a proper Distance, the other five Ranks being to observe their Motions, and keep an equal Pace with them, that the Whole may move like one Man. For the doing of this in exact Time, and with the more Ease, the following Rule, if observ'd, will make it appear both regular and beautiful ; as also give to each File its proper Distance.

Rules

Rules for the Opening of Files.

In the Opening and Closing of Files, or Marching all together to the Right or Left to change their Ground, they should begin with the Feet next the Front.

When they face to the Right, the Men should do it on their left Heels ; and when they face to the Left, they should do it on their right Heels. My Reason for it is as follows :

By their falling back, their Feet to the Front will be in an exact Line ; whereas if they moved up, as was practis'd formerly, and, I believe, still used, it will not be so, occasion'd by one Man stepping further out than another, from their not being all of an equal Height, and consequently make the front appear uneven. Besides, it is a standing Rule, that the Men are to begin to march with the Feet they faced on : so that by moving up, they must begin with the Feet next the Rear, which will not, in my Opinion, appear so graceful, as beginning with those next the Front. But as these little Niceties are not very essential, it may be done either Way, as the commanding Officer shall direct, till one Method is prescrib'd to the whole ; which would be very proper, and not leave every one to act according to their own crude Notions or Caprice.

As soon as the Men of the first File on the Left of the Battalion lift up their right Feet a second Time, the Men of the second File are to lift up their right Feet ; and when those of the second File lift up their right Feet a second Time, the Men on the third File are to begin with their Right Feet. All the other Files are to follow the same Directions, 'till the whole have open'd.

In the doing of this, they are to take but short Steps, and to move on very slow, but with an equal Pace, lifting up and setting down of their right and left Feet with one another, thus : All who are in Motion must lift up and set down their right Feet together, and do the same with their left.

The bringing of a Battalion to such Exactness, as to perform it in due Time, will, I am afraid, appear so difficult, that it will deter a great many from attempting it ; but let those who are of this Opinion, only try, and they will find it much easier in the Execution than they imagined.

The common Objection against it is, that it looks too much like Dancing, and makes the Men appear with too stiff an Air. I own it may have this Effect in the Beginning ; but

but a little Time and Practice will bring the Men to perform it in so easy and genteel a Manner, that the Objection will vanish. But as the Evolutions are perform'd in exact Time, why is not the same Objection rais'd against them? Because we are accustom'd to the one and not to the other. If this is the Case, then Time will reconcile this also. Besides I think it just as reasonable, that the first Movements of a Battalion, which is the Opening of Files, should be perform'd with as much Regularity and Exactness as those which come last. A great many other Reasons may be brought to support this Argument, were there an Occasion for it, such as the bringing of the Men to walk with a bolder Air, giving them a freer Use of their Limbs, and a Notion of Time; which, in my Opinion, are sufficient to silence those who oppose it; and therefore I shall not trouble the Reader any further, but proceed to the Point in Hand.

The Men of the five Rear-ranks must keep in a strait Line with their File-leaders, and neither close nor open their Ranks in Marching; and all carry their Arms high and firm on their Shoulders, looking up and keeping their Bodies strait.

The Officers are to carry their Half-pikes or Partisans downwards, and the Ensigns to advance the Colours.

No Officer is to move 'till the File opposite to him does; and when the Men of that File step forward with their right Feet, he is to do the same with his, keeping an equal Pace and in a direct Line with them; by the Observance of which Rule, the Officers will, when they Halt, have their proper Distance between them; provided it was equally divided before the Files were opened, which will save them the Trouble of moving afterwards.

The Serjeants in the Rear must observe the same Rule; only they must carry their Halbards as directed for those on the Flanks.

As soon as the second File on the Right of the Battalion, which is the last to open, steps forward, the Major is to proceed to the following Word of Command.

HALT.

On the giving of this Word of Command, the Officers and Soldiers are to face briskly to the Right on their right Heels, those Feet being then foremost, if the foregoing Rules are duly observed; but lest they should not, a Stroke of a
Drum,

Drum, or any other Signal, may be given when they are to Stand, that they may have Time to place their right Feet, either in a Line with their left, or a little before them; and after a Pause of half a Minute, the Major is to give the Word, *Halt*; by which Means, the whole will perform it like one Man. As soon as they are faced, they are to dress the Ranks and Files.

ARTICLE V.

When the Ranks and Files are dress'd, the Officers are to take their Post of Exercise in the Rear of the Battalion. If by Beat of Drum, it is to be performed in the following Manner.

First, the Major is to direct the Orderly Drummer to beat a Ruff (one being to attend for that Purpose) to give the Officers Notice. After that a Flam, or double Stroke; at which the Lieutenant Colonel (unless he commands the Regiment in the Absence of the Colonel) and the rest of the Officers, face to the Right about on their left Heels. At the second Flam, they are to advance their Half-pikes, and the Serjeants on the Flanks their Halbards. At the third Flam, the Officers, Serjeants on the Flanks, the three Divisions of Drummers, and the Hautboys, are all to march to their Posts, beginning with the left Feet.

The Officers are to march thro' the Battalion, and when they have got eight Paces beyond the Serjeants in the Rear, they are to stand; but the Lieutenant Colonel is to march four Paces beyond the Officers, and then stand.

The Serjeants on the Flanks are to march in a direct Line to the Front, and as soon as the two Serjeants who were placed on the Flanks of the Foot-rank have marched about forty Paces, they are to stand, on which the other Serjeants are to do the same, taking Care to divide the Ground on the Flanks equally among them.

The Drummers are to march and form themselves in a Rank entire behind the Major, on the Right of whom the Hautboys are to place themselves.

When the Major finds that the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Hautboys have got to their Posts of Exercise, he is to order another Flam to be beat; at which the Officers, Drummers, and Hautboys, face to the Left-about on their left Heels. The Serjeants on the right Flank are to face to the Left on their left Heels, and the Serjeants on the left Flank are

to

to face to the Right on their right Heels. As soon as they have faced, the Officers are to plant their Half-pikes, the Ensigns their Colours, and the Serjeants their Halbards on their Right; in which Position they are to remain, with their Arms in their Hands, 'till they are ordered to their former Post after the Exercise is over. The Drummers are to have their Drums always brac'd and slung during the Time the Battalion is under Arms, and to remain at the several Posts assign'd them.

As soon as the Exercise is over, the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Hautboys, are to be ordered to their former Posts, in the following Manner.

First a Ruff of a Drum to warn them; then a Flam, at which the Officers are to advance their Half-pikes, the Ensigns their Colours, and the Serjeants their Halbards; after which the Serjeants on the right Flank are to face to the Left on their left Heels, and the Serjeants on the Left are to face to the Right on their right Heels. At the second Flam, the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Hautboys, march to their former Posts; and as soon as they have all got to their Ground, the Major orders the Drum to beat a third Flam; at which, the Officers plant their Half-pikes, and the Ensigns their Colours, and the Serjeants, Drummers, and Hautboys, face to the Left-about on their right Heels, after which the Serjeants plant their Halbards.

The Officers are to perform every Part of the foregoing Ceremonies together, both in Advancing their Half-pikes and Planting them, Facing, Marching, and Halting, for the doing of which, they are to take every Motion from the Officer on the Right.

When the Officers are to take their Posts of Exercise by Word of Command, it is to be done as follows.

I. Officers take your Posts in the Rear of the Battalion.

At this Word of Command, they are to perform what is directed by the first Flam.

II. March. When this is delivered, they are to do what is order'd to be perform'd by the second and third Flams, and to remain in that Position 'till the following Word of Command is given to the Battalion.

Take Care. At which they are to face and plant their Arms as is directed by the fourth Flam.

In taking their Posts by Word of Command when the Exercise is over, it is to be done as follows.

I. Officers

I. *Officers take your Posts in the Front of the Battalion.*

At this they are only to stand ready, as is directed by the Ruff.

II. *March.* When this Word is given, they are to perform all the Ceremonies which are directed to be done by the first, second, and third Flams.

A R T I C L E VI.

As soon as the Officers, &c. are returned to their Posts, the Files are to be closed by the following Words of Command.

I. *To the Right close your Files.*

The eldest Captain, and the Right-hand File of the Battalion, and the eldest Lieutenant, and the Right-hand File of the Company of Granadiers, stand as before directed in Opening. All the rest face at once to the Right on their left Heels; except the six Serjeants, and the first Division of Drummers (on the Right of the Granadiers) who face to the Left on their right Heels. As soon as they are faced, the Ensigns advance the Colours, and the Serjeants their Halbards, then the Major proceeds.

II. *March.* At this Command, they all lift up the Feet they faced on together, and march slow 'till the Files are closed to their former Distance, which is to an half Pace.

The Serjeants and the first Division of Drummers are to march along the Ranks of the Granadiers, 'till they come to the right Flank of the Battalion, and then stand, facing to the Left.

The Officers march with their Arms downwards, the Ensigns with their Colours, and the Serjeants with their Halbards advanced; and all observe the same Rule in Closing as in Opening, by keeping an equal Pace, and directly in a Line with the File next them, and standing when they do; by observing of which they will have no Occasion to divide their Ground when they halt.

The Men are to follow the Directions, in lifting up and setting down of the same Feet together; and when they close to their proper Distance, they are to stand, placing the Feet they faced on a little before the other; after which the Major gives the following Word of Command,

III. *Halt.*

III. *Halt.* At this, all face to their proper Front on the same Feet they just before faced on, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

If the Battalion is to be dismiss'd, as soon as the Files are closed, the Colours are to be lodged in the Manner already directed; after which the Major orders the Officers, Serjeants and Drummers to their Companies, and then orders the whole to club, by these Words,

I. *Rest your Firelocks.* II. *Club your Firelocks.*

As soon as these Motions are perform'd, the Companies may be ordered to march off from the Right or Left to their Barracks, or Place where they are to be dismissed.

Whenever the Men march with clubb'd Arms, the Officers are to advance their Half-pikes, and the Serjeants their Halbards, the Captain and Ensign are to march in the Front, (but the Ensign a little behind the Captain,) and the Lieutenant in the Rear of the Company or Detachment: The Drummers are to march between the Ensign and the Front Rank of Men, beating the Troop.

All the Officers of Grenadiers march in the Front of the Company, either to or from the Parade, or with shoulder'd or clubb'd Arms, the Captain being one Pace advanced before his Lieutenants. Two Serjeants march on the Flanks, and one in the Rear of the Rear-rank, (who is generally the eldest;) and when they march with clubb'd Arms, the Serjeants are to advance their Halbards. The Drummers are to march, when they beat the Troop, in the Rear of their Officers, as those of the Battalion; but when they march with shoulder'd Arms, they are always to fall in between the first and second Ranks of the first Division.

When the Regiment draws out, the Major and Adjutant should be always on Horseback, it being impossible for them to perform their Duty on Foot, in the Manner it ought to be. They are likewise to exercise the Regiment on Horseback; but no other Officer is to do it mounted, unless such, who, in their Absence, are appointed to do their Duty.

When the commanding Officer orders any of the other Officers to exercise the Battalion, or a Part of it, they are to do it on Foot with their Half-pikes or Partisans in their Hands. This should be frequently done for the Instruction of the Officers, that, upon the Absence of the Major and Adjutant, they may have a Number sufficiently qualified to act in those Posts.

Whoever exercises a Battalion, or any Number of Men, should place himself opposite to the Center, and at such a Distance that he may take in the Whole at one View ; but if that Distance is too far off for his Voice, he may place himself nearer, tho' still opposite to the Center.

As the performing of the Exercise well, depends a great deal on the giving of the Words of Command ; those who exercise, should deliver the Words clear and distinct, that the Men may not mistake one Command for another.

Whoever would attain to any Perfection in it, must study the Compass of his Voice, that he may not overstrain it, lest it cause an immediate Hoarseness ; as also the laying of the Emphasis in the Right Place, and where to make the proper Stops, or Pauses, when the Command is too long to be pronounced at one Breath. Besides, Stops, or Pauses, when judiciously made, are of great Service to the Men, in giving them Time to think on the Word of Command before it is fully deliver'd ; and consequently, preparing them for the performing it with Life, Vigour, and Exactness. But as the coming to this Knowledge will prove tedious to young Officers, without some farther Assistance than that of mentioning it, I have placed Comma's where the Stops or Pauses should be made ; which, if observ'd, will aid and assist an indifferent Voice, and give Beauty and Force to a good one ; and enable every one to give the Words of Command with more Ease to themselves, and Clearness to the Men. The rest must depend on Practice, Precept alone not being sufficient to arrive at Perfection in any Art.

Directions for the Position of a Soldier under Arms.

I. A Soldier having his Firelock shoulder'd, must stand with a strait Body, holding up his Head without moving, and always looking towards the commanding Officer, or he who exercises the Battalion ; nor to use any Motion but what the Word of Command, when given, directs.

II. His Feet are to be at one Step Distance, the Heels in a strait Line, and the Toes turn'd a little outward.

III. The Firelock must lie on the left Shoulder, and the left Hand on the Butt-end, the Thumb being placed in the Hollow thereof, pressing the Guard hard against the Breast, that the Muzzle may be mounted ; the Lock must be turn'd a little outward till the under Part of the Butt End is brought opposite to the Middle of the Body, that the Firelock may be more easily borne.

IV.

IV. The left Elbow must be turned a little outward from the Body, but without any Constraint to the Arm; and the right Arm to hang in an easy Posture down the right Side, with the Palm of the Hand turn'd to the Thigh.



CHAP II.

The Manual Exercise of the Foot; with an Explanation.

Take Care.



On the giving of this Command, there must be a profound Silence observ'd thro' the whole Battalion; nor must any of the Soldiers make any Motion with their Heads, Bodies, Hands, or Feet, but such as are requir'd for the Performing of the following Words of Command.

I. *Join your Right Hands to your Firelocks, 1 Motion.*

The Firelock being carried in the forementioned Position upon the left Shoulder, you must turn the Lock upward with your left Hand, and at the same Time taking hold with your right behind the Cock, placing the Thumb on the lower Part of the Stock, and the Fingers on the upper, keeping both Elbows square, that is, in an equal Line, but not constrain'd; as is frequently done by raising them above the Level. The Muzzle of the Firelock must be kept at the same Height as it was when shoulder'd.

Note, The first Motion of every Word of Command is to be perform'd immediately after it is given; but before you proceed to any of the other Motions, you must tell, *One, Two*, pretty slow, by making a Stop between the Words; and on the pronouncing of the Word *Two*, the Motion is to be performed.

II. *Poize your Firelocks.* 1 Motion.

At this Word of Command, with both Hands and a quick Motion bring up the Firelock from your Shoulder, thrusting it from you at the same Time with your right Hand (and letting your left fall down your left Side) turning the Lock outward, the Thumb inward, directly opposite to your Face, and your Feet in the same Position as when shoulder'd.

III. *Join your Left Hands to your Firelocks.* 2 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with the Barrel towards you, and at the same Time seize it with the left Hand, just over the Lock; so that the little Finger may touch it, holding the Firelock with both Hands, and extending your Arms as much as you can without Constraint; then tell 1, 2, and with a quick Motion bring the Firelock down to your right Side, the Butt-end as low as the Middle of your Thigh, the Muzzle pointing a little forward, the Stock in the left Hand with the Thumb upward, your right on the Cock, the Fore-finger before the Tricker, and the others behind the Guard. At the same Time that you bring down the Firelock, you must step a little Back with your right Foot, the Toe pointing to the Right, the right Knee stiff, and the left a little bending, keeping your Body very strait. The Firelock must be held on the right Side at a little Distance from the Body, and both the Body and Face must present themselves to the Front as much as possible without Constraint.

IV. *Cock your Firelocks.* 2 Motions.

Bring up the Firelock with both Hands before you, keeping your Thumb on the Cock, and the Fore-finger on the Tricker; and at the same Time bring up the right Foot, placing the Heel within an Half foot of the Hollow of the Left, and the Toe pointing to the Right. The Firelock must be brought up close to the Breast, that you may bend the Cock with the more Ease at the second Motion; then tell 1, 2, and cock, and at the same Time thrust the Firelock briskly from you with both Hands directly before the Center of your Body, keeping the Muzzle upright.

V. *Present*

V. *Present.* 1 Motion.

In Presenting, take away your Thumb from the Cock, and move your right Foot a little back, the Toe turn'd a little to the Right, the Body to the Front, and place the Butt-end in the Hollow betwixt your Breast and Shoulder, keeping your Fore-finger before the Tricker (but without touching it) and the other three behind the Guard, the Elbows in an equal Line (which is call'd Square) the Head upright, the Body strait, only press'd a little forward against the Butt-end of the Firelock, the right Knee stiff, and the left a little bending: The Muzzle should be a little lower than the Butt, in order to take Aim at the Center of the Body.

VI. *Fire.*

As soon as this Word of Command is given, draw the Tricker briskly with the Fore-finger, which was placed on it before; and tho' the Cock should not go down with that Pull, you are not to attempt it a second Time, being only to draw the Tricker but once at Exercise.

VII. *Recover your Arms.* 1 Motion.

Bring up the Firelock with a quick Motion before you, placing the right Heel near the Hollow of the left Foot; observing the same Position of Hands, Body and Firelock, as is directed by the second Motion in Explanation 4.

VIII. *Half-cock your Firelocks.* 2 Motions.

Bring your Firelock close to your Breast, and half-bend the Cock; then tell 1, 2, and thrust it from you with both Hands to the former Position.

IX. *Handle your Primers.* 3 Motions.

Fall back quick with the right Foot behind the Left at a moderate Pace Distance, placing the Heels in a Line with one another, the left Toe pointing directly to the Front, and the Right towards the Right of the Rank, the left Knee bending a little to the Front, and keeping the right Knee stiff; at the same Time bringing down your Firelock

with both Hands to a Level, the Muzzle pointing directly to the Front. Tell 1, 2, and quitting the Firelock with the right Hand, take hold of the Primer, placing your Thumb on the Spring-cover. Tell again 1, 2, and bring it within an Hand's Breadth of the Pan.

X. *Prime, 2 Motions.*

Hold the Firelock firm in the left Hand, and with the right turn up the Primer and shake as much Powder into the Pan as is necessary. Then tell 1, 2, and bring it back to its former Place behind the Butt, and remain in that Posture 'till the following Word of Command.

XI. *Shut your Pans. 4 Motions.*

Let fall the Primer and take hold of the Steel with the right Hand, placing the Thumb on the upper Part, and the two Fore-fingers on the lower. Tell 1, 2, and shut the Pan. Tell 1, 2, and seize the Firelock behind the Lock with the right Hand. Then tell 1, 2, and bring your Firelock to a Recover, as in Explanation 7.

XII. *Cast about to Charge. 2 Motions.*

Turn the Firelock with both Hands, 'till the Barrel comes outwards; then tell 1, 2, and let go the right Hand, bringing down the Firelock with the left, take hold of the Muzzle with the right Hand, stepping one Pace forward at the same Time with the right Foot, tho' not directly before the left, but placed a little to the Right, that the Body may present itself the better to the Front. This Motion must be perform'd in such a Manner, that the bringing down of the Firelock, stepping forward with the right Foot, and taking hold of the Muzzle, be done at the same Instant of Time. Hold the Barrel downward in a full Hand, placing the right Thumb upwards near the Rammer, keeping the Body strait, and the right Knee a little bent, holding the Firelock, with outstretch'd Arms, directly before your Body, the Muzzle standing to the Front.

XIII. *Handle*

XIII. *Handle your Cartridges.* 3 Motions.

Bring the Firelock with both Hands strait to your Body ; tell 1, 2, and quit the Firelock with your right Hand (holding it with your left about the Middle in a Balance, the Muzzle pointing a little forward) and at the same Time take hold of one of your Cartridges ; then tell 1, 2, and bring it within an Inch of the Side of the Muzzle, the Thumb upwards.

XIV. *Open your Cartridges.*

Bring the Cartridge to your Mouth and bite off the Top ; then tell 1, 2, and bring it again to the former Place near the Muzzle.

XV. *Charge with Cartridge.* 2 Motions.

Bring the Cartridge just above the Muzzle, and turning up the Hand and Elbow, fix it in it at the same Time ; then tell 1, 2, and slap your two Fingers on the Cartridge briskly to put it quite into the Barrel, and remain so with your right Elbow square, 'till the following Command.

XVI. *Draw your Rammers.* 4 Motions.

Seize the Rammer with the Fore-finger and Thumb of the right Hand, holding the Thumb upwards ; tell 1, 2, and draw it out as far as you can reach ; tell 1, 2, and take hold of it close to the Stock, turning the Thumb downwards, then tell 1, 2, and draw it quite out, holding it between the Thumb and the two Fore-fingers, the Arm stretched out, and in a Level with the right Shoulder, the small End of the Rammer towards you, and the other in a direct Line to the Front.

XVII. *Shorten your Rammers.* 3 Motions.

Move the little Finger, which supports the Rammer, and turn it briskly with the thick End downwards, holding it full in your right Hand, the Thumb upwards, keeping your Arm stretch'd out in a Line with your Shoulder. Tell 1, 2, and place the thick End against the lower Part of your

Breast ; then tell 1, 2, and slip your Hand down the Rammer, within a Hand's-breadth of the lower End, keeping it in a Line with the Barrel, the Thumb upwards, and the Elbow turn'd a little out from the Body.

XVIII. *Put them in the Barrels.* 6 Motions.

Bring the Rammer a little above the Muzzle, and place the thick End on the Cartridge ; tell 1, 2, and thrust down the Cartridge as far as your Hand will permit ; tell 1, 2, raise your Hand and seize the Rammer about the Middle ; tell 1, 2, and thrust it down till your Hand touches the Muzzle ; tell 1, 2, and seize it again at the Top ; then tell 1, 2, and thrust it down as far as it will go, holding the Rammer fast in your Hand, with the Thumb upwards.

XIX. *Ram down your Charge.* 2 Motions.

Draw your Rammer as far out as your Arm unforced will permit ; then tell 1, 2, and ram down the Cartridge with a moderate Force, but a quick Motion, holding your Rammer as before.

XX. *Recover your Rammers.* 3 Motions.

Draw the Rammer with a quick Motion, until half of it be out of the Barrel ; tell 1, 2, quit the Rammer and seize it close to the Muzzle with the Hand turn'd, the Thumb downwards ; then tell 1, 2, and draw it quite out of the Barrel, holding it with the thick End towards your Shoulder, observing the same Position as in Explanation 16.

XXI. *Shorten your Rammers.* 3 Motions.

Turn the small End of the Rammer down ; tell 1, 2, and place it against your Breast. Then tell 1, 2, and slip your Hand down the Rammer 'till it comes within a Foot of your Breast ; observing farther as in Explanation 17.

XXII. *Return your Rammers.* 6 Motions.

Bring the small End of the Rammer, with a gentle Turn, under the Barrel, and place it in the Stock ; tell 1, 2, and thrust it in as far as your Hand will permit ; tell 1, 2, raise your

your Hand, and seize the Rammer in the Middle; tell 1, 2, and thrust it down again till your Hand touches the Muzzle; tell 1, 2, raise your Hand, and place the Palm of it on the upper End of the Rammer; then tell 1, 2, and thrust it quite down.

XXIII. *Your Right Hands under the Lock.* 4 Motions.

[Note, *This was formerly perform'd by two Words of Command; but there being only four Motions in both, I have omitted the first, and included them under the second Word of Command.*]

Hold the Firelock firm to your Breast with your left Hand, and throw off your Right, extending it in a Line with your Shoulder; tell 1, 2, and take hold of the Firelock with a full Hand, placing the Thumb even with the Muzzle; tell 1, 2, and thrust the Firelock from you with both Hands, observing the same Position as is shewn in the second Motion in Explanation 12. Then tell 1, 2, and face on your left Heel to the Left, and turning the Muzzle up at the same Time, you are to seize the Firelock under the Cock with your right Hand, keeping it from your Body, and your Hands as low as your Arms, without Constraint, will permit.

XXIV. *Poize your Firelocks.* 1 Motion.

Come briskly to your proper Front, by facing to the Right on your left Heel, and at the same Time bring the Firelock before you with your right Hand, letting your left fall down by your Side, (extending the right Arm, as in Explanation 2. is directed) so that the bringing up of the Firelock, letting the left Hand fall, and the setting down of the right Foot must be done at the same Time.

XXV. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

Bring the Firelock with the right Hand opposite to the left Shoulder, turning the Barrel outwards, and the Guard inward, keeping the Muzzle strait up, and at the same Time seize the Butt-end with your left Hand, placing the Thumb in the Hollow thereof; tell 1, 2, and bring the Firelock with both Hands down upon the left Shoulder, without moving your Head, and keeping both Elbows square. Then tell

1, 2,

1, 2, and quit your right Hand, letting it fall down your right Side, and sinking your left Elbow at the same Time. Observe the Posture as describ'd in Explanation 1.

XXVI. Rest your Firelocks. 4 Motions.

Join your right Hand to your Firelock, as in Explanation 1. Tell 1, 2, and come to your Poize, as in Explanation 2. Tell 1, 2, and seize your Firelock with the left Hand, as in Explanation 3. Then tell 1, 2, and come down to your Rest, as is directed by the second Motion of Explanation 3.

XXVII. Order your Firelocks. 3 Motions.

Keep the right Hand in the same Position, and raise the Muzzle in a perpendicular Line, with the Left; tell 1, 2, and quit the Firelock with your right Hand, sinking it with the Left, and seize it at the same Time with the right Hand near the Muzzle, the Thumb upwards. Then tell 1, 2, quit your left Hand, and place the Butt-end of the Firelock with your right on the Ground, on the Outside of your right Foot, even with the little Toe. This Motion must be done briskly, and in such a Manner, that the right Foot and the Butt-end of the Firelock come to the Ground at the same Time. The Heels must be in a strait Line, the Toes turn'd outward, and that Part of the right Arm, from the Hand to the Elbow, must run along the Outside of the Firelock, and the left hanging down by the left Side.

XXVIII. Ground your Firelocks. 4 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with the right Hand 'till you bring the Barrel towards you, and the Lock pointing to the Rear, and, at the same Time, making an Half-face to the Right, lift up your right Foot, and place it against the flat Side of the Butt, the Toe pointing directly to the Right. Tell 1, 2, and step directly forward a moderate Pace, with the left Foot, slipping down the right Hand at the same Time, to the Middle of the Barrel, lay the Firelock on the Ground in a strait Line to the Front, the Lock upwards; tell 1, 2, raise yourself up again, bringing back your left Foot to its former Place, and keep your Body half-faced to the Right; then tell 1, 2, and turn your right Foot on the Heel, over the Butt-end, bringing your Body at the same Time to its proper

per Front, letting your Arms hang down by your Side in an easy Posture.

XXIX. *Take up your Firelocks.* 4 Motions.

Turn the right Foot, on the Heel, to the Right, bringing it over the Butt-end of the Firelock and placing it behind it; at the same Time, turn your right Hand, with an easy Motion, to the Right, making an Half-face with your Body to the Right also. Tell 1, 2, and step forward with the left Foot a moderate Pace, taking hold of the Firelock with the right Hand about the Middle of the Barrel; tell 1, 2, and raise up your self and Firelock, bringing back your left Foot at the same Time to its former Place. Then tell 1, 2, slip your right Hand up as high as the Muzzle, turning the Barrel towards your right Shoulder, and at the same Time raise up your right Foot, and place it on the Inside of the Butt; observing the same Position as directed by Explanation 27.

Note, That at the laying down and taking up of the Firelocks, the Solders are to hold up their Heads, and keep their right Knees as stiff as possible; and not step too far with their left Feet, that they may with the more Ease recover themselves.

XXX. *Rest your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

Turn your right Thumb inwards, and slip your right Hand down the Barrel, as far as your Arms, without Constraint, will permit. Tell 1, 2, raise the Firelock with the right Hand before you, and at the same Time take hold of it with the left just under the right; then tell 1, 2, let go your right Hand and place it under the Cock, stepping back with the right Foot at the same Time. Observe the same Position of Body, Feet, and Firelock, as is directed in Explanation 3.

XXXI. *Club your Firelocks.* 4 Motions.

Keep the Firelock firm in your left Hand, and cast it about with the right, bringing up the right Foot at the same Time, and taking hold of the Firelock with your right Hand as low as you can reach without Constraint, placing the Guard opposite to your Eyes, the Muzzle and left Thumb down-

downwards, and the Lock from you; tell 1, 2, let go the left Hand, and raise the Firelock with your right opposite to the left Shoulder, seizing it at the same Time with the left Hand within an Inch of the Muzzle, keeping your Arms stretched out, and the Firelock in a perpendicular Line, with the Butt upwards; tell 1, 2, and bring it to your left Shoulder with the Lock upwards, keeping your Elbows square. Then tell 1, 2, and quit the Firelock with your right Hand, bringing it down nimbly to your right Side, and letting your left Elbow fall down at the same Time; observing the same Position of Body as is directed in shoulder'd Arms.

XXXII. *Rest your Firelocks.* 4 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with your left Hand inwards, taking hold of it at the same Time with the right, an Handful above the left, keeping the Elbow square; tell 1, 2, and bring the Firelock with both Hands before the Center of your Body in a perpendicular Line, raising the Butt high, and extending your Arms; tell 1, 2, let go your left Hand, sinking the Firelock with the Right 'till the Guard comes opposite to your Eyes, seizing it near the Lock at the same Time with the left Hand, the Thumb downwards, and the right Thumb upwards. Then tell 1, 2, let go the right Hand, and turn the Firelock with your left, bringing the Butt-end down, and come to your Rest, by placing your right Hand under the Cock, and at the same Time stepping back with your right Foot.

XXXIII. *Secure your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

Come briskly to your Poize. Tell 1, 2, and bring the Firelock opposite to your left Shoulder, turning the Barrel outward, and keeping the Muzzle directly up, seizing it at the same Time with the left Hand about four Inches above the Cock. Then tell 1, 2, quit your right Hand, and bring the Firelock with your left under your left Arm, placing the Lock a little below the Elbow, the Barrel downward, and the Muzzle within a Foot of the Ground.

XXXIV.

XXXIV. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* 5 Motions.

Bring the Firelock with a quick Motion before you with the left Hand, the Muzzle upward, and the Lock to the Front, and at the same time seize it under the Cock with the right Hand ; tell 1, 2, and throw it from you with the right Hand, letting your left go at the same time, come to your Poize ; tell 1, 2, bring it opposite to your left Shoulder, and clap your left Hand on the Butt ; tell 1, 2, and place it on your left Shoulder ; then tell 1, 2, and quit your right Hand, as is shewn more at large in Explanation 25.

XXXV. *Poize your Firelocks.* 2 Motions.

This is performed as in Explanations 1 and 2.

XXXVI. *Rest on your Arms.* 3 Motions.

Sink the Firelock with your right Hand as low as your Arm ; without Constraint, will permit, seizing it at the same Time with your left Hand about the Height of your Chin, the left Elbow turn'd out, and the Muzzle upright. Tell 1, 2, quit the Firelock with your right Hand, and sink it in a perpendicular Line near the Ground with your left, seizing it at the same Time with your right Hand near the Muzzle. Then tell 1, 2, and bring the Butt to the Ground, slipping your left Hand at the same Time up to your Right, and keep your Elbows square.

XXXVII. *Draw your Bayonets.* 2 Motions.

Seize your Bayonets with your right Hand ; then tell 1, 2, and draw it out briskly, extending your Arm before you the Height of your Shoulder, holding the Point of the Bayonet upwards, and your Thumb on the Hollow of the Shank, that when you fix it on the Muzzle, the Notch of the Socket may come even with the Sight of the Barrel.

XXXVIII. *Fix your Bayonets.* 4 Motions.

Place the Socket of the Bayonet upon the Muzzle of the Firelock ; tell 1, 2, and thrust it down as far as the Notch will permit you ; tell 1, 2, turn the Bayonet from you, and
fix

fix it; then tell 1, 2, quit the Handle of the Bayonet, and seize the Firelock just under it with your right Hand, placing the Palm on the back of the Left,

XXXIX. Rest your Bayonets. 3 Motions.

Raise the Firelock with your right Hand, in a perpendicular Line as high as your Forehead, and slipping down your left at the same Time, seize the Firelock about the Middle of the Barrel. Tell 1, 2, quit the Firelock with your right Hand, and raise it with the left, turning the Barrel towards you, and at the same Time seize it with your right Hand under the Lock, observing the same Position as directed by Explanation 7. Then tell 1, 2, and come to your Rest, as in Explanation 3.

XL. Charge your Bayonet Breast high. 3 Motions.

Bring the Firelock strait up before you as in the Recover, with this Difference, that you must turn the Lock outward in the bringing of it up; tell 1, 2, hold the Firelock fast with the left Hand, and clap the Palm of the right on the Butt-end, the Thumb and Barrel pointing to the Right. Then tell 1, 2, fall back with the right Foot a moderate Pace, and in a direct Line behind the left, and at the same Time come to your Charge, by bringing down the Firelock to a Level, and supporting it with your left Arm by raising up your Elbow from your Body, the Stock lying between the left Thumb and Fore-finger, and the Butt-end in a full right Hand, the Thumb on the upper Part of it with the Barrel upwards, and the Bayonet pointing directly to the Front about Breast high. The right Knee must be kept stiff, and the Toe pointly directly to the Right; but the left Knee must bend a little forward, with that Toe to the Front.

XLI. Push your Bayonets. 2 Motions.

Push your Firelock with both Hands strait forward, without raising or sinking the Point of the Bayonet, bringing the Butt-end before the left Breast; then tell 1, 2, and bring it back to its former Place.

XLII. Recover your Arms. 2 Motions.

Seize the Firelock with your Right Hand behind the Cock, then tell 1, 2, and come to your Recover, as in Explanations 4 and 7.

XLIII. Rest your Bayonets on your Left Arms. 2 Motions.

Turn the Lock to the Front, then tell 1, 2, and stepping with the right Foot to the Right, let go the left Hand, sinking the Firelock at the same Time with the right, take hold of the Cock and Steel with the Left, the Cock lying on the middle Finger, and the Steel on the lower Joint of the Thumb, the under Part of the Stock resting on the Bend or Middle of the left Arm, the Barrel upwards, and the Butt sloping downwards, towards the middle Space between your Thighs, keeping both Hands as low as you can without Constraint. The Butt and Muzzle must be kept at an equal Distance from your Body, the Firelock running in a triangular Line.

XLIV. Rest your Bayonets. 3 Motions.

Slip your left Hand, without moving the Firelock, and take hold of it above the Lock, placing the Thumb upwards. Tell 1, 2, and bring the Firelock to a Recover, as in Explanations 4 and 7. Then tell 1, 2, and come briskly to your Rest, as in Explanation 3.

XLV. Shoulder your Firelocks. 4 Motions.

Bring your Firelock to your Poize, as in Explanation 24. Tell 1, 2, and clap your left Hand on the Butt. Tell 1, 2, and lay it on your left Shoulder. Then tell 1, 2, and bring down your right Hand, as in Explanation 25 is directed.

XLVI. Present your Arms. 4 Motions.

These four Motions must be perform'd, as is directed in Explanation 26.

XLVII.

XLVII. *Face to the Right.* 3 Motions.

Bring the Firelock to a Recover, as in Explanation 4. Tell 1, 2, and face on the left Heel to the Right a Quarter of the Circle, keeping the Firelock recovered. Then tell 1, 2, and come nimbly to your Rest, stepping back a little with the right Foot as in Explanation 3.

In the performing of the second Motion, which is the Facing, the Soldiers must take Care not to move their left Heels from the Ground, but only to turn on them, that they may keep their Ranks and Files strait; as also to place their right Feet in a Line with their Left, keeping their Firelocks in the true Position of a Recover, till they perform the third Motion which is the Rest.

XLVIII, XLIX, L. *Face to the Right.*
3 Motions each.

Each of these Words of Command must be performed at Three Motions, as is above directed in Explanation 47; which compleats the Circle in four Times.

LI. *Face to the Right-about.* 3 Motions.

This is perform'd at three Motions, as in the foregoing Explanation, only they face half the Circle to the Right.

LII. *To the Left-about as you were.* 3 Motions.

This is done on the left Heel, as in the above Explanation 51, only they face half the Circle to the Left, which brings them to their proper Front.

LIII, LIV, LV, LVI. *Face to the Left.*
3 Motions each.

These Facings must be perform'd, in the same Manner as those to the Right, on the Left Heel; with this Difference only, that they face to the Left.

LVII. *To the Left-about.* 3 Motions.

This is half the Circle to the Left.

LVIII. *To*

LVIII. *To the Right about as you were.* 3 Motions.

You are to face half the Circle to the Right, which brings you to your proper Front, and compleats the Facings.

LIX. *Poize your Firelocks.* 1 Motion.

Come briskly to your Poize, as in Explanation 24 and 45.

LX. *Rest on your Arms.* 3 Motions.

This must be perform'd as in Explanation 36 is directed.

LXI. *Unfix your Bayonets.* 3 Motions.

Slip the Bayonet up with your Right Hand; tell 1, 2, and turn it towards you. Then tell 1, 2, and slip it quite off of the Muzzle, thrusting it from you at the same time, and holding it in that Position, as is shewn in the second Motion of Explanation 37.

LXII. *Return your Bayonets.* 4 Motions.

Turn the Point of the Bayonet down, bringing it between the Firelock and your Body, and entering the Scabbard. Tell 1, 2, and thrust it quite in. Tell 1, 2, and bring your right Hand before you a little to the Right of your Firelock. Then tell 1, 2, and seize the Firelock near the Muzzle, as in the 3d Motion of Explanation 36 is directed.

LXIII. *Poize your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

The first Motion is performed as directed by the first Motion of Explanation 39. Tell, 1, 2, and raise the Firelock with your left Hand, seizing it at the same Time under the Lock with the right, keeping the Lock outward. Then tell 1, 2, and come to your Poize, by thrusting it from you with the right Hand, and dropping your left.

LXIV. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

This is perform'd as in Explanation 25.

When the Battalion is to make ready at three Words of Command, it is to be perform'd in the following Manner.

I. *Make Ready.*

At this they are to perform all that is contain'd in the first four Words of Command of the Manual Exercise.

II. *Present.*

At this Command they are only to perform what is directed by the fifth Word of Command of the said Exercise.

III. *Give Fire.*

This is perform'd as in Explanation 6 is directed ; after which they are to go on with the Exercise 'till they have prim'd and loaded, and when they come to the shouldering of the Firelock they are to finish, which includes the twenty fifth Word of Command.

The End of the Manual Exercise of the Foot.



C H A P. III.

The Granadier Exercise, with an Explanation, beginning when they are under Arms, viz. the Firelock shoulder'd.



THE Granadiers must observe the same Directions, for the Position under Arms, as are given to those of the Battalion : But they having an Occasion for Match for their Granades, the Match must be placed in the Left Hand, one End of it between the first and second Fingers, and the other between the two last, both Ends standing a Finger's Length above the Back of the Hand. The rest of the

the Match is to hang down by the Inside of the Butt-end of the Firelock. The Match is not to be lighted without express Orders for it.

When the Granadiers stand in a Body with the Men of the Battalion, they must then perform the same Motions that they do, because they do not then meddle with their Granades; and consequently, there must be no Difference either in the Time or Motions of the Exercise of the Granadiers, and those of the Battalion, except in the Use of the Slings and Granades: I shall therefore refer to the Explanation of the Battalion Exercise, except in those Things which peculiarly belong to the Granadiers.

W O R D S of C O M M A N D.

Granadiers, Take Care.

Tho' this is not reckon'd a Word of Command, but only look'd upon as a Warning, to prepare them for the Exercise; yet whenever the Granadiers exercise apart from the Battalion they have annexed two Motions to it, which, it must be own'd, have a very good Effect, both on the Spectators and Performers, by preparing the latter to go through their Exercise with Life, Vigour, and Exactness, in which the principal Beauty of Exercise consists. The Motions are as follows: First, the Granadiers bring up their right Hands briskly to the Front of their Caps; then tell 1, 2, and bring them down with a Slap on their Pouches, with all the Life imaginable; in which Motions, neither their Heads, Bodies, nor Firelocks are to move.

I. Join your Right Hands to your Firelocks.

1 Motion.

This is perform'd as in Explan. 1, of the Foot Exercise.

II. Poize your Firelocks. 1 Motion.

As in Explanation 2.

III. Join your Left Hands to your Firelocks.

2 Motions.

This is done as in Explan. 3; with this Difference, that you must take the Sling in your left Hand at the same Time you seize the Firelock, placing it between the Stock and your Hand.

IV. *Cock your Firelocks.* 2 Motions. As in Explanation 4.

V. *Present.* 1. Motion. As in Explanation 5.

VI. *Fire.* As in Explanation 6.

VII. *Recover your Arms.* 1 Motion. As in Explanation 7.

VIII. *Handle your Slings.* 2 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with both Hands 'till the Lock comes outwards, without changing any other part of your Position. Then tell 1, 2, step out with your right Foot to the Right, placing it a moderate Pace from the Left, and, at the same time, quitting the Firelock with the left Hand, extend your Sling to the Left, the Thumb upwards, keeping the Sling in a Line with the Firelock; and remain so till the next Command.

IX. *Sling your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

Bring the Sling with the left Hand opposite to the right Shoulder, and the Firelock with the right Hand opposite to the left Shoulder, by crossing of both Hands at the same time, bringing the left Hand within the Right, keeping the Muzzle directly up, the Barrel to the Left, and the right Hand just under the left Elbow. Tell 1, 2, bend the Firelock back, and bring the Sling over your Head, placing it just above your right Shoulder, and the Firelock opposite to the Point of the Left. Then tell 1, 2, draw the Sling with your left Hand, and let go the Firelock with the right at the same time, that it may hang by the Sling on the right Shoulder, the Muzzle upwards, and dropping both Hands down by your Sides at the same Instant of Time.

X. *Handle your Matches.* 3 Motions.

Bring both Hands directly before you with half-stretch'd-out Arms, about the Height of your Shoulders, taking hold of the lower End of the Match at the same time with the right Hand, placing the Thumb under, and the two Fore-fingers above. Tell 1, 2, and bring the Match with the right Hand over the back of the left, placing it between the
Thumb

Thumb and two Fore-fingers of the said Hand. Then tell 1, 2, thrust out your left Hand with the Match strait forward, by extending the Arm at full Length, and at the same Time bring your right Hand down to your right Side.

XI. *Handle your Granades.* 3 Motions.

Keep your left Hand extended to the Front, as before, and face nimbly to the Right on the left Heel, stretching out your right Arm at the same Time the Height of your Shoulder, pointing directly to the Rear. Tell 1, 2, and clap your right Hand briskly on your Pouch, seizing (if there should be Occasion) your Grenade. Then tell 1, 2, and bring up your right Hand to its former Position, placing the Thumb against the Fuze, and continue in this Position 'till the following Word of Command.

XII. *Open your Fuze.* 3 Motions.

Keep your left Hand extended to the Front, and bring the Grenade with your right Hand to your Mouth. Tell 1, 2, and open the Fuze with your Teeth. Then tell 1, 2, thrust your Arm nimbly from you to its former Place.

XIII. *Guard your Fuze.* 1 Motion.

Cover the Fuze with your Thumb, without making any other Motion.

XIV. *Blow your Matches.* 2 Motions.

Bring the Match with your left Hand before your Mouth; then tell 1, 2, and blow it off with a strong Blast, thrusting back your Hand at the same Time to its former Place.

XV. *Fire and throw your Granades.* 3 Motions.

Meet the Grenade with your left Hand, opposite to your right Thigh, inclining your Body to the right Side, bending the right Knee, and keeping the left stiff, and fire the Fuze at the same Time. Tell 1, 2, slowly, that the Fuze may be well lighted, and throw the Grenade with a stiff Arm, stepping forward, at the same Time, with the right Foot, placing it in a Line with the left, extending both Arms in a di-

rect Line to the Front, keeping the left uppermost, and the Body upright. Then tell 1, 2, and bring your right Hand down to your Side, keeping your left in its former Position.

XVI. *Return your Matches.* 3 Motions.

Bring both Hands before you, as directed by the first Motion of Explanation 10. Tell 1, 2, and bring the Match back to its former Place, between the two last Fingers of the left Hand. Then tell 1, 2, and let both Hands fall down by your Sides.

XVII. *Handle your Slings.* 3 Motions.

Seize the Sling with both Hands at the same Time, taking hold of it with the right Hand about the Middle, and as low as you can reach without bending your Body, with the left. Tell 1, 2, and with the left Hand bring the Butt forward, slipping your left Elbow under the Firelock, by bringing of it between the Firelock and the Sling; take hold of the Firelock at the same Time with the left Hand, letting the Stock lie between the Thumb and the Fore-finger, the Butt-end pointing a little to the Left with the Barrel upwards. Then tell 1, 2, bring the Firelock to lie on the left Shoulder, and the Sling on the Right, the Barrel upwards, and the Butt-end pointing directly to the Front, keeping the Firelock to a true Level.

XVIII. *Poize your Firelocks.* 4 Motions.

Bring the Sling over your Head with the right Hand, and the Firelock strait before you with the left, the Muzzle upright, and the Barrel turn'd to the Front. Tell 1, 2, and cast the Sling briskly with your right Hand towards the Left, between the Firelock and your Body, turning the Lock outwards at the same Time with your left Hand. Tell 1, 2, and place your right Hand under the Cock, the Thumb upwards. Then tell 1, 2, and thrust the Firelock from you to your Poize, letting the Left Hand fall down to your Side.

XIX. *Half-cock your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

Seize the Firelock with your left Hand, turning the Barrel towards you, as in Explanation 3. Tell 1, 2, bring the
Firelock

Firelock close to your Breast, and half-bend the Cock. Then tell 1, 2, and thrust the Firelock from you, as in Explanation 8 of the Battalion Exercise.

Note, As the rest of the Exercise is the same with that of the Battalion, I shall only set down the Words of Command with the Explanation refer'd to.

20. *Handle your Primers.* Explanation 9.
21. *Prime.* Explan. 10.
22. *Shut your Pans.* Explan. 11.
23. *Cast about to charge.* Explan. 12.
24. *Handle your Cartridges.* Explan. 13.
25. *Open your Cartridges.* Explan. 14.
26. *Charge with Cartridge.* Explan. 15.
27. *Draw your Rammers.* Explan. 16.
28. *Shorten your Rammers.* Explan. 17.
29. *Put them in the Barrel.* Explan. 18.
30. *Ram down your Charge.* Explan. 19.
31. *Recover your Rammers.* Explan. 20.
32. *Shorten your Rammers.* Explan. 21.
33. *Return your Rammers.* Explan. 22.
34. *Your Right Hands under the Locks.* Explan. 23.
35. *Poize your Firelocks.* Explan. 24.
36. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* Explan. 25.
37. *Rest your Firelocks.* Explan. 26.
38. *Order your Firelocks.* Explan. 27.
39. *Ground your Firelocks.* Explan. 28.
40. *Take up your Firelocks.* Explan. 29.
41. *Rest your Firelocks.* Explan. 30.
42. *Club your Firelocks.* Explan. 31.
43. *Rest your Firelocks.* Explan. 32.
44. *Secure your Firelocks.* Explan. 33.
45. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* Explan. 34.
46. *Poize your Firelocks.* Explan. 35.
47. *Rest on your Arms.* Explan. 36.
48. *Draw your Bayonets.* Explan. 37.
49. *Fix your Bayonets.* Explan. 38.
50. *Rest your Bayonets.* Explan. 39.
51. *Charge your Bayonets Breast high.* Explan. 40.
52. *Push your Bayonets.* Explan. 41.
53. *Recover your Arms.* Explan. 42.
54. *Rest your Bayonets on your Left Arms.* Explan. 43.
55. *Rest your Bayonets.* Explan. 44.
56. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* Explan. 45.

57. *To the Front present your Arms.* Explanation 46.
 58. *Face to the Right* }
 59. *To the Right.* } Explan. 47.
 60. *To the Right.* }
 61. *To the Right.* }
 62. *To the Right-about.* } Explan. 51,
 63. *To the Left-about as you were.* } and 52.
 64. *Face to the Left, 4 times, &c.*
 65. *Poize your Firelocks.* Explan. 59.
 66. *Rest on your Arms.* Explan. 60.
 67. *Unfix your Bayonets.* Explan. 61.
 68. *Return your Bayonets.* Explan. 62.
 69. *Poize your Firelocks.* Explan. 63.
 70. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* Explan. 64.

The Granadiers having distinct Words of Command for the Firing and Throwing of their Granades, besides those which are given to the Battalion when they make Ready at three Words of Command ; I shall therefore set them down in the Order as they are to follow :

Take Heed to make Ready and Fire at Three Words of Command.

I. Make Ready.

This must be done by performing the Motions from Explanation 1st to the 4th inclusive.

II. Present. As in Explanation 5.

III. Give Fire. As in Explanation 6.

After which they are to perform the Motions of the 7th Word of Command, which is the *Recover*, and remain so 'till the following Command is given :

Take Care to Fire and Throw your Granades at Three Words of Command.

I. Make Ready.

This must be done by performing all the Motions in the Granadier Exercise, from Explanation 8th to the 13th inclusive.

II. Blow

II. *Blow your Matches.* As in Explanation 14th of the said Exercise.

III. *Fire and throw your Granades.*

This is done as in Explanation 15. After which they are to go on with the Exercise till they have perform'd the 36th Word of Command.

The End of the Manual Exercise of the Granadiers.



CHAP. IV.

Evolutions of the Foot.



THE Evolutions of the Foot, which were formerly practised, being found not only of very little Use, but likewise of such a Length, that they had not Time to perform the more essential Parts of the Service, (the Firings) without over-fatiguing the Soldiers; for which Reason, the greatest Part of them have been disused, and only such retained, as are thought absolutely necessary: I shall therefore insert no more of them here than what were practised by the Foot during the late War in *Flanders*. But if any one is desirous to see the whole, he may find them in a Book of Exercise printed in 1690, by Order of King WILLIAM and Queen MARY.

Note, When the Evolutions are to be performed, the Officers are to be at their Posts of Exercise in the Rear, and the Files open.

Have a Care to perform your Evolutions.

As soon as this Notice is given, there must be a profound Silence observed throughout the Battalion; and the Soldiers are immediately to straiten their Ranks and Files; thus: In order to straiten their Ranks, they must take Care that they are exactly in a Line with those on their Right and Left,
and

and to place themselves in such a Position, that neither the Head nor Body is seen before or behind the one or the other. Their Heels must be placed in a strait Line, without which the Ranks can never be brought even. To straiten the Files, those in the Front-rank are to divide the Ground equally between them, and those of the other five Ranks who stand in File, must always stand with their Faces against or opposite to the Middle of the Neck of their File-leader. They are all to carry their Firelocks firm upon their Shoulders, and to raise the Muzzle high, that they may not touch or clash against one another in their Facings.

These Directions must be observed as a standing Rule, since they are to do it after the performing of every Word of Command, if there is an Occasion, without any further Orders for so doing from the Major, or Officer who exercises the Battalion.

I. *Rear Half-Files, to the Right double your Front.—March.*

The three last, or Rear-ranks, (which are the fourth, fifth, and sixth) are to march up and double the Front Half-files to the Right, thus: The fourth Rank doubles into the first, the fifth into the second, and the sixth into the third.

Upon the Word, *March*, being given (between which and the other Part of the Word of Command, there should be a considerable Stop or Pause made, that the Men may have Time to reflect on what they are order'd to perform) the forementioned Ranks are to step at once forward with their left Feet, marching slowly, and counting their twelve Paces, which last Pace brings them to the Right of those they are to double.

They are to march very slow, and take great Care that the Whole move like one Man; which they may easily do, by keeping Time in the lifting up and setting down of the same Feet together, as is more fully explain'd in the 4th Article, Chapter I. on Opening of Files.

In order to keep their Ranks even in Marching, they must always cast their Eyes to the Right and Left, but more particularly to the Right, without turning their Heads; which, if observ'd, will facilitate their keeping an equal Pace with one another, and thereby render the Performance regular and beautiful.

They

They are to march with their Heads and Bodies upright, carrying their Arms high and firm on their Shoulders.

In all Movements to the Front, they are to begin with the Left Feet.

These Directions must be look'd upon as standing Rules, which will save me the Trouble of Repeating, and the Reader that of hearing the same Thing over again.

II. *To the Left as you were.*

The Ranks that doubled, face at once to the Left on their right Heels, by stepping half a Pace backwards with the left Feet, and stand thus 'till the following Command.

III. *March.*

The foremention'd Half-files lift up their left Feet, making the half Pace a whole one, and march back to their former Ground, their right Feet making the 12th and last Step, which they are to set down in the same Place they were before, keeping their left Feet a little behind their right, in which Position they are to remain 'till the following Word of Command.

IV. *Halt.*

The foresaid Half-files are to face to the Right-about, on their right Heels, and immediately dress their Ranks and Files, as above directed.

V. *Rear Half Files to the Left double your Front. ——— March.*

The foresaid Half-files step forward with their left Feet, and double to the Left of their Leaders, as they did before to the Right; and to observe the same Directions in their Marching, as are given in Explanation I.

VI. *To the Right as you were.*

Those who doubled, face to the Right on their left Heels, by stepping half a Pace backwards with their right Feet.

VII.

VII. *March.*

The said Half-Files lift up their right Feet, making the half Pace a whole one, and march to their former Ground; their left Feet making the 12th and last Pace, which they are to set down in the same Place they were before, keeping their right Feet a little behind their left; in which Position they are to remain 'till the following Word of Command.

VIII. *Halt.*

The foresaid Half-files face to the Left-about on their left Heels, and straiten their Ranks and Files.

IX. *Front Half-Files, to the Right double your Rear.*

The first, second, and third Ranks face to the Right-about on their right Heels, and stand thus ready to march and double at the following Command.

X. *March.*

Those who faced, step at once towards the Rear, with their right Feet, marching slowly 'till the third Rank doubles into the sixth, the second into the fifth, and the first into the third; and by counting of 12 Paces, their left Feet makes the last, which they are to place by the right Feet of those they double, facing full to the Left of the Battalion, and the Muzzle of their Firelocks (which they are to carry high on this Occasion) pointing in a Line to the Right, and to remain so till the following Command.

Halt.

The foresaid Front Half-files face to the Right on their left Heels, by falling back with their right Feet.

XII. *Front Half-Files, as you were. — March.*

The Half-Files that doubled step forward with their left Feet, and march slowly, in 12 Paces, to their former Ground, taking Care to place their Heels in those Places they stood on

on before ; (which will be easily perceived, particularly where the left Heel was, by its being marked in the former Facings) after which they are to straiten their Ranks and Files.

XIII. *Front Half-Files, to the Left double your Rear.*

The foresaid Half-Files face to the Left-about on their left Heels, and stand ready to march on the following Command.

XIV. *March.*

Those who faced step with their left Feet towards the Rear, and, counting 12 Paces, march slowly till they come to the Left of those they doubled before to the Right ; and their right Feet making the last Step, they are to place them close to the left Feet of those they double, turning, at the same Time, their Faces and Bodies full to the Right of the Battalion, and the Muzzle of their Firelocks pointing to the Left, remaining in that Position 'till the following Command.

XV. *Halt.*

The foresaid Half-Files face to the Left on their right Heels, by falling back with their left Feet.

XVI. *Front Half-Files, as you were. March.*

The foresaid Half-files step forward with their left Feet, and march to their former Ground, as in Explan. 12 is directed.

Note, As the Foot are always to be drawn up three deep, that is, in three Ranks, when they are to go upon Action, or thro' their Firings ; the Use of the Doubling of the foresaid Front and Rear Half-Files, is self-evident ; since it is by those Movements that a Battalion is brought from six to three deep, and therefore necessary for the Men to perform them now and then.

XVII. *Half-Ranks, to the Right double your Files by Division.*

As every Division is sub-divided into two, the Half on the Right of each Division is called the Right Half-ranks, and that on the Left, is the Left Half-ranks.

At

At this Word of Command, the Left Half-ranks face to the Right on their left Heels.

XVIII. *March.*

The Half-ranks that faced lift up their left Feet together, and step in a direct Line to the Rear a moderate Pace ; after which, they are to face together to the Left on their left Heels, and then march, beginning with their left Feet, in a strait Line to the Right, 'till the Right-hand Men of those who double come opposite to the Right-hand Men that stood, at which they are all to stand ; taking Care to place their left Feet foremost, and directly in a Line with the left Feet of those whom they are to double, looking full to the Right of the Battalion.

XIX. *Halt.*

The foresaid Half-ranks face to the Left on their left Heels, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

XX. *Half Ranks that doubled, to the Left as you were.*

The foresaid Half-ranks face to the Left on their left Heels, remain so till the following Word of Command.

XXI. *March.*

Those who faced lift up their left Feet together, and march in a strait Line to the Left, till they come opposite to the Ground they first stood on ; at which they are to make a short Stand, and to face at once nimbly to the Right on their right Heels ; after which they are to make another short Stand, and then march forward, beginning with their left Feet, into their former Ground.

I believe it is unnecessary to mention the Care which must be taken, that the Soldiers all face at the same time, lift up and set down the same Feet, and begin and end their March together, after what has been already said on that Subject ; but unless these Things are punctually observed, the Beauty of the Evolutions will be lost, by their appearing confused and irregular ; whereas on the contrary, when they are perform'd in exact Time, they have not only an admirable Effect on the Spectators, but likewise on the Performers, by preparing
them,

them, in such a Manner, for the performing of every Movement that may be required in Service, that the Orders, without any Difficulty, are executed as soon as given.

XXII. *Half Ranks, to the Left double your Files by Division.*

The Right Half-ranks, or those who stood, face at once to the Left on their right Heels.

XXIII. *March.*

The Half-ranks who faced lift up their right Feet together, and step a moderate Pace directly to the Rear; after which they are to face to the Right on their right Heels, and then march, beginning with their right Feet, in a strait Line to the Left, 'till they come opposite to the Left-hand Men who stand, placing their right Feet foremost and directly in a Line with the right Feet of those Men whom they are to double, looking full to the Left of the Battalion.

XXIV. *Halt.*

The foresaid Half-ranks face to the Right on their right Heels, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

XXV. *To the Right as you were.*

The Half-ranks that doubled, face to the Right on their right Heels.

XXVI. *March.*

The foresaid Half-ranks step at once with their right Feet, and march in a strait Line to the Right 'till they come opposite to the Ground they stood on before, and then making a short Stand, they are to face nimbly to the Left on their left Heels, and after a short Pause they are to march up to their former Ground.

Ranks doubling of Files may be perform'd by the Half-ranks of the whole Battalion, the Use of which was to enlarge the Intervals to make room for Battalions or Squadrons to pass thro' them; but as the Doubling of the Files in that Manner in Time of Action, would take up too much Time, they

they have fallen upon a quicker and more safe way of doing it, by wheeling back two or three Platoons, or as many as are requisite ; and as soon as the Troops have passed, the Platoons are immediately wheel'd up again ; for which Reason the Doubling of the Half-ranks of the whole Battalion hath been disused, by being found of no Service. But as the Half-ranks of every Division doubling their Files is of singular Use, in the marching of any Number of Troops, for the passing of Defiles, Bridges, or Passes not broad enough to march off by Half-ranks, as is above shewn, by the Doubling ; and as soon as they have passed, they are to move up again ; for which Reason they have been continued in the Evolutions now practised.

After the Doubling of the Half-ranks, the Officers are to be ordered to take their Posts in the Front of the Battalion.

XXVII. *To the Right and Left, close your Files to the Center by Division.*

Each Division faces to the Right and Left inwards to its Center, thus : The Right Half-ranks face to the Left on their right Heels, and the Left Half-ranks to the Right on their left Heels, the Half-ranks of each Division facing one another The Officers are to face with the Men, and on the same Foot they do, according as they are posted on the Right or Left Half-ranks.

XXVIII. *March.*

At this Word of Command, the Officers and Soldiers are to lift up their Feet together, beginning with those they faced on, and marching slowly towards the Center of each Division they are to close within half a Pace of one another, and then stand, placing the Feet foremost they faced on.

The Officers and Serjeants are to march and keep an equal Pace with the Files opposite to them, and to stand when they do.

XXIX. *Halt.*

At this Command, they are all to come nimbly to their proper Front on the Heels they before faced on, viz. The right Half-ranks on their right Heels, and the others on their left Heels.

XXX.

XXX. *Rear Ranks, Close to your Front, March.*

The Front Rank stands, the other five step at once forward with their left Feet, and marching very slow, close their Ranks within a Pace of one another, and then stand.

Before we proceed to the following Words of Command, which are for Wheeling, it will be proper to lay down general Rules for the performing of them.

General Rules for Wheeling.

The Circle is divided into four equal Parts.

Wheeling to the Right or Left, is only a Quarter of the Circle.

Wheeling to the Right or Left about, is one Half of the Circle.

When you wheel to the Right, you are to close to the Right so near as to touch your Right-hand Man, (but without pressing him) and to look to the Left (without turning the Head) in order to bring the Rank about even.

When you wheel to the Left, you are to close to the Left, and look to the Right, as above directed.

This Rule will serve for all Wheeling by Ranks; as when a Battalion is marching by Sub-divisions with their Ranks open, then each Rank wheels distinctly by its self when it comes to the Ground on which the Rank before it wheel'd, but not before.

It will likewise serve as a Rule for the Front Rank in all Wheelings, whether that of the whole Battalion, or Grand or Sub-divisions: But the Rear-ranks, when they are clos'd forward, being to wheel directly in the Rear of, and at the same time with, the Front-rank, must incline a little to the Left when they wheel to the Right, in order to keep directly in a Line with their File-leaders. The same Rule must be observed by the Rear-ranks, when they wheel to the Left, by inclining a little to the Right, for the Reason above-mentioned, that of keeping in a Line with their File-leaders.

In Wheeling, the Men are to take particular Care, neither to open nor close their Ranks, and to carry their Firelocks high and firm on their Shoulders.

In Wheeling, the Motion of each Man is quicker or slower, according to the Distance he is from the Right or Left, thus: When you wheel to the Right, each Man moves quicker
E than

than his Right-hand Man; and in Wheeling to the Left, each moves quicker than his Left-hand Man; the Circle that every Man wheels being larger, according to the Distance he is from the Hand he wheels to, as may be seen by describing of several Circles within one another at three Foot Distance from each, which is the Space every Man is supposed to take up.

XXXI. *To the Right Wheel by Division, March.*

At this Command they all step forward with their left Feet, and wheel to the Right a Quarter of the Circle.

The Right-hand Man of the Front Rank of every Division must turn on his right Heel, without taking it out of its Place; and casting his Eye to the Left, without turning his Head, bring his Body and left Foot about with the Rank, according as it moves quicker or slower. All the Men in the Front Rank are to cast their Eyes to the Left in the same Manner, that they may neither advance before nor keep behind their Left-hand Men; but to govern their Steps in such a Manner, that by adding to or abating from them, they may keep their Bodies in a direct Line with the Left-hand Man of their Divisions; by the due Observance of which Rule, the Front Rank will be always kept strait in Wheeling, and, consequently, contribute a great deal towards the Rear Ranks doing the same; but unless the Front Rank wheels strait, it is impossible that the Rear Ranks should.

Let them observe further, as directed by the general Rules for Wheeling.

All Wheelings are to be done slow; and even those Men on the extream Part of the Rank, are not to exceed a moderate Pace.

The Officers are to wheel on the Head of their several Divisions, and the Serjeants on the Flanks and in the Rear.

As soon as the Divisions have wheel'd a Quarter of the Circle, the Major is to proceed to the next Word of Command.

XXXII. *Halt.*

At this they are to stand, and immediately dress their Ranks and Files.

XXXIII.

XXXIII. *To the Right Wheel, March.*

All the Divisions wheel a Quarter of the Circle again to the Right, which brings the Battalion to face to the Rear. The Directions in Explan. 31, must be punctually observed.

XXXIV. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

XXXV. *To the Right Wheel, March.*

As in Explan. 31, and 33; by which they face to the Left of the Battalion.

XXXVI. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32, and 34.

XXXVII. *To the Right Wheel, March.*

This Wheel compleats the Circle at four Times, and brings them to their proper Front.

XXXVIII. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32, is directed.

XXXIX. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

By this Word of Command, all the Divisions are to wheel one Half of the Circle to the Right.

XL. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

XLI. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

This Wheel compleats the Circle at Twice, and brings them to their proper Front.

XLII. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

XLIII. *To the Left Wheel, March.*

The Divisions are to wheel to the Left a Quarter of the Circle, as they did before to the Right; with this Difference, that the Left-hand Man of the Front Rank of each Division must keep his left Heel in its Place, (as the Right-hand Men did their right Heels when they wheel'd to the Right) and,

by casting his Eye to the Right, bring his Body and right Foot about with the Rank, according as it shall move quick or slow.

All the Men of the Front Rank are to cast their Eyes to the Right, as they did before to the Left, and for the same Reason, to keep their Bodies in a strait Line with the Right-hand-man, that the Rank may be kept even in Wheeling.

The Rear-ranks are to incline a little to the Right when they wheel to the Left; (as they did to the Left when they wheel'd to the Right) observing further as in Explan. 31. is directed, as also the general Rules for Wheeling.

XLIV. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

XLV. *To the Left Wheel, March.* As in Expl. 43. is directed.

XLVI. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

XLVII. *To the Left Wheel, March.* As in Explan. 43.

XLVIII. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

XLIX. *To the Left Wheel, March.*

As in Explan. 43. which compleats the Circle at four Times.

L. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

LI. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.*

This Wheel is one Half of the Circle to the Left.

LII. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

LIII. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.*

This Wheel brings the Divisions to their proper Front, and compleats all the Wheelings that are now practised in the Evolutions.

When you would shorten them, it may be done by Wheeling only twice to the Right, and then to the Right-about, and the same to the Left.

LIV.

LIV. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

As the leaving of Intervals between the Divisions, when they are to wheel, is never done upon Service, but always performed with them closed within a Pace of one another, I am at a Loss to know the Reason why it is not done so in the Evolutions; since the performing of it this Way is altogether as easy as the other, and, in my Opinion, much more beautiful, by having a greater Resemblance of real Service: And as no other Part of the Evolutions is now practis'd, but what is of real Use upon Action, or to form a Battalion for it, the same Rule holds for the laying this aside also, and substituting the other in its room, that of wheeling with the Divisions closed to their proper Distance. This I only offer as my Opinion; but lest my Notion should be wrong, I did not insert it in the Evolutions, as may be seen by the above Method.

LV. *Rear Ranks, to the Right-about as you were.*

The Front Rank stands. The other Five, which had closed forward, face to the Right-about on the left Heels, and wait for the following Word of Command to march back to their former Distance.

The second Rank must raise the Muzzle of their Firelocks very high, that they may not clash against those of the Front-rank in Facing.

LVI. *March.*

They are to begin with the Feet they faced on, the Rear-rank moving first; and when they have marched three Paces, the fifth Rank is to begin; and as soon as that Rank has march'd three Paces, the fourth Rank is to move; the third and second Ranks observing the same Rule, are all to march slowly, each Rank counting the following Paces, viz. the rear or sixth Rank to march 15 Paces, the fifth Rank 12, the fourth Rank 9, the third Rank 6, and the second Rank 3 Paces, which brings them all to their former Distance of four Paces between each Rank; after which they are to stand, placing the left Feet foremost.

If the lifting up and setting down of the same Feet together is duly observed, they will all come to their Ground at the same Instant of Time.

LVII. *Halt.*

The 'foresaid Ranks face to the Left-about on their Left Heels, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

LVIII. *Files, to the Right and Left Outwards, Open to your former Distance.*

The Right Half-ranks of every Division face to the Right on their left Heels, and the Left Half-ranks face to the Left on their right Heels; by which Facing, the Half-ranks of every Division stand Back to Back.

The Officers are to face as the Half-ranks do on which they are posted, thus: Those on the Right Half-ranks face to the Right, and those on the Left Half-ranks face to the Left, all doing it on the same Feet, and at the same Time with the Soldiers. If there are three Officers on a Division, those in the Center of the Division stand still without facing. The Serjeants are to follow the same Directions.

LIX. *March.*

The Right and Left-hand File of each Division lift up the Feet they faced on together, and march slowly to their former Ground, and then stand, placing the same Feet foremost, which are those next the Front.

No File is to move 'till the File before it has got to its proper Distance. See the Directions for the Opening of Files in the fourth Article of the first Chapter; to which I shall likewise refer the Officers for theirs.

LX. *Halt.*

At this Word of Command, both Officers and Soldiers face to their proper Front. The Half-ranks on the Right face to the Left on their left Heels, and the Half-ranks on the left face to the Right on their right Heels, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

LXI. *Rest your Firelocks.* As in Exp. 26 of the Foot Exercise.

LXII. *Order your Firelocks.* As in Explan. 27.

LXIII. *Ground your Firelocks.* As in Explan. 28.

LXIV.

LXIV. *Face to the Right-about.*

They all face to the Right about on their left Heels, and wait for the following Command.

LXV. *March.*

At this they are to lift up their left Feet together, and march between the Files of Arms till they have got beyond the Rear-rank; after which they are not obliged to keep their Ranks and Files, but may mix with one another; however, they must do it in such a Manner, that they may be ready to repair to their Arms on the first Order; which may be done by Beat of Drum, or any other Signal, as the commanding Officer shall think proper.

The Officers are not to march to the Rear with the Men, but after they have fix'd their Half-pikes in the Ground, they may walk about in the Front.

The Ensigns are to do the same with the Colours, and to place one of the Men, with his Sword drawn, Centinel over them. The Serjeants are likewise to fix their Halbards in the Ground.

LXVI. *To your Arms.*

As soon as this Word of Command is given, the Men are all to run to their Arms, drawing their Swords, and holding them in their right Hands with the Points up.

The Officers are to repair to their Posts at the same Time.

LXVII. *Return your Swords.* 3 Motions.

They are to turn the Point of their Swords downwards, and, looking to the Left, enter them in the Scabbards. Tell 1, 2, and thrust them quite in. Then tell 1, 2, and bring their right Hands back to their right Sides.

LXVIII. *Take up your Firelocks.*

As in Explan. 29. of the Foot Exercise.

LXIX. *Rest your Firelocks.* As in Explan. 30. *Ibid.*

LXX. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* As in Explan. 45. *Ibid.*

The End of the Evolutions.



C H A P. V.

Directions for Passing in Review.

A R T I C L E I.



BEFORE the Regiment is to pass in Review, the Companies should be drawn out, and a strict Inspection made into the Mens Arms, Ammunition, Cloaths, and Accoutrements, and a Report made of the same, by the Officer commanding each Company, to the Colonel, or Officer commanding the Regiment, that he may know the true State of the Whole, and give necessary Directions in Time for the repairing of such Things as may be then out of Order.

If Time and Place will admit of it, it is usual for the Colonel to make this Inspection himself along with the other Officers; or at least to order either his Lieutenant-Colonel or Major to do it, and to make him a Report of the whole.

A R T I C L E II.

The Regiment must be told off by Grand and Sub-divisions, and the Officers appointed to them, the Colours sent for, and the Files open'd before the General comes; that after he has viewed them standing, they may immediately proceed to the Exercise, or whatever he shall please to order.

When Notice is given of the General's coming, the Major is to order the Men to shoulder their Arms, from which Position they are always to rest their Arms, when that Compliment is to be paid; and as soon as he approaches near the Flank of the Battalion, the Major is to order the Soldiers to rest their Arms by the following Words of Command.

To the Front present your Arms.

At the performing of the fourth and last Motion of the above Command, all the Drummers are to beat a March, and the Major is to take his Post immediately on the Right of the Battalion, and the Adjutant on the Left, dressing in a Line with the Rank of Officers.

As the General passes along the Front, the Officers are to salute him with their Half-pikes or Partizans; and to time it in such a Manner, that each may just finish his Salute, and pull off his Hat when he comes opposite to him. The Ensigns who carry the Colours are to drop them, (if the General is to be saluted with Colours) bringing the Spear pretty near the Ground, just when the Colonel drops the Point of his Half-pike, pulling off their Hats at the same Time, and not to raise the Colours till he has passed them.

As the Major and Adjutant are to be on Horseback, they are to salute with their Swords; and when the Major has finished his Salute, he is to repair opposite to the Center of the Regiment, that he may be ready to order the Men to face when the General goes round the Battalion: And as it is impossible for the Words of Command to be distinctly heard by the Whole when the Drums are beating, the Drummers should have Directions to cease as soon as the General comes to the left Flank of the Battalion, (supposing he began at the Right) and not to begin Beating 'till the Word of Command is given to face to the Left; and when he comes to the left Flank of the Rear-rank, they should cease again 'till the Battalion has faced a second Time to the Left. The same Rule should be observed when he comes to the right Flanks of the Rear and Front Ranks.

If the above Directions are duly observed, the Facings, which on these Occasions are generally very ill perform'd, may be done with the utmost Exactness. It is therefore incumbent on the Major, if he would shew the Regiment to Advantage, not to neglect this Precaution; since the performing of the first Motions well, generally makes so good an Impression, that every one is prepossessed in Favour of what is to follow, and will rather excuse than condemn the little Slips or Mistakes that may be committed: Whereas, if a bad Impression is at first given, every little Failing will be judged a Crime, since Prejudices of this Kind take too strong a Possession of the Mind to be easily removed.

By

By the above Directions it is presumed, that the General who Reviews, begins at the Right, which they always do, unless the Situation of the Ground, or the drawing up of the Regiment won't admit of it; which is a Fault that should be carefully avoided. For this End, the Ground on which you are to be reviewed, and the Avenues leading to it, should be considered, and the most advantageous Part of it pitched upon for the Regiment; taking care to draw up the Front towards the Place by which the General is to approach, and leaving the right Flank open, that he may come to it without any Difficulty. If this Precaution is neglected, the Officer who commands the Regiment will be thought either careless or ignorant in his Profession, unless it plainly appears that Necessity, and not Choice, obliged him to it.

When the Case happens that the General comes to the Left of the Battalion first, and passes along the Front to the Right, the Drummers are to cease beating when he comes to that Flank, till the Regiment has fac'd to the Right, as before directed, that the Words of Command for the Facing may be distinctly heard.

When the Battalion is order'd to face, the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers and Hautboys, are to do the same, and all to remain at their Posts, without going through the Battalion to the Rear when the General passes along it, or saluting him any more than once standing.

The Serjeants in the Rear are to pull off their Hats, without bowing their Heads, when the General passes them, holding their Halbards in their right Hands as the Officers do their Half-pikes.

N. B. When the Officers pull off their Hats, after Saluting, they are not to bow their Heads.

A R T I C L E III.

As soon as the Ceremony of viewing the Regiment standing is over, the General then acquaints the Colonel what he would have perform'd, as the going through the Manual Exercise, Evolutions, and the Firings, or a Part of each; all which depends intirely on the Directions he shall be pleased to give, and therefore no certain Rule can be prescribed. And tho' the Generals are not ty'd down to any set Form in Reviewing, yet they commonly proceed in the following Manner.

First, They view the Regiment standing.

Secondly,

Secondly, They order the Manual Exercise and Evolutions to be performed.

Thirdly, To go through some Part of the Firings; and,

Fourthly, To march by him, either in Grand-Divisions, Sub-Divisions, or by single Companies.

ARTICLE IV.

As the first Part, that of viewing the Regiment standing has been fully treated of in the Second Article, I shall mention some Things relating to the Second (that of the Exercise) which could not be so properly introduced before.

When the Officers are order'd to take their Posts of Exercise in the Rear, the Colonel is not to go to the Rear, but to march strait forward, and place himself by the General, with his Half-pike in his Hand, during the Exercise; and as soon as that is over, and the Officers ordered to the Front, he is then to return to his Post.

In the Absence of the Colonel, the Lieutenant-Colonel is to proceed in the same Manner, in placing himself by the General during the Exercise, and performing all the other Parts of the Colonel's Duty in the Command of the Regiment: But the Lieutenant-Colonel's Post is never supplied by any other Officer when he is absent, or commands the Regiment.

When the Command falls to the Major, by the Absence of the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel, he is then to take the Colonel's Post at the Head of the Regiment, and salute with his Half-pike; but when the Regiment is to perform the Exercise, he is to mount on Horseback to do it, the Command of the Regiment not being sufficient to excuse him from that Part of his Duty before a General, unless an Impediment in his Voice, or some other just Reason, obliges him to decline it; and even in that Case he is to make an Apology to the General for his not doing of it himself, and desire Leave that another Officer may perform it; and when granted (which, I believe, is seldom refused) he then remains on Foot, and acts in every Respect as Colonel.

In the Absence of all the Field-Officers, the eldest Captain takes the Command, and places himself in the Colonel's Post at the Head of the Regiment, and acts in every Respect as the Colonel should do, were he present.

When the Officers take their Posts in the Rear, the Drummers and Hautboys are to march beyond the General, and not

not the Major, as was directed by the fifth Article of the first Chapter.

The Major, or Officer who gives the Word of Command, is not to find Fault, or presume to chastise any of the Soldiers in the General's Presence for any Neglect in their Exercise; neither ought it to be done before the Colonel, without his Permission, in order to make them mind their Duty, and instruct them in the performing of it better; these Things being only allowable at common Exercise, and not in the Presence of our superior Officers: For which Reason there should be nothing said or heard but the Words of Command for what the Men are to perform.

ARTICLE V.

After the Manual Exercise and Evolutions, they perform the third Part before mentioned, that of the Firings; the Directions for which, with the Use and Service of each Sort, being fully treated of in the two following Chapters, I shall say nothing farther of it here; but proceed to the fourth and last Part of the Ceremony of Reviewing, that of marching by the General, either by Grand-divisions, Sub-divisions, or single Companies.

When a Battalion is divided into three equal Parts or Divisions, each Division is then called a Grand-division.

Sub-divisions are formed by dividing each Grand-division into three, four or five equal Parts, according to the Number of Files in each Grand-division. When the Rear-half-files are doubled, the Sub-divisions then form Platoons.

By Companies, is the marching of each Company by its self, with its own Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers.

The Company of Granadiers is not included or told off in the Grand or Sub-divisions; but keep in a Body by themselves on the Right of the Battalion, except when they are to fire, and then they are divided on the Right and Left.

Before the Regiment marches off, the Files are to be closed, either to the Right, Left, or Center. After which the Ranks are to be closed to close Order, and then ordered to wheel by Grand or Sub-divisions. Upon the Ranks being closed, the Officers are to fall back on the Heads of their several Divisions. The Granadiers are to perform all these Movements with the Battalion.

If

If the Battalion is to march off from the Right, before they are ordered to wheel, the Colonel goes to the Right, and posts himself at the Head of the Captains on that Wing; and the Lieutenant-Colonel is to post himself at the Head of the Captains on the Left. The Hautboys are to repair at the same Time, and place themselves on the Right of the first Division of Drummers.

When they are to march by Grand-divisions, and are wheel'd to the Right, they are to march in the following Order.

I. The Company of Granadiers with their own Officers at their Head.

II. The Hatchet-men of the Battalion form'd into Ranks.

III. The Staff-Officers, *viz.* Chaplain, Adjutant, Quarter-master, Surgeon, and Mate.

IV. The Hautboys in a Rank.

V. The Colonel alone.

VI. All the Captains on the Right, on the Head of the first Grand-division.

VII. All the Lieutenants on the Right in the Rear of the said Division.

VIII. All the Ensigns on the Head of the Center Grand-division.

IX. All the Lieutenants on the Left on the Head of the Rear Grand-division.

X. All the Captains on the Left, in the Rear of the said Grand-division.

XI. The Lieutenant-Colonel alone, in the Rear of the Captains.

The Serjeants are to be divided equally to the three Grand Divisions, and to march on the right and left Flanks.

The Drummers are to fall in between the third and fourth Ranks of each Grand-division.

The Ranks being closed forward to wheel, they are in marching to open to their former Distance of four Paces: For which End, the Rear-ranks are not to move 'till those in their Front have got to their proper Distance, and then all the Men in the next Rank are to step at once forward with their left Feet.

In Marching, the Major is to Salute on Horseback at the Head of the Granadiers, being some Paces advanced before the Captain; but if he commands the Regiment, he is then to march on Foot in the Colonel's Post, and Salute with his Half-pike.

The

The Officers are to march with their Half-pikes downward, and when they come within 20 Paces of the General, they are to bring them to their Shoulders, and to time their Salute so as to finish and pull off their Hats a little before they come opposite to him.

All the Officers who march in the same Rank, are to be very exact in performing their Motions together; and in order to have them done at the same Time, they are to be governed by, and to take them from the Officer who marches on the Right of the Rank they are in.

After the Officers have saluted, they are not to bow their Heads in passing by the General, but to march with their Hats off 'till they have passed him about eight Paces, and then to put them on; and when they have got twenty Paces from him, they are to bring their Half-pikes from their Shoulders, and march with them downward, as before.

The Ensigns are to carry the Colours advanced, and to drop them when the other Ensigns drop the Spear of their Half-pikes, and to march with the Colours down till they have passed the General about six or eight Paces. They are to pull off their Hats when they drop the Colours, and not put them on 'till the other Ensigns do theirs.

The Serjeants are to march with their Halbards on their left Shoulders, holding the Spear in their left Hands; and in passing by the General, they are only to pull off their Hats without bowing their Heads.

The Grand-divisions being sub-divided as before directed, if the Battalion is to march by Sub-divisions, the Officers are to march as follows.

All the Captains on the right Wing are to march at the Head of the first Sub-division.

The Lieutenants of that Wing are to be divided on, and to lead the remaining Sub-divisions of the first Grand-division.

The Ensigns are to be divided on, and to lead the Sub-divisions of the Center Grand-division, the Ensigns with the Colours being posted at the Head of the Center Sub-division.

The Lieutenants on the Left Wing are to be divided on, and to lead the Sub-Divisions of the Left Grand-division.

The Captains on the Left are to march in the Rear of the last Sub-division.

The Field-Officers, Staff-Officers, Hautboys and Hatchet-men, are to march in their former Posts; and the Serjeants are to be divided equally on the Sub-divisions.

The

The Drum-Major and the first Division of Drummers are to march with the first Sub-Division ; the Center Division of Drummers with the Colour Sub-Division ; and the second Division of Drummers with the last or left Sub-Division, falling in between the third and fourth Ranks, as before directed.

The Granadiers are to march as before.

When they are to march thus, the Battalion is to wheel by Sub-Divisions, the Officers placing themselves at the Head of the Sub-Divisions they are to lead, as soon as the Ranks are closed forward, in order to wheel with them.

In Marching, the Ranks are to open to their former Distance, as before directed ; and where there are more Officers than one in a Division, they are to observe the Directions about the Timing of their Salute, that they may do it together.

Reviewing by Companies.

As soon as the Files are closed, the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Hatchet-men are to be ordered to their several Companies ; but as the Order in which the Companies are to be drawn up, won't admit of the closing of the Ranks, and wheeling by Companies, as they did by Grand and Sub-Divisions, they always march off by Companies, and wheel, after they have marched about ten or twelve Paces to the Front. The Order in which the Companies are to march, is as follows.

I. The Captain.

II. The Lieutenant and Ensign in a Rank, four Paces in the Rear of the Captain.

III. The Serjeants in a Rank, four Paces in the Rear of the Subalterns, with their Halbards advanced, in the same Manner as Pikes were formerly.

IV. The Drummers in a Rank, four Paces in the Rear of the Serjeants.

V. The Corporals and private Soldiers, four in a Rank ; and if any odd Men remain, they are to form the Rear-Rank.

The Field-Officers are to march at the Head of their own Companies and Captains.

The Staff-Officers and Hautboys are always to march before the Colonel's Company.

The

The Hatchet-men may either fall into the Ranks, or march before their Captain, as the Colonel or commanding Officer shall direct.

As soon as they have passed by the General, either by Grand or Sub-divisions, or by single Companies, they are to draw up on their former Ground (unless ordered to the contrary) and to remain there till the General acquaints the Colonel, or Officer commanding the Regiment, that he has no farther Commands for them ; after which, the Colonel gives Orders to lodge the Colours, and dismiss the Battalion.

A R T I C L E VI.

When a Regiment is ordered to march off from the Left, either by Grand or Sub-divisions, the Colonel marches at the Head of the Captains, who lead the left Division, the Staff-Officers, Hatchet-men and Hautboys marching before him, as formerly directed, when they march'd off from the Right.

The Lieutenant-Colonel goes to the Right, and marches in the Rear of the Captains on the Right, who fall in the Rear of the right Division.

The Company of Granadiers marches in the Rear of the Lieutenant-Colonel, and the Officers belonging to the Company in the Rear of it.

This is the Method in all common Marches, either in the Line, or alone ; but when the Regiment is retiring from an Enemy, or that any Danger is apprehended in the Rear, the Colonel remains there, and the Lieutenant-Colonel leads the Battalion off.





C H A P. VI.

*Consisting of Directions for the different Firings
of the Foot.*

A R T I C L E I.



AS soon as the Exercise is over, and the Officers returned to the Front, the next Thing which they generally proceed to, is the different Firings; for which End, the following Particulars are to be first performed.

First, The Rear-half-files are to be doubled to the Left, as in Explanation the 5th of the Evolutions.

Secondly, The Granadiers are to be divided on the Right and Left of the Battalion, in the following Manner:

The Company of Granadiers is to be divided into two Platoons, the Captain and second Lieutenant placing themselves at the Head of that on the Right, and the first Lieutenant on that on the Left. One Serjeant and one Drummer are to remain with the right Platoon, the other two Serjeants and Drummer are to march with the left Platoon.

When the Company of Granadiers is thus divided, and the Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers, have posted themselves on the Right and Left Platoons, according to the above Directions, they are to face to the Left on their right Heels, and to march to the Left, beginning with the Feet they faced on. The first Lieutenant with his Platoon of Granadiers is to march along the Ranks of the Battalion, 'till the Right hand File of his Platoon has got one Pace beyond the Left hand File of the Battalion, and then halt, and make them dress with the Battalion. What is meant by Marching along the Ranks, is this: The Front Rank of Granadiers marches between the Officers and the Front Rank of the Battalion, the Center Rank of Granadiers between the Front and Center Ranks, and the Rear Rank of Granadiers between the Center and Rear Ranks of the Battalion.

As soon as the Left-hand File of the Right Platoon of Granadiers comes within a Pace of the Right-hand File of
F the

the Battalion, the Captain is to order them to halt, and make them dress with the others.

Thirdly, The Major is to order the Men to fix their Bayonets, it being the Custom to perform the Firings with the Bayonets fix'd on the Muzzle; which, however, may be omitted in common Exercise, if the commanding Officer thinks proper; but never in Service.

Fourthly, When the Bayonets are fix'd, the Battalion is to be divided into Platoons; the Number of which must depend upon the Strength of the Battalion, and the particular Firings you intend to perform. Neither is a Platoon composed of any fix'd Number of Files; (I mean those of three deep, which are commonly called Half-files, because a File of Men are taken for Six, in the ordinary way of speaking; whereas the true Meaning of the Word *File*, signifies all those Men who stand in a direct Line behind one another, or, in the Military Phrase, all those who stand in a direct Line from Front to Rear: So that their being three, four, or six deep, does not alter the Sense, or change it from being a File) but may be more or less, according as the Battalion will allow of it: However, a Platoon is seldom composed of less than 10 Files, which are 30 Men, or more than 16 Files, which are 48 Men; because a Platoon composed of less than 10 Files would not be of Weight enough to do any considerable Execution; and those above 16 Files would be too great a Body of Men for an Officer to manage upon Service.

In dividing the Battalion into Platoons, they should be composed of an equal Number of Files; or at least not above one File stronger than another, and those should be the Flanks and Colour Platoons.

As soon as the Platoons are told off, there must be an Officer appointed to each, to command them; taking an equal Proportion of Captains, Lieutenants, and Ensigns for that Purpose.

The Lieutenant-Colonel, with the remaining Part of the Officers, are to march, and post themselves in the Rear of the Battalion, in the same Manner as they do at Exercise, the Captains, Lieutenants, and Ensigns drawing up into one Rank in the Rear of the Serjeants, and the Lieutenant-Colonel in the Rear of the Officers, and opposite to the Colour Platoon.

The Serjeants should be divided to the several Platoons, and posted in the Rear of them.

The Colonel, and the Ensigns with the Colours, remain in the former Posts, at the Head of the Battalion.

The

The Reasons for Officers being posted in the Rear, are as follows: *First*, As the Interval between each Platoon should be but one Pace, the Officer who commands the Platoon is to fall into it when they fire; therefore, should any more Officers remain in the Front, than one to each Platoon, it would only embarrass and expose them to their own Fire.

Secondly, It is of great Use to have experienced Officers in the Rear, to keep the Men up, and see that they do their Duty in Action; as also to lead the Battalion off in Order, when they are commanded to retire; for which Reason they place a Proportion of each Rank there. And *Lastly*, should there be no Officers in the Rear when the Battalion is order'd to the Right-about, the Men would be apt to march off too fast, and by that Means break their Ranks, and fall into Confusion, or not halt in due Time; which Inconveniences are prevented by Officers being posted there.

The Method which is now practis'd, and which, by Experience, is found to be the most useful, is, the dividing of the Platoons into several Firings; each Firing being seldom compos'd of less than four Platoons, or more than five; which Firings are not kept together in any one Part of the Battalion; but the Platoons of each Firing distributed, or dispos'd into different Parts of the Regiment; the Reasons for disposing of them into different Parts, are these:

First, The disposing of the Platoons of each Firing into different Parts of the Battalion, will extend your Fire in such a Manner, as to do Execution in different Parts of the opposite Regiment; the Consequence of which, may either disable or dishearten them so much, as, upon a nearer Approach, to oblige them to give Way, or make but a faint Resistance.

Secondly, Their being divided in this Manner, should the Enemy and you join before those Platoons have Time to load, not any one Part of your Battalion is very much weakened by it; however, when the commanding Officer apprehends that this may be the Case, he must avoid it, by leaving off after the first or second Firings, that they may be all loaded by the Time they join the Enemy, in order to throw in their Whole upon them at once.

Thirdly, Should the Platoons of each Firing be together, too great a Part of the Battalion would be expos'd in one Place before the Men could load, particularly the Flank Firings.

Fourthly and Lastly, The Firings being thus dispos'd of, it makes the Exercise appear the more beautiful, and accustoms

the Men to hear Firing on their Right and Left, without touching their Arms, 'till they have Orders for it, which the *English* are with Difficulty brought to, from a natural Desire and Eagerness to enter soon into Action ; a Quality in some Cases extreamly commendable, but in others the contrary ; for which Reason the Men must be taught to rely entirely on the Conduct of their Officers, and to wait with Patience for their Orders, before they perform any Motion ; the due Performance of which, both their Safety and Honour depend on.

If the Platoons of Granadiers are too weak, they may add from the Right and Left of the Battalion, some Files of Musketeers to them, before the Platoons are told off.

A R T I C L E II.

For the better explaining, and the easier comprehending of the different Firings, and the Distribution of the Platoons of each Firing in several Parts of the Regiment, as mention'd in the preceeding Article, I have hereunto annex'd three Plans: the first consisting of 18 Platoons, composing three Firings of 5 Platoons each, and a Reserve of three Platoons ; the second Plan consists of 15 Platoons, divided into three Firings, of 5 Platoons each ; the third is of 12 Platoons, divided into three Firings, of four Platoons each.

The two Platoons of Granadiers are included in the above Number, and always make a Part of the Reserve ; but when the Battalion is told off only in three Firings, they are then included in the last Firing.

The Platoons marked with the Letter A, are those of the first Firing.

Those marked B, of the second Firing.

Those marked C, of the third Firing.

And those marked D, are of the Reserve.

By which Means the different Firings may be seen at one View, and how the Platoons of each Firing fall into the several Parts of the Battalion ; and the Whole appear so plain and easy, that, I believe, there will want no further Explanation for the comprehending of it.

The Rule laid down in these Plans, for disposing the Platoons of the different Firings in the Manner here mention'd, may be varied, if the commanding Officer thinks proper ; because Circumstances of Time and Place, or the Situation of the Enemy, may require a different Disposition.

PLAN.

PLAN I. consisting of 18 Platoons.

Granadiers. D *Reserve.*

A *1st Platoon of the First Firing.*
 B *1st Platoon of the Second Firing.*
 C *1st Platoon of the Third Firing.* } First Pla-
 toons of
 the Three
 Firings.

A *3d Platoon of the First Firing.*
 B *3d Platoon of the Second Firing.*
 C *3d Platoon of the Third Firing.* } Third Pla-
 toons of
 the three
 Firings.

A *5th Platoon of the First Firing.*
 B *5th Platoon of the Second Firing.*
 C *5th Platoon of the Third Firing.* } Fifth Pla-
 toons of
 the Three
 Firings.

Colours. D. *Reserve.*

A *4th Platoon of the First Firing.*
 B *4th Platoon of the Second Firing.*
 C *4th Platoon of the Third Firing.* } Fourth Pla-
 toons of
 the Three
 Firings.

A *2d Platoon of the First Firing.*
 B *2d Platoon of the Second Firing.*
 C *2d Platoon of the Third Firing.* } Second Pla-
 toons of
 the Three
 Firings.

Granadiers. D *Reserve.*

Front of the Battalion.

PLAN II. Of 15 Platoons.

Front of the Battalion.

Granadiers.	C 1st Platoon of the Third Firing.	} First Pla- toons of each Firing.
	A 1st Platoon of the First Firing.	
	B 1st Platoon of the Second Firing.	
	C 3d Platoon of the Third Firing.	} Third Pla- toons of each Firing.
	A 3d Platoon of the First Firing.	
	B 3d Platoon of the Second Firing.	
Colours.	A 5th Platoon of the First Firing.	} Fifth Pla- toons of each Firing.
	C 5th Platoon of the Third Firing.	
	B 5th Platoon of the Second Firing.	
	A 4th Platoon of the First Firing.	} Fourth Pla- toons of each Firing.
	B 4th Platoon of the Second Firing.	
	C 4th Platoon of the Third Firing.	
	A 2d Platoon of the First Firing.	} Second Pla- toons of each Firing.
	B 2d Platoon of the Second Firing.	
Granadiers.	C 2d Platoon of the Third Firing.	

PLAN

P L A N III. Of 12 Platoons.

Front of the Battalion.

Granadiers.	C	1st Platoon of the Third Firing.	} First Pla- toons of each Firing.
	A	1st Platoon of the First Firing.	
	B	1st Platoon of the Second Firing.	
	C	3d Platoon of the Third Firing.	} Third Pla- toons of each Firing.
	A	3d Platoon of the First Firing.	
	B	3d Platoon of the Second Firing.	
Colours.	C	4th Platoon of the Third Firing.	} Fourth Pla- toons of each Firing.
	A	4th Platoon of the First Firing.	
	B	4th Platoon of the Second Firing.	
	A	2d Platoon of the First Firing.	} Second Pla- toons of each Firing.
	B	2d Platoon of the Second Firing.	
Granadiers.	C	2d Platoon of the Third Firing.	

Before I proceed further, it will be necessary to explain the Platoon Exercise; that is, what Number of Motions of the Manual Exercise they are to perform at each Word of Command.

There are but three Words of Command used in the Platoon Exercise, which are as follows.

I. *Make Ready.* II. *Present.* III. *Fire.*

By the first Word of Command, the Men are to perform all the Motions contained in the four first Words of Command of the Manual Exercise; and immediately after the performing of the last of the said Motions, which is Cocking, the Men of the Front Rank are to kneel down on their right Knees, placing the Butt-end of their Firelocks on the Ground, keeping their Thumbs on the Cocks, and their Fingers on the Triggers. The Center and Rear Ranks close forward at the same Time with recover'd Arms, the Men of the Center Rank placing their left Feet on the Inside of the right Feet of their File-leaders, bringing their right Feet to the Right, but not in a Line with their Left, only in the same Position as when they Rest. The Men in the Rear-rank place their left Feet on the Inside of the right Feet of those in the Center-rank, bringing their right Feet to the Right as those in the Center-rank did.

The placing of the Feet in this Manner, is called in Military Terms, *Locking*.

Formerly the Men in each File stood in a direct Line behind one another, by which Means those in the Center-rank were obliged to stoop, that the Men in the Rear-rank might fire over their Heads; but by the above Position, that inconvenient and uneasy Posture is avoided: For by Locking as aforesaid, the Men of the Center-rank present their Firelocks over the right Shoulders of their File-leaders; and those of the Rear-rank present to the Right of the Center-rank Men, which bring their Firelocks, when they present, to the Intervals between the Files.

By the second Word of Command, they are to Present their Firelocks, as in Explanation 5 is directed.

By the third Word of Command, they are to Fire, as in Explanation 6, after which they are to recover their Arms, the Front-rank rising up, and the Center and Rear falling back to half Distance, it being a standing Rule to move the Ranks up to that Distance before they are order'd to make ready; and,

as soon as the Center and Rear-ranks have fallen back, they are all to proceed to Half-cock, prime, load and shoulder, performing the several Motions together, as directed in the Manual Exercise; with this Difference, that in the Platoon Exercise, after Priming, the Men are not to bring their Firelocks to a Recover in order to cast about to the Left; but after they have shut their Pans, they are to seize their Firelocks with the right Hand behind the Lock, as in the 3d Motion of Explan. 11; and with both Hands, without moving their Feet from the Ground or changing their Aspect, bring their Firelocks up before them, and at the same Time they are to quit the Butt with their right Hands, and take hold of the Muzzle when it comes opposite to the right Shoulder, which they are to bring that way with their left Hands; by which Means, the Position of the Firelock will be the same as in Explan. 12; only this Difference, that by the Men being faced to the Right, the Butt will point to the Front, as in the other it does to the Rear. That this may be done without too much Constraint to the Men, and at the same Time appear more graceful in the Exercise, they may change the Position of their Feet, by turning on their Heels when they seize the Muzzle with their right Hand, bringing the right Toe to point to the Rear, and the Left along the Rank, forming a T to the Rear, as they did before to the Front.

The Reason for their performing of it in this Manner, is both to gain Time, and to prevent the Men from being too much fatigued.

Another Thing which contributes to the Loading quick, is the making up of the Cartridges to such an Exactness, that, after they are placed in the Muzzle, one Thump with the Butt-end on the Ground, will make them run down to the Brecch of the Barrel; which will save the Time usually taken up in Ramming. But as the ramming down of the Cartridge is, in my Opinion, very necessary, I must beg Leave to offer some Objections against the disusing it.

First, Unless the Barrel be very clean within, which can't be after the second or third Fire, the Cartridge, in all Probability, will stick half-way; the Effect of which is too well known to be here inserted.

Secondly, If the Cartridge runs down too easy, the Paper may get betwixt the Touch-hole and the Powder, and prevent its going off; the Service of which Men will be lost during the Action.

Thirdly,

Thirdly and Lastly, When the Cartridge is made to fit exactly, yet the Foulness of the Barrel after two or three Fires may prevent the Paper and Ball from going much further than the Muzzle, tho' not the Powder. So that, upon the leveling of the Piece, a great Part of the Powder will run towards the Muzzle, and by coming out whole, weaken the Fire so much, that the Ball will either drop within two or three Yards, or not have Force enough to do much Execution.

If the above Objections are thought to be of any Weight, they may be easily remedied, by making use of the Rammer; for as the one is certain, and the other uncertain, I think there is no Room left to chuse which ought to be followed; for which Reason, when they are not press'd too close by the Enemy, the ramming down of the Cartridge should not be omitted in Service.

In dividing the Platoons into the several Firings, the Major should take particular Care to let the Officers and Soldiers know distinctly what Firing they belong to, whether of the first, second, or third Firing, or of the Reserve; as also what Number each Platoon is of in the different Firings, as the first, second, third, fourth, or fifth Platoon of the first, second, or third Firing, or of the Reserve; that no Mistake may happen in the Execution.

In order to know if they have rightly understood their Telling off, the Major may try the Platoons of each Firing apart, by making those Platoons perform some Motions together, as Resting and Shouldering, the same may be done by the Platoons of each Firing singly. This, however, should be practised only at common Exercise, or before the General, who is to see you go through your Firings, comes into the Field.

He must likewise let them know what Firings they are to perform, and in what Manner they are to do it, whether Standing, Advancing, or Retiring, or all three; as also, whether the Platoons of each Firing are to fire in their Order, (which is one after the other) or together; and what Signals by Beat of Drum he intends to make use of, and what they are to perform at each Signal.

The usual Beatings made use of on these Occasions, which are perform'd by the Orderly Drummer attending the Major, are as follows:

At the Beating of the March, the Regiment is to march straight forward, beginning with the Left Feet; and when the Drum ceases they are to Halt.

When

When a Retreat is beat, the Battalion is to face to the Right-about, the Men performing it on their Left Heels, and march towards the Rear; and when the Drum ceases, they are to face to their proper Front, by coming to the Left-about on their left Heels. But that the Men may not mistake the Time of their facing to their proper Front, by the short Pauses which the Drummer must of Course make in the beating of the Retreat, another Signal may be added when they are to do it, such as a short Ruffle, by which Means the Facing will be perform'd with the more Exactness, and prevent the least Disorder.

At the beating of a Preparative, all the Platoons of that Firing which is to come next, are to make ready together, as is explain'd in the Platoon Exercise.

A Flam, or double Stroak, is the Signal for the Platoons to begin to fire; the particular Directions for which, shall be treated of in the following Article.

A R T I C L E III.

The Battalion being prepared according to the foregoing Directions, I shall now proceed to the Firings, and begin with those in Plan the first, consisting of 18 Platoons, composing three Firings and a Reserve.

To go through the Firings standing.

The Major is to order the Drummer to beat a Preparative; at which all the Platoons of the first Firing are to make ready, as directed in the Platoon Exercise; and at the same Time the Officers who command them, are to place themselves on the Right and Left of their Platoons, facing towards the Colours; thus: The Officers to the Right of the Colours, to place themselves on the Right of their Platoons, and the Officers to the Left of the Colours on the Left of their Platoons, being only advanced a short Pace before the Front Rank of Men, that they may see all their Platoon, in order to make the Men level well, and do their Duty.

Then the Major orders the Drummer to beat a Flam; at which the Officer commanding the first Platoon of that Firing, gives the following Words of Command.

Present,

Present. Fire.

As soon as the Word *Fire* is given to the first Platoon, the Officer commanding the second Platoon is to give the Word, *Present*, and then *Fire*. The Officer commanding the third Platoon, is to observe the same Rule, when the Word, *Fire*, is given to the second Platoon; the Officers commanding the fourth and fifth Platoons of that Firing, are to follow the same Directions.

The Officers, who give the Words of Command, are to speak them clear and distinct, and not to proceed to the Word *Fire*, 'till the Men have presented as they ought, or wait too long after they have.

When the Words of Command are given with Judgment, the Fire is generally good; so that the firing well or ill, depends, in a great Measure, on the Manner the Officers give them.

When the Battalion is to fire, the two Divisions of Drummers on the Right and Left, are to post themselves on the Flanks, and dress in a Line with the Front Rank. When the Colour Platoon makes ready, the Center Division of Drummers are to move to the Platoons on the Right and Left of it; and when that Platoon has loaded again, they are to return to their Posts.

As soon as the first Firing is over, the Major orders a second Preparative to be beat; at which the Platoons of the second Firing make ready, the Officers commanding those Platoons, posting themselves in the same Manner, as already directed for those of the first Firing.

After this a Flam; then the first Platoon of the second Firing, presents, and fires, and the other Platoons of that Firing following in their Order.

The same Method must be observed for the Platoons of the third Firing, as also for those of the Reserve; but before the Platoons of Granadiers kneel and lock, they are to wheel to the Right and Left inwards an eighth Part of the Circle, which, as being on the Flanks, they are always to do, in whatever Firing they are placed.

By Wheeling the Granadiers inward, in this Manner, it throws their Fire towards the Center of the opposite Regiment, and consequently rakes a great Part of their Front, which, if they level well, can't fail of doing considerable Execution, since every Ball must have its Effect.

When

When the Colour Platoon makes ready, the Colonel, Ensigns with Colours, and the Hautboys, are to move to the Platoon on the Right or Left of it; and when it has fired, they are to return to their former Posts.

As the Platoon Exercise directs the Men to load, as soon as they have fired, and when loaded to shoulder their Firelocks, I thought it unnecessary to mention it at the End of each Firing.

The Battalion having gone through their Firings Standing, I shall, in the next Place, give Directions how they are to perform them Advancing.

How to Fire Advancing.

Upon the Major's ordering the Drummer to beat a March, the whole Battalion is to march strait forward, beginning with their left Feet, and to move as slow as Foot can fall.

The Officers in the Front are to be only two Paces advanced before their Platoons, and to take care to keep their Rank even in Marching. The Officers in the Rear are to keep their former Distance.

When the Drummer ceases Beating, which he is not to do, whether Advancing or Retiring, till he is ordered, the Battalion is to Halt; and the Officers commanding the Platoons are to place themselves immediately on the Right and Left of their Platoons, facing towards the Colours, as before directed.

Then the Preparative is to beat, at which the Platoons of the first Firing are to make ready. After that a Flam to begin firing, which they are to perform in their Order. But in order to vary this Fire from that standing, they may make all those Platoons fire together; in which Case, no Flam is to beat, but the Major gives the Word of Command, *Present, Fire.*

As soon as they have fired, either in their Order, or together, the Drummer must be order'd to beat a March; at which the Battalion moves forward as before, the Officers in the Front marching at the Head of their Platoons, as already directed; and the Platoons which have fired, are to load in Marching.

When you would begin the second Firing, the Drummer must be ordered to cease; at which the Battalion is to halt, and the Officers to post themselves on the Right and Left of their Platoons. Then a Preparative for the Platoons of the second

second Firing to make ready ; after that to proceed to fire, as those of the first did.

The same Method is to be observed for the third Fire and Reserve ; taking care that the Granadiers wheel inward, as before directed, when they are to fire.

When the Colour Platoon is to fire, the Colonel, Ensign with the Colours, and Hautboys, are to move to the Head of another Platoon ; but when the Battalion fires together, they must then fall into the Intervals on the Right and Left of the Colour Platoon.

How to Fire Retiring.

The Battalion having gone through their Firings in Advancing, the Major is to order the Drummer to beat a Retreat ; at which the Battalion is to face to the Right-about, and march very slow to the Rear. The Lieutenant Colonel, at the Head of the Officers in the Rear, leads the Battalion. The Officers who were in the Front march in the Rear of their Platoons, and the Colonel in the Rear of the Ensigns with the Colours.

As soon as the Battalion has marched as far as is proper, the Major must order the Drummer to cease beating the Retreat, and give the Ruffle (or any other Signal which may be thought more proper) at which the whole are to face to the Left about.

When the Battalion is faced, the Major orders the Preparative ; at which the Platoons of the first Firing make ready, and the Officers in the Front fall into their Posts as before directed. After this they are to fire in the same Manner as they did Advancing.

As soon as those Platoons have fired, the Drummers beat a Retreat, at which the Battalion is to face again to the Right-about, and march towards the Rear, as before.

When the Drummer ceases to beat the Retreat, and the Ruffle given, the Battalion is immediately to halt ; then the Preparative for the Platoons of the second Firing to make ready, and then to fire, as those of the first Firing did.

In Retiring, the Meaning of the Word *Halt*, is to face to the proper Front ; but in Advancing, it is only to stand still.

As soon as the second Fire is over, the Retreat must be beat for the Battalion to face to the Right about, and march ; and when the Drum ceases, they are to Halt ; and at the
Prepara-

Preparative, the Platoons of the third Firing are to make ready, and to fire as the others.

The same must be performed for the Reserve; which compleats the several Firings in Retiring.

After they have perform'd the above Firings in the Manner here mentioned, it is customary to make one Fire by the whole Battalion. This may be done on the Ground they stood on after the last Fire; but it will appear more graceful, by making a Movement to the Front, before it is given. In this Case the Drummer must be order'd to beat a March, at which the Battalion is to move forward, and when the Major finds that the Platoons which fired last have loaded and shouldr'd, he may order the Drummer to cease, on which the Battalion is to halt. After that he is to order a Preparative for the Whole to make ready, or do it by Word of Command, and then give the Words, *Present, Fire.*

A R T I C L E IV.

When the Foot are attacked by Horse, whether they are drawn up in the Line of Battle, or in a Square, it is proper for them to reserve their whole Front-rank, and fire only the Center and Rear-ranks by Platoons. In this Case, the Front-rank is not to fire 'till they are put to the last Extremity; and then not to fire till the Horse are so close, that they have but just Time to charge their Bayonets Breast-high after they have fired; that they may be sure of placing in them, both their Balls and Bayonets, in almost the same Instant of Time. But I shall treat of this more at large hereafter, and pursue what is already propos'd, the Method of performing the different Firings of the Foot.

There is another Method of performing the Firings, in Advancing and Retiring, without halting the Battalion when the Platoons are to fire. Thus:

The Major is to order the whole Battalion to make ready at the same Time, and to march with recover'd Arms; which may be done before they begin to march, or after they are in Motion. As soon as you would begin the first Firing, there should be a Signal given, which may be a Ruffle, or a Flam, upon which the Platoons of the first Firing are to move forward briskly six or eight Paces, and then kneel and lock, and to proceed immediately to fire in their Order. The rest of the Battalion is to continue their former Pace, which must be very slow, that the Platoons which advanced

advanced may have just finished their Fire by the Time they join them. At the next Signal (which may be given as soon as the Battalion have join'd the Platoons of the first Firing) the Platoons of the second Firing are to advance and fire in the same Manner as the former; and so on through the several Firings. When the Platoons that fired have loaded, they are to shoulder.

As soon as they have perform'd their Firings in Advancing, the Major is to order a Retreat to be beat; upon which the Battalion is to face to the Right-about, and march towards the Rear. Soon after, he is to order the whole to make ready, and continue Marching with recover'd Arms. When he would begin the Firings, he is to order the Signal to be given, upon which, all the Platoons of the first Firing face to the Left-about, and immediately kneel and lock, and then fire, as before directed. When they have all fired, they are to recover their Arms, face to the Right-about, march back quick into their former Places, and then load.

The rest of the Battalion is not to halt, but to continue Marching, though as slow as possible.

At the next Signal, the Platoons of the second Firing are to halt and fire; after which they are to join the Battalion as the others did. The third and Reserve are to be performed in the same Manner.

By this Method of Firing, a Battalion may advance and retire faster than by that mention'd in the preceeding Article; as also go through the Firings quicker: And, in Speculation, it will appear of much greater Service; but Experience will convince every one that it can only subsist in Theory, since the practick Part is attended with great Difficulty and Danger; to support which, I shall offer the following Reasons.

In Advancing towards the Enemy, it is with great Difficulty that the Officers can prevent the Men (but more particularly when they are fired at) from taking their Arms, without Orders, off from their Shoulders, and firing at too great a Distance. How much more difficult must it be to prevent their firing, when they have their Arms in their Hands ready cock'd, and their Fingers on the Triggers? I won't say it is impossible, though I look upon it to be almost so: And therefore, in my Opinion, imprudent to trust a Thing of this Consequence to Chance, unless obliged to it, by having no other Means left.

In

In the next Place ; by advancing the Platoons in the Front, their Intervals are liable to be closed, when only at common Exercise. How much more difficult must it be to keep them open in the Presence of an Enemy ? And if the Intervals are closed, the Platoons that have fired will be apt to throw the rest of the Battalion in Confusion, should the Enemy advance ; but if they should not advance, the Confusion must still be considerable, since they dare not fire for fear of killing their own Men.

It is yet more dangerous in a Retreat ; because a Regiment seldom retires, but when obliged to it by a superior Force ; at which Time, the least Disorder is liable to ruin the Whole ; for which Reason, I believe, few or none will use this Method upon Service, whatever they may do in Exercise.

In retiring from Foot, it is very proper from Time to Time to order some Platoons to face to the Left-about and fire, when the Enemy presses pretty close, without Halting the Battalion ; but even in that Case they never exceed two at a Time, and then they are not to make ready 'till they have faced.

The Firings of the second and third Plans are to be performed in the same Manner as is directed for those of the first.

As a Battalion is strong or weak, it may be told off according to one of the foregoing Plans ; which was the Reason for my Drawing more than one. As for Example :

A Battalion of six hundred Men may be told off according to the first Plan, two Platoons of which will consist of twelve Files each, and the other sixteen Platoons of eleven Files each.

A Battalion of five hundred Men may be told off according to the second Plan, one Platoon of which will consist of twelve Files, and the others of eleven Files each.

A Battalion of four hundred Men may be told off by the third Plan, one Platoon of which will be twelve Files, and the rest eleven Files each.

A R T I C L E V.

Firing by Ranks.

To fire by Ranks, is meant, to fire only one Rank of the Battalion at a Time, beginning first with the Rear Rank,

G

then

then the Center Rank, and lastly the Front Rank. The Manner of performing it is as follows.

The whole Battalion is to make ready at the same Time, and immediately kneel and lock, as in the Platoon Exercise. Then the Major gives the following Words of Command:

Rear Rank—Present—Fire.

As soon as the Rear Rank has fired, they are to recover their Arms, fall back to their former Distance, prime, load and shoulder. After the Rear Rank has fired, the Major proceeds, *Center Rank, Present, Fire.* After Firing, the Center Rank recovers their Arms, falls back, primes, loads and shoulders. When the Center Rank has fired, the Front Rank is to do the same; which may be done either Kneeling, or by making them stand up first.

In the Time that Pikes were in Use, I presume that this was the Method prescribed when attack'd by Horse, the whole Front Rank being composed of Pike-Men, and the Center and Rear of Musketeers. When the Musketeers were ordered to make ready, I suppose the Pikemen kneel'd down, as the Front Rank does now, dropping the Spears on the Ground 'till the two Ranks of Musketeers had fired, and then rose up and charged their Pikes, remaining in that Position till the Musketeers had loaded.

As I never had any Experience with the Pikes, they being laid aside just when I came into the Service, I hope I may be excused, if what I have here mention'd is wrong; but as the Firing by Ranks, both in the Battalion, and the Square, was practis'd a considerable Time after the Pikes were gone, I presume, from thence, that it was their Method, and retain'd by the old Officers, who laid a great Stress upon it, as the most effectual Way to secure them against Horse. But this is not to be wonder'd at, since it is natural for all Mankind to be prejudiced in Favour of the First Notions they receive, or Customs which they have been long used to: However, it is seldom or never used in Service, tho' sometimes practis'd in the Exercise; but another Method is substituted in its Room; which is, that of saving the Fire of the whole Front Rank of the Battalion to the last, and firing the two Rear Ranks by Platoons; it being the compact Fire which does the Execution requisite to break a Squadron whereas the Fire of a single Rank is so thin, that it will
not

not easily stop their Progress, if their Resolution don't fail them.

ARTICLE VI.

Parapet Firing.

This Firing is only used in fortified Towns when besieg'd, in Intrenchments that are attack'd, or that you are to fire over a Hedge, or Wall, at the Enemy.

There are two Ways of performing it; the one by Ranks, and the other by Files.

By Ranks.

As the Breast-work, Parapet, or Hedge is before the Men, they are obliged to fire standing, and therefore no more than one Rank can fire at a Time, which begins with the Front Rank, who as soon as they have fired, are to form in the Rear, that the Center Rank may march up and fire; and when they have fired, they are to form in the Rear also, that the Rear Rank may march up and do the same.

There are two Ways of performing it by Ranks; the one with the Files open, and the other with them closed.

When the Files are open, as soon as the Front Rank has fired, they are to recover their Arms, face to the Right-about on their right Heels, which brings them directly opposite to the Intervals on their Right, thro' which they are to march to the Rear, and then to face to their proper Front, by going to the Right-about on their right Heels, which brings them in the Rear of their own Files, forming then the Rear, of which before they were the Front. Upon the Front Rank's marching down the Intervals to the Rear, the Center and Rear Ranks march forward, the Center into the Ground from whence the Front Rank fired, and the Rear Rank into that where the Center stood. When the Center Rank comes into the Ground of the first, they are to fire, recover their Arms, face to the Right-about, march to the Rear, and face again to their proper Front. The Rear Rank is to do the same; so one Rank after another, as long as the commanding Officer shall think proper. By this Means you may keep almost a constant Fire, since the Time between each will be very inconsiderable.

then the Center Rank, and lastly the Front Rank. The Manner of performing it is as follows.

The whole Battalion is to make ready at the same Time, and immediately kneel and lock, as in the Platoon Exercise. Then the Major gives the following Words of Command:

Rear Rank——Present——Fire.

As soon as the Rear Rank has fired, they are to recover their Arms, fall back to their former Distance, prime, load and shoulder. After the Rear Rank has fired, the Major proceeds, *Center Rank, Present, Fire.* After Firing, the Center Rank recovers their Arms, falls back, primes, loads and shoulders. When the Center Rank has fired, the Front Rank is to do the same; which may be done either Kneeling, or by making them stand up first.

In the Time that Pikes were in Use, I presume that this was the Method prescribed when attack'd by Horse, the whole Front Rank being composed of Pike-Men, and the Center and Rear of Musketeers. When the Musketeers were ordered to make ready, I suppose the Pikemen kneel'd down, as the Front Rank does now, dropping the Spears on the Ground 'till the two Ranks of Musketeers had fired, and then rose up and charged their Pikes, remaining in that Position till the Musketeers had loaded.

As I never had any Experience with the Pikes, they being laid aside just when I came into the Service, I hope I may be excused, if what I have here mention'd is wrong; but as the Firing by Ranks, both in the Battalion, and the Square, was practised a considerable Time after the Pikes were gone, I presume, from thence, that it was their Method, and retain'd by the old Officers, who laid a great Stress upon it, as the most effectual Way to secure them against Horse. But this is not to be wonder'd at, since it is natural for all Mankind to be prejudiced in Favour of the First Notions they receive, or Customs which they have been long used to: However, it is seldom or never used in Service, tho' sometimes practised in the Exercise; but another Method is substituted in its Room; which is, that of saving the Fire of the whole Front Rank of the Battalion to the last, and firing the two Rear Ranks by Platoons; it being the compact Fire which does the Execution requisite to break a Squadron whereas the Fire of a single Rank is so thin, that it will
not

not easily stop their Progress, if their Resolution don't fail them.

A R T I C L E VI.

Parapet Firing.

This Firing is only used in fortified Towns when besieg'd, in Intrenchments that are attack'd, or that you are to fire over a Hedge, or Wall, at the Enemy.

There are two Ways of performing it; the one by Ranks, and the other by Files.

By Ranks.

As the Breast-work, Parapet, or Hedge is before the Men, they are obliged to fire standing, and therefore no more than one Rank can fire at a Time, which begins with the Front Rank, who as soon as they have fired, are to form in the Rear, that the Center Rank may march up and fire; and when they have fired, they are to form in the Rear also, that the Rear Rank may march up and do the same.

There are two Ways of performing it by Ranks; the one with the Files open, and the other with them closed.

When the Files are open, as soon as the Front Rank has fired, they are to recover their Arms, face to the Right-about on their right Heels, which brings them directly opposite to the Intervals on their Right, thro' which they are to march to the Rear, and then to face to their proper Front, by going to the Right-about on their right Heels, which brings them in the Rear of their own Files, forming then the Rear, of which before they were the Front. Upon the Front Rank's marching down the Intervals to the Rear, the Center and Rear Ranks march forward, the Center into the Ground from whence the Front Rank fired, and the Rear Rank into that where the Center stood. When the Center Rank comes into the Ground of the first, they are to fire, recover their Arms, face to the Right-about, march to the Rear, and face again to their proper Front. The Rear Rank is to do the same; so one Rank after another, as long as the commanding Officer shall think proper. By this Means you may keep almost a constant Fire, since the Time between each will be very inconsiderable.

This Manner of performing it, with the Files open, is much in the same Nature as the Counter-marching by Files.

Before they begin to fire, the Major is to order the whole Battalion to make ready, proceeding no farther than recover'd Arms, 'till the Signal is given for them to fire. As soon as the Ranks that have fired are formed in the Rear, they are immediately to prime, load, and make ready; and march forward with recovered Arms, as the Ranks before them move up to fire, without any further Word of Command than that which was first given: Which Directions will serve for all Parapet-Firing.

How to perform it by Ranks with the Files closed.

In this Case, the Battalion must be told off by Platoons, leaving an Interval of a large Pace between each. When the whole Front-rank of the Battalion has fired, which it is to do in the same Manner as that with the Files open, the Men of that Rank are to recover their Arms, and face to the Left on their left Heels; but the Left-hand Man of each Platoon must face to the Left-about on his Left Heel, which brings him opposite to the Interval on the Left of his Platoon. As soon as they have faced, the Left-hand Men of the Platoons are to march strait down their several Intervals to the Rear, all the rest following them to the Left; and as each Man comes opposite to the Interval on the Left of his Platoon, he is to face again to the Left, and march down the Interval, those of each Platoon following their Left-hand Man. As soon as the Left-hand Man of each Platoon has got one Pace beyond the Rear-rank, they are to face to the Left, and continue marching 'till they come to the Right of their own Platoons (the others following in File in the same Manner) and then halt, forming then the Rear-rank, of which before they were the Front. After they are formed in the Rear, they are immediately to load, and as soon as loaded to make ready, and march forward, as before directed.

When the Front-rank has fired and march'd clear of the Front, the Center and Rear-ranks are to march forward, the Center into the Ground of the first, and the Rear into that of the Center; then the Center-rank is to fire, recover their Arms, face to the Left, march down the Intervals, and form in the Rear of their own Platoons, as the Front-rank did. The Rear-rank is then to march forward, fire, and form in the Rear, as the others.

This

This is a Sort of a Counter-marching by Ranks, by bringing the Left of each Platoon to the Right, and the Right to the Left; with this Difference, that instead of keeping the same Station, each Rank in its Turn forms the Rear, and as those before them fire, they move up to their former Ground.

I think I have no Occasion to give my Opinion which of the two Ways, that with the Files open, or the other with them closed, is the best, since every body will agree, that the one which contains the most Fire, which is that with the Files closed, must have the Preference.

Parapet Firing by Files.

The Battalion must be told off into Platoons, as in the other Firing, and drawn up at three Paces Distance from the Parapet, Breast-work, or Hedge, and the Whole order'd to make ready together as far as recover'd Arms: And when the Signal is given for them to begin to fire, the Files on the Right and Left of each Platoon (that is, one File from the Right, and one File from the Left of each Platoon) move forward, and when the File-leaders come up to the Breast-work, or Hedge, they are to face to the Right and Left inwards (that is, the Right and Left-hand Men of each Platoon facing towards one another) those of the Center and Rear following their File-leaders till the two Front Men join, and then they are to halt; by which the two Files of each Platoon form a Rank of six Men in the Front of their Platoons. As soon as they are thus formed in the Front, they are to present and fire; then recover their Arms, face to the Right and Left outwards, and march back to their own Places in the Manner they came. When the first Files have fired, those Files which stood next them are to march out, and draw up in the Front of their Platoons, in the same Manner as the others did, and fire; then recover their Arms, and march back to their former Places. The two next Files of each Platoon are to march out, fire, and return to their Places in the same Order as the others, and so on till the two Center Files have fired; after which the Flank-Files of the Platoons are to begin again, unless order'd to the contrary.

To avoid Confusion in their drawing up in the Front of their Platoons to fire, the File-leaders should always form in the Center, as before directed, those Men of the Center

and Rear Ranks drawing up on the Outside of them ; which must be done when the two Center Files move out, they being to march up strait to the Parapet, and the Men of the Center and Rear Ranks to face outward, and draw up on the Right and Left of their File-Leaders : However, it may be done otherwise than the two Center Files of each Platoon, by making the File-leaders face to the Right and Left outwards when they come up to the Parapet, bringing the Men in the Rear to form in the Center of each Rank.

As soon as the Files are return'd to their Places, after Firing, they are to face to their proper Front, prime, load, make ready, and wait with recover'd Arms to fire again in their Turn ; all which must be done without any further Word of Command than what was at first given to begin ; and not to discontinue it, 'till ordered so to do.

ARTICLE VII. *Street-Firing.*

It is so call'd from your being oblig'd to engage in a Street, High-way, Lane, or narrow Passage, where no more than 10, 12, 16, or 20 Files can march in Front ; so that according to the Breadth of the Place, your Platoons must be stronger or weaker,

The Manner of performing it at Exercise, is thus :

The Rear Ranks are to be closed forward to close Order, and the Battalion is to wheel to the Right or Left by Platoons, in the same Manner as they do by Sub-division, only the Officers who are appointed to the Platoons remain with, and march at the Head of them ; whereas, when a Regiment marches by Grand or Sub-division, the Captains march all in the Front and Rear : So that when the Officers are posted to the Platoons and march at the Head of them, it ought to be called Marching by Platoons, in order to distinguish it from the other, which is Marching by Division ; the one being form'd for immediate Action, but the other only for common Marching.

By the Wheeling of the Platoons, they fall in the Rear of one another ; so that no more than one Platoon can fire at a Time.

As soon as the Platoons have wheel'd, they should march in that Position, in order to open their Ranks to two Paces Distance. Besides, the Firing will appear more graceful when it

it is begun while the Regiment is in Motion, than when it stands still : For as that which is performed in Motion, carries a greater Resemblance of real Service than the other, it must therefore, by so lively a Representation of Action, raise the Imagination to a higher Pitch.

When the Ranks are open'd, and the whole Battalion in Motion, the Major should give the Signal for the Firing to begin; on which, the Officer who commands the Front Platoon is to halt his Men, order them to make ready, kneel and lock, then present and fire; and as soon as they have fired, they are to recover their Arms, face from the Center to the Right and Left outwards, march down the Flanks of the other Platoons, and form again in the Rear of the last, and immediately load and shoulder.

As soon as the Word *Fire* is given to the first Platoon the Officer who commands the second Platoon must order his Men to make ready, and to march up with Recover'd Arms to the Ground they first fired on, as soon as the others have got on the Flanks; and when his Men have kneel'd and lock'd, he is to give the Words, *Present, Fire*; and when fired, to recover, face outwards, march along the Flanks, and form in the Rear of the first. The rest of the Platoons are to observe the same Directions in making ready, marching up to the Ground on which they first fired; and when fired, to march and form in the Rear.

The Platoons are to keep up pretty close to one another, and to move or halt as those in the Front do.

When this is to be put in Practice on real Service, the Front of the Platoons must not be equal to the Breadth of the Place you are to engage in; but there must be a small Space of Ground, or Interval, left on your Flanks, that those who have fired may have Room to march back and form in the Rear.

It is in this Manner, when you have not Time to raise a Breast-work, that a Pass, Bridge, Road, or Street, is to be maintain'd against the Enemy, by the Platoons sustaining one another, and firing in their Turn; which may be continued as long as there is Occasion, almost, without Intermission, by one Battalion only.

A R T I C L E VIII. *Running-Fire.*

This Fire is never made use of but upon the gaining of a Battle, the taking of a Town, the Celebration of the King's

Birth-day, or those of the Royal Family, or some other extraordinary Cause of Rejoicing; for which Reason the *French* call it a *Feu de Joye*.

These Firings are always perform'd in the Dusk of the Evening, both in Camp and Garrison. The Ranks are to be closed no nearer than Half Distance, the Front Rank being to stand as well as the Center and Rear; and when they present, they are all to raise their Muzzles pretty high, in order to fire in the Air. The Men of each File are to fire together; that is, each File distinctly by its self; and so run pretty quick from one File to another, quite through the Regiment.

The Manner of performing it in Camp.

As soon as the Sun sets, the Army is to draw out at the Head of their Encampment, or, if the Ground will allow of it, both the Lines may be drawn up in the Front of the first Line of Tents. The Train of Artillery is likewise drawn out on these Occasions, and placed at the Head of the first Line, or upon a rising Ground, if any such lies near them.

The Firing is to begin with the Train, keeping such Time between each Gun that 25 or 30 may be fired in a Minute.

It is a fix'd Rule to fire an odd Gun, as 21, 31, &c.

As soon as the Train have fired the Number of Guns appointed them, the Fire of the Small Arms is to begin on the Right of the first Line, running gradually on from File to File, and from Regiment to Regiment, 'till it comes to the Left of the first Line; then it is to begin on the Left of the second Line, and run on gradually in the same Manner to the Right of that Line, which finishes the first Fire of the whole Army; after which they are all to give three Huzzas then load and shoulder.

As they are to fire three Times on these Occasions, the other two are to be performed in the same Manner, as the first, beginning with the Artillery, from thence with the Right of the first Line, and ending with the Right of the second Line, giving three Huzzas after each Fire is quite ended.

To prevent the Fire running too quick, the Regiments in the first Line should not make ready 'till that on their Right has begun to fire; and those in the second Line not to make ready 'till the Regiment on their Left begins to fire; those in the first Line being to take it from the Right, and the second Line from the Left: For should they all make ready together,

together, the Center or Left would be apt to fire as soon as it began on the Right; but their not making ready 'till the Regiment, from whom they are to take it, begins to fire, will prevent their firing too soon, which Fault is usually committed in these Firings; but very seldom that of being too slow.

The Manner of performing it in Garrison.

The Garrison is to be drawn up on the Ramparts, extending themselves quite round the Town, if their Numbers will allow of it, and to face the Parapet, over which they are to fire.

The Artillery, as in Camp, is to fire first; then the Small Arms, beginning on the Right of the eldest Regiment, and to run gradually round to the Left. After the Fire ceases, the whole Garrison is to give three Huzzas, then load and shoulder. The other two Fires are to be performed in the same Manner; as also the above Directions about the Time of making ready will serve likewise in Garrison.

Having gone through the different Firings, as proposed, I shall give some Directions, in the following Chapter, how Foot are to proceed when attack'd by Horse, both in Battalion and in the Square; but that I may keep within due Bounds, I shall confine myself to the Management of a single Battalion.





C H A P. VII.

Containing Directions how a Battalion of Foot is to defend itself when attack'd by Horse.

A R T I C L E I.



S Foot are sometimes interlin'd with Horse, or detach'd from the main Body to secure some important Post, by which they are exposed to the Attacks of Horse, it will be proper to lay down some general Rule how a Battalion is to proceed on such an Occasion; both as to the Management of their Fire in Battalion, when only attack'd in Front; and in what Manner they are to throw themselves into a Square, when their Flanks and Rear lie open and exposed, and how they are to fire and march when form'd in the Square.

When a Regiment is to march thro' a Country, or posted at a Place, where there is a Possibility of their being attack'd by Horse, they should be prepared to defend themselves against them, by dividing their Platoons in such a Manner, that they may have a constant Succession of Fire, when only attack'd in Front; or be ready to form the Square when necessary, without any new telling off.

If the Battalion is strong enough to admit of it, I would recommend Plan I. in the foregoing Chapter, consisting of 16 Platoons besides Granadiers, which composes three Firings of 5 Platoons each, and a Reserve of the Granadiers and Colour Platoon: And if you would add a further Strength to the Reserve, the Front Rank of the other Firings may be kept to fire with it: But the chief Point is, that the Square is safer, easier, and quicker form'd from this Plan, than any other now in Use, as will appear by the said Plan, when I come to treat on the forming of the Square. But lest the Battalion should not be strong enough to admit of 16 Platoons, I have annex'd another of 12 Platoons besides the Granadiers, from which the Square may be form'd in the same Manner as the first. It will likewise consist of three Firings, of
4 Platoons

4 Platoons each, besides the Granadiers ; in which Case, it will be very proper to keep the whole Front Rank and the Granadiers for the Reserve.

If Foot could be brought to know their own Strength, the Danger which they apprehend from Horse would soon vanish ; since the Fire of one Platoon, given in due Time, is sufficient to break any Squadron : Therefore, if a Battalion of Foot would manage their Fire to the best Advantage, and not throw it away at too great a Distance, which they are apt to do, from their appearing nearer than they really are, by their being so much above the Foot, they might baffle a considerable Body of Horse, and make them desist in a very short Time from any further Attempts upon them.

But as the Horse will have Recourse to Stratagem to draw away your Fire, by making feint Attacks, with small Parties advanced before the Body, in hopes to make you spend your Fire on them ; the Commanding Officer, however, may, without any Hazard, easily disappoint their Designs in the following Manner.

Let us suppose a Battalion drawn up where the Horse can only attack them in Front, the Flanks and Rear being secured by Morasses, Rivers, Hedges, or Ditches. In such a Situation, one Battalion of well-disciplin'd Foot may despise the Attacks of a whole Line of Horse, while they continue their Attacks on Horse-back, and oblige them to retire with considerable Loss.

We will suppose then a Battalion posted as above, and a Body of Horse, having no other Way to pass, than through that which is occupied by the Foot, obliged to attack them in that Situation.

In this Case, the Officer who commands the Cavalry will, no doubt, form them into several Lines, in order to sustain one another, not doubting but the first and second Lines will be forced to give Way by the Fire of the Foot ; and in all Probability they may be ordered to advance with no other View than to receive the Fire, and then retire thro' the Intervals of the Squadrons, which are marching to sustain them ; imagining that two or three feint Attacks of this Kind will be sufficient to draw away all their Fire, and give the rest an Opportunity to fall upon them before they can have Time to load again : But if the Fire of a Battalion is managed according to the Directions of my first Plan, which is divided into three distinct Firings, besides a Reserve, they can never be without one or more Fires, for every Attack they can make ;

make : For if the Lines of Horse don't leave a considerable Distance between each, they will run a great Hazard of being broke, and thrown into Confusion by their own Troops, who are order'd, or oblig'd, to retire ; which the three first Attacks, with any tolerable Conduct in the Officer who commands the Battalion, will certainly be oblig'd to ; and if they leave proper Intervals between the Lines of Horse, it will give the Foot Time, notwithstanding the quick Motions of the Cavalry, to load, or at least very near it, before they will have an Occasion to make use of a second Fire. But let them attack after one another, as quick as the Nature of the Thing will admit of, the Platoons of the first Firing will be loaded before they can possibly have an Occasion to make use of those of the third Firing ; so that the Battalion can never be without two Firings and the Reserve ; for which Reason I don't think there is an Occasion to reserve the whole Front Rank, which Addition of Fire to each Platoon is of great Consequence, and, in my Opinion, of infinite more Service, then it can be of when reserved to the last ; particularly so, since there is a great Probability that you won't be reduced to the last Fire ; and if you are not reduced to the last Fire, the Front Rank is render'd useles by reserving it, the Fire of which might do considerable Execution in firing along with their Platoons. However, the commanding Officer will see by the Disposition of the Enemy, whether it is necessary to reserve the Front Rank or not. His own Reason must direct him in that Affair, the Rules laid down here being rather general than positive ; the Variety of Circumstances which happen in Action rendering it impossible to determine absolutely on this Head.

I shall now return to my former Proposition, that of disappointing their Designs, in drawing away your Fire by feint Attacks.

An Officer, who has had any Experience, may discover the Designs of the Enemy by the Disposition of their Troops ; particularly in the Case we now suppose. If you find them form'd into several Lines, you may conclude it is to make several Attacks immediately after one another, and that the first and second are only designed as Feints to draw away your Fire ; for which Reason it would be proper to order three or four small Detachments, of four or five Files each, taken from different Parts of the Battalion, to advance ten or twelve Paces in the Front, and when the Horse comes within thirty or forty Paces of them to fire, and then retire immediately into
their

their Places. If this was only designed as a Feint, they will retire at that Fire ; but if it was not a Feint, tho' it may not be sufficient to break them entirely, yet it may do them considerable Damage, and put them into some Disorder, particularly if any of their Officers should be killed or wounded. If those Squadrons should advance after that Fire, they must be received by the Platoons of the first Firing, which, I am convinced, will send them back faster than they came on, unless their Horses are ungovernable, and by that Means bring some of them forward contrary to their Inclinations.

The Detachments, or small Platoons, so advanced, should be taken out of the Platoons of the third Firing or Reserve, by which they will have Time to load, after they return, before there will be an Occasion to make Use of that Firing.

If the Squadrons of the first Line retire at the Fire of the advanced Platoons, in order to make room for the second Line to advance, you may serve them in the same Manner, by advancing the same Number of small Platoons out of the same Firing, there being no Fear from the Want of Time, since the second Line can't charge till the first have got clear of their Front. Besides, if the second Line is too near the first, they will be in great Danger of being broke by them ; to avoid which, they will leave proper Intervals between the Lines, as well as between the Squadrons ; so that you can't fail of Time to put it in Execution, provided proper Care was taken beforehand to make the Disposition proposed.

By this Disposition, every Attack will receive two Fires, after which, I believe, there is no great Danger of their advancing ; but if they should, the Platoons of the second Firing are ready to be made use of.

Some may object against the advancing of the little Parties as not being sufficient to break or repulse the Squadrons, and therefore give them an Opportunity to charge those Parties before they can join the Battalion ; but as they are only small Platoons, and advance but a very little Way from the Front, they can fall into their Places after they have fired, in a Moment, and consequently avoid the Danger with a great deal of Ease.

Those Parties should not advance before the Battalion, 'till the Cavalry are in full March to attack you ; lest they should discover your Design, and order their Attacks accordingly.

When

When the advanced Parties make Ready, the Platoons of the first Firing should do the same; but great Care must be taken that they don't Fire till the advanced Platoons are Return'd, and even not then till the Horse are within 25 or 30 Paces: For on the Keeping of your Fire depends your Safety. If on Presenting the Horse should make a full Halt, or Wheel off, as they frequently do, the Men must be caution'd not to Fire, but immediately Recover their Arms without Firing, lest they should do that only by way of Feint to draw away your Fire at some Distance, and then make a Real Attack, hoping to find you unprovided to receive them.

When Foot are once brought to that Perfection of Discipline, as to recover their Arms, after they are Presented, without Firing, in the Face of the Enemy, the Horse will never pretend to attack them a second Time, but keep their due Distance; but if they throw away their Fire too soon, they will take the Advantage of it, and be upon them in an Instant; and if they can once penetrate but with one Squadron, it will throw a Battalion of six hundred Men into Confusion; after which, their Conquest will be easy.

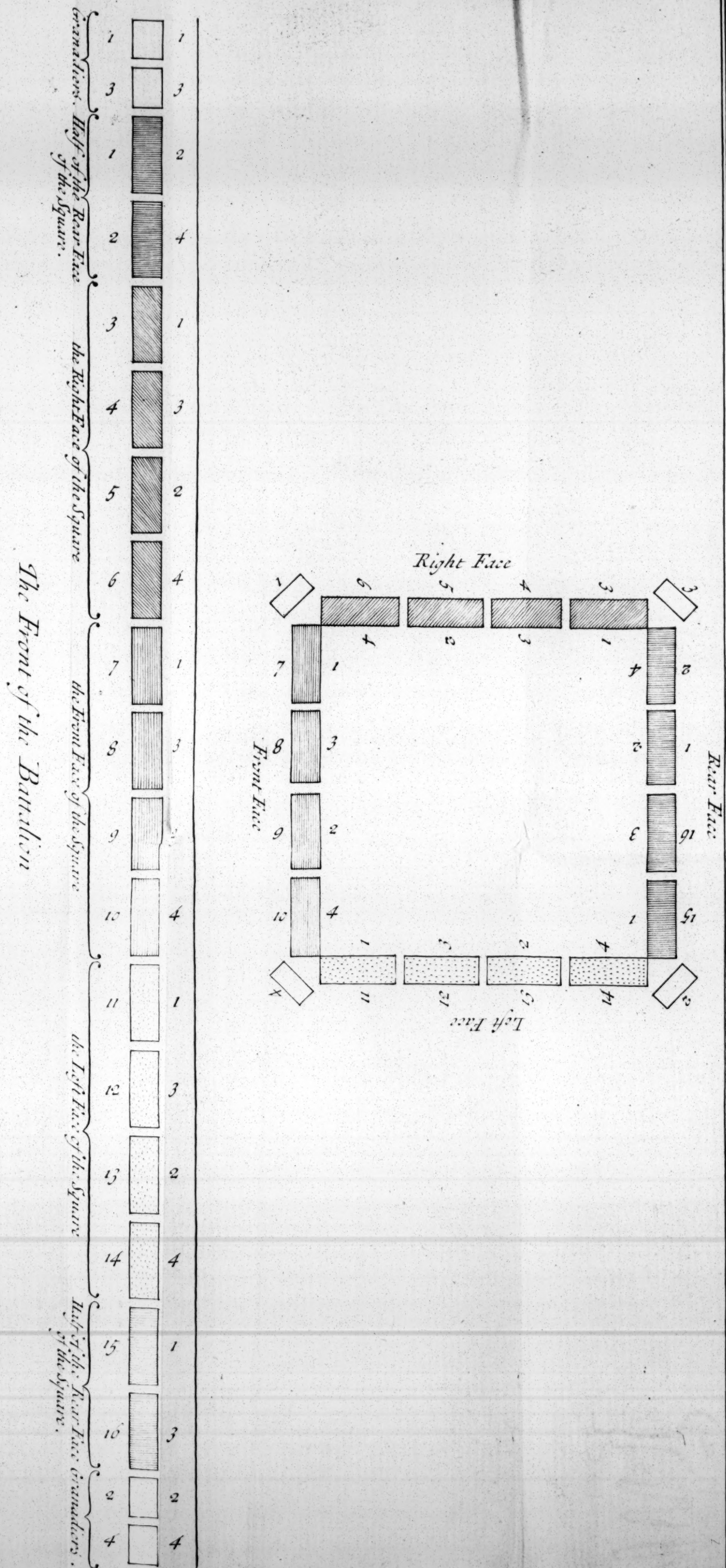
As the Situation of the Battalion, as above-mentioned, was extremely advantageous by having their Flanks secured; let us now suppose one less so, by having one Flank exposed, besides the Front.

We will suppose then, that one of your Flanks, as well as your Front, lies open to the Enemy; and that the Horse have made a Disposition to attack you in both. The only Expedient against it is, the forming of two Fronts, making the Figure of an L, which is immediately done by Wheeling back half of the Battalion, or a sufficient Number of Platoons, a Quarter of the Circle.

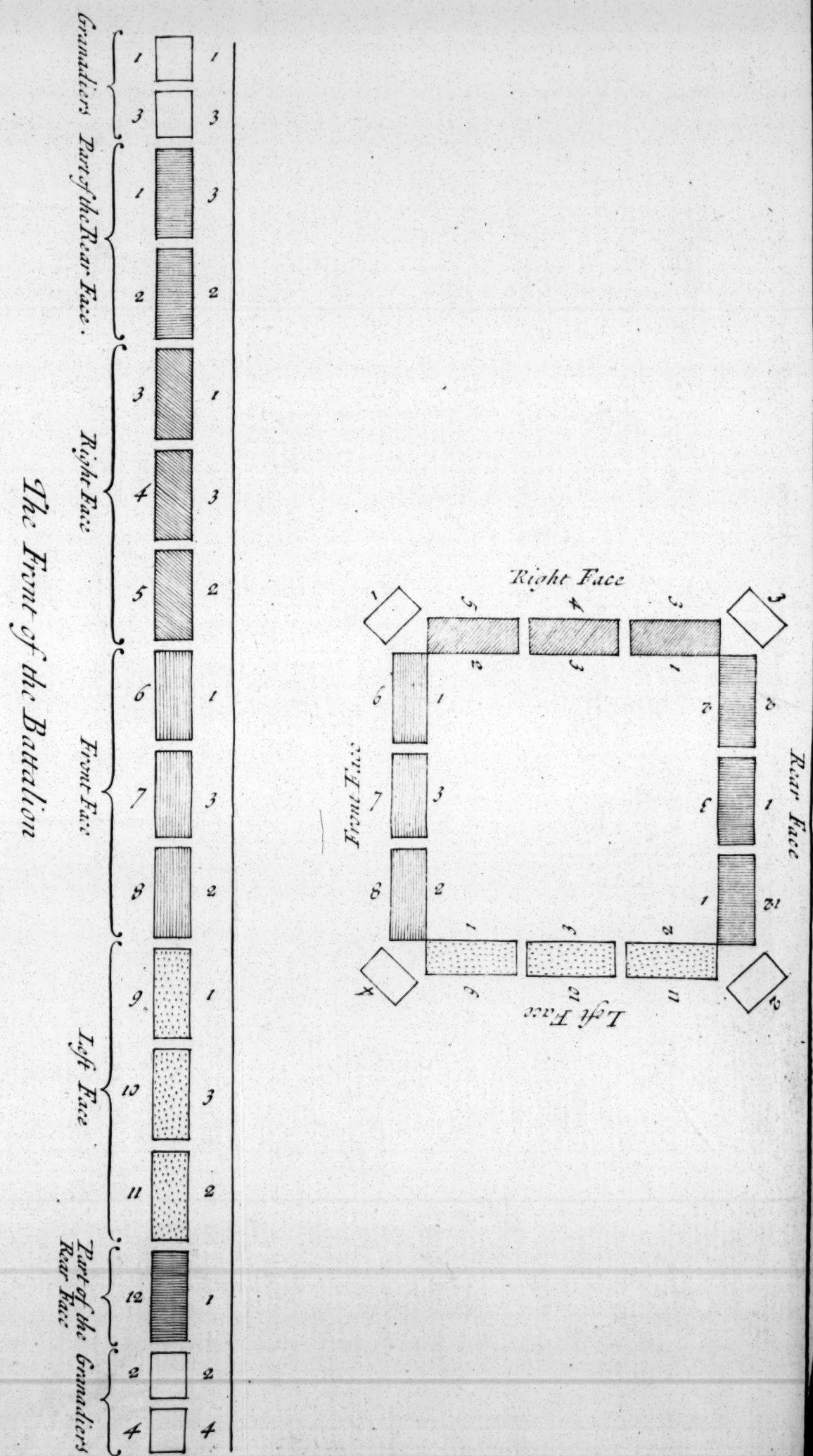
If you are to maintain that Post, this Disposition is better than an entire Square, by having double the Fire in each of these Faces to those in the Square.

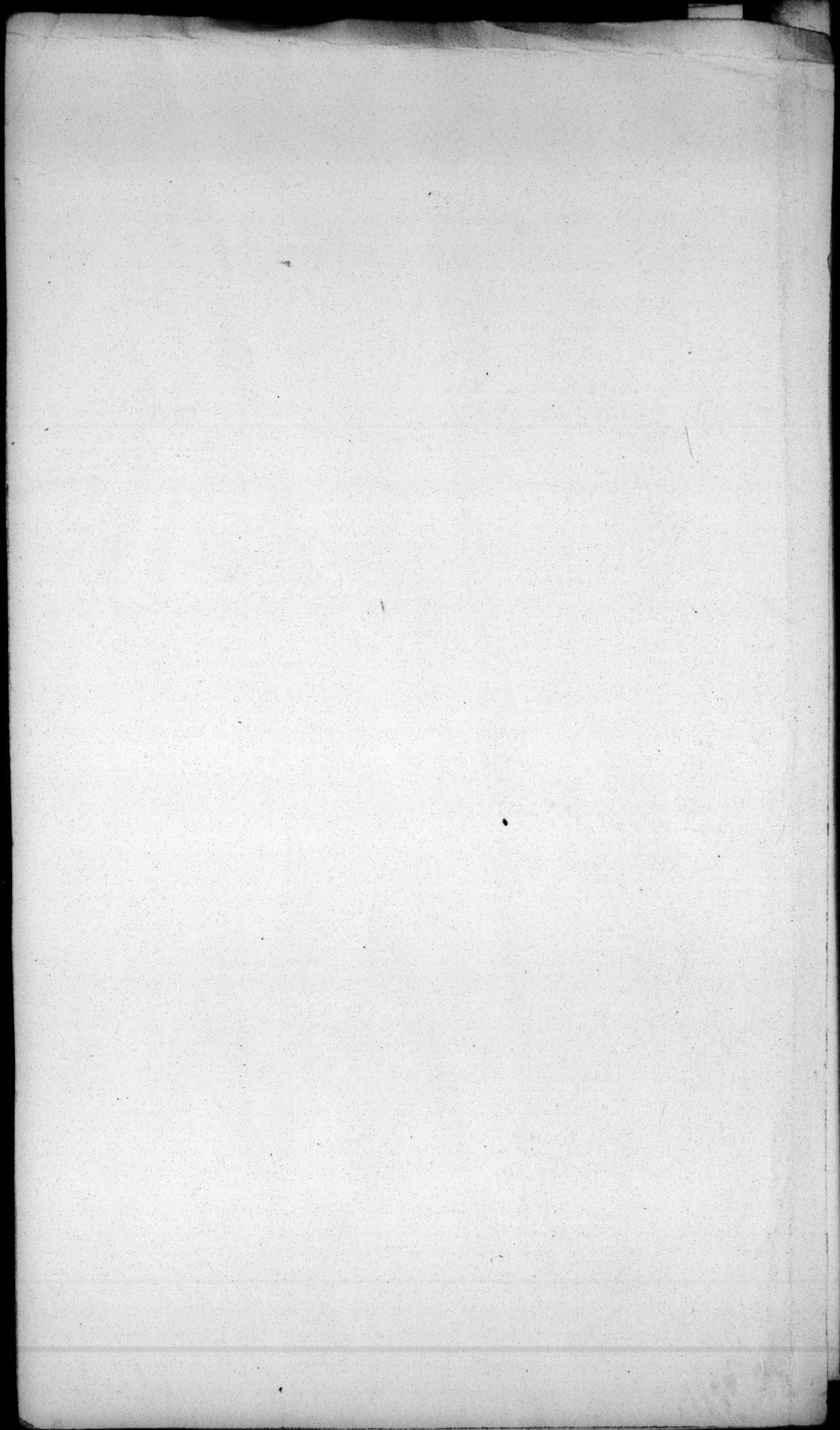
The Firing by Platoons may be preserved in this Figure as well as in Battalion, by dividing the Platoons of each Face into two Firings, and reserving the whole Front Rank and the Granadiers for the third and last. If you think that the Angle, where the two Faces join, is exposed, a small Platoon of Granadiers may be form'd on it; and that the Platoons may have nothing to obstruct their Firing, it would be proper to send the Ensigns with the Colours into the Rear.

Plan 1st of Forming the Square after the Dutch way.



Plan 2^d of Forming the Square, according to the Dutch manner





The Fire of each Face must be managed according as they are attacked ; and no more Platoons must be fired than what are absolutely necessary to repulse them, preserving the rest with the utmost Care.

I own that I never heard of a single Battalion being form'd into this Figure upon Action ; and therefore I shall not insist much on it ; but as the Flank of an Army is often secured in this Manner, by wheeling back of Battalions and Squadrons, I thought it might fall out the same Way with a Battalion.

ARTICLE II.

I shall now proceed to shew how the Square is to be formed from the said Plans, without altering the former Disposition of Officers, or any new Telling off ; and that it may be comprehended with the more Ease, I have marked the Platoons, which form each Face, different from one another. See the annexed Plans.

The Figures in the Front, are only the Platoons number'd, from one to sixteen ; by which you will see how they fall into the several Faces of the Square.

The Figures in the Rear, are to shew what Firing the Platoons belong to when form'd in the Square.

The Platoons number'd (1.) on the Inside, being on the Right of each Face, when faced Square, which is outward, belong to the first Firing.

Those number'd (2.) on the Inside, belong to the second Firing.

Those number'd (3.) on the Inside, belong to the third Firing.

Those number'd (4.) belong to the fourth Firing.

The Platoons of Granadiers are likewise sub-divided for their Forming on the several Angles, their Numbers shewing the Angles on which they are to form.

I believe I need not give a further Explanation of the Plan, than what is already mention'd, for its being fully comprehended ; so that I may proceed to give the proper Directions for the forming the Battalion into the Square, and reducing the Square into Battalion.

As the Officers are not to be chang'd (but to remain in the Posts assigned them, both in the Front and Rear, for the firing in Battalion) or any new Division of the Platoons, the Square may be form'd in a very short Space of Time ;
for

for which Reason the commanding Officer may defer the doing of it, 'till he sees the Disposition actually made to attack the Battalion in every Part.

As soon as he perceives this, he must avoid the Danger, by forming the Battalion into a Hollow Square; or, according to the *French Way* of calling it, *un Battalion Quarre*, a square Battalion,

Which is perform'd by three Words of Command.

I. *Form the Hollow Square.*

II. *March.*

III. *Face Square.*

In the following Pages I shall explain what they are to perform at each.

At the first Word of Command, *Form the hollow Square*, or, in my Opinion, more properly speaking, *Form the Square*, the two Platoons of Granadiers, Number 3 and 2, and the six Platoons of the Battalion on the Right, Number 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6, and six Platoons on the Left, Number 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, and 16, Face all to the Right about on their left Heels, the Officers in the Front and Rear of those Platoons doing the same; as also the Serjeants who are posted in the Rear of those Platoons.

The two outward Platoons of Granadiers, Number 1, and 4, with their Officers, as also the two Divisions of Drummers on the Flanks, face to the Right and Left inwards.

The four Platoons in the Center, Number 7, 8, 9, and 10, keep their proper Front.

At the second Word of Command, *March*, the Platoons which faced to the Right-about, wheel inwards, and as soon as the Platoons which form the Right-face, N^o 3, 4, 5, and 6, and those which compose the Left-face, N^o 11, 12, 13, and 14, have wheel'd a Quarter of the Circle, they are to stand; but the two Platoons on the Right of the Battalion, N^o 1, and 2, and the two on the Left, N^o 15, and 16, being to compose the Rear-face, are to continue wheeling inwards another Quarter of the Circle, by which the Right and Left Platoons of the Battalion, N^o 1, and 16, join in the Center of the Rear-face.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, N^o 3, and 2, which faced to the Right-about, wheel at the same Time with the Platoons of the Battalion; but instead of wheeling on the Extremity

tremity of the Flanks, they may incline inwards 'till the Granadiers in the Right, Num. 3. come opposite to the Interval between the Platoons, Num. 2, and 3, and the Granadiers on the Left, Num. 2, 'till they come opposite to the Interval between the Platoons, Num. 14 and 15, and then to Wheel and March directly in the Rear of those Platoons, which, when the Square is form'd, fall into the Flanks, (which for Distinction we shall call the Rear Flanks, as the others the Front) so that when they all stand, those Platoons of Granadiers will be on the Rear Angles which they are to Cover.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, which faced to the Right and Left Inwards, are, at the same time, to march in a direct Line to the Right and Left Flanks of the four Center Platoons, Num. 7, 8, 9, and 10, which stood; and when they come to the Flanks of those Platoons, they are to stand, being to form on the Front Angles.

The Numbers here referred to, are those marked in the Front of the Battalion.

After the foregoing Word of Command is executed, the Regiment will appear in this Position.

The four Center Platoons, which compose the Front Face of the Square, face outward to their proper Front.

The twelve Platoons, which compose the three other Faces of the Square, face inward, that is, into the Square.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, which are to form on the Rear Angles, face the Platoons on whose Angles they are to Form.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, which are to form on the Front Angles, face the Flanks of the Front Face looking along the Ranks.

The Officers and Serjeants Face as the Platoons do, on which they are posted.

At the third Word of Command, *Face Square*, they all Face outward; the Right, Left and Rear Faces of the Square, and the two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, going to the Left-about on their Left Heels. The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, Face to their proper Front; after which the four Platoons of Granadiers Wheel back immediately and form on the Angles, as described in the Plan.

As soon as the Men have Faced Square, the Colonel, Major, Ensigns with the Colours, Adjutant and Drummers march into the Square; and the Drummers are to be divided

into four Divisions, placing one in the Rear of each Face, which the Drum-Major is to perform.

The Field-Officers can have no fixed Post assigned them in the Square; but are to have a watchful Eye over the Whole, and to move about from Place to Place to give the necessary Directions to the several Parts as Occasion may require.

The Ensigns with the Colours are to post themselves in the Center of the Square.

The Officers who Command the Platoons remain in the Front of them without the Square; and those who were posted in the Rear remain within the Square, in the Rear of the several Platoons; and when any of the Officers in the Front are killed or wounded, the Officers in the Rear of those Platoons are to move out immediately, and take the Command.

It is evident from hence, that the Square may be form'd in this manner in less than a Minute, if press'd in time; there being no Alteration requir'd in the Disposition of Officers from that of the Battalion drawn up for Action; or any new telling off the Platoons. Besides, another Advantage in this Manner of Forming the Square, is, that you preserve a Front of the Four Center Platoons without moving, which will secure you 'till the Square is form'd; a Circumstance, in my Opinion, of no small Consideration.

As Victory, even in a superiour Army is uncertain, from the Variety of Circumstances incident in Action; And when we imagine Fortune hovering over us with a Crown of Laurel, she often eludes our Hopes, and bestows it on the adverse Party; we must not therefore depend on Her too much, but act with Caution, and be prepared against all Events, before we enter upon Action. And as the making a handsome Retreat is the most difficult part of the Service, and, next to the gaining of a Battle, the most commendable; it is therefore incumbent on the Commanding Officer of every Regiment, to have the same Regard towards the Preservation of his Men, as the General has to the Whole. For which Reason, the Platoons of every Battalion should be told off, in such a manner, and the Officers appointed to them, that when the Battalion is ordered, or forced to retire, it may be perform'd without any further Directions than the Words of Command, for the marching off in Battalion, by Grand or Subdivisions, or in the Square; by which different Ways the Battalion should be told off, and the Officer and Soldiers thoroughly acquainted with them before they engage

engage, that, when order'd, they may be in no Confusion in the Performance.

How the Square is to be Reduced.

The Square may be reduced into Battalion with as much ease, and in as short a space of Time, as it was form'd in; for the performing of which there are only three Words of Command.

I. *From the Square, form the Battalion.* II. *March.*
III. *Halt.*

At the first Word of Command, *From the Square, form the Battalion*, the two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, covering the Front Angles, wheel towards the Front 'till they dress in a Line with the Front Face, and then face to the Right and Left outward, and stand.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, covering the Rear Angles, wheel 'till they come in a Line with the Right and Left Faces of the Square, and then stand.

At the second Word of Command, *March*, the Platoons of the Rear-face wheel from the Center to the Right and Left outwards, thus: Num. 1, and 2, wheel to the Left, and Num. 15, and 16, to the Right; and as soon as they come in a Line with the Right and Left Faces, those Faces are to wheel along with them towards the Front.

The Platoons of Granadiers of the Rear Angles are to move at the same time; but in marching they are to incline outwards 'till they come to the Extremity of the Flanks of the Platoons, Num. 1, and 16, and then to wheel up with them on their Flanks.

The two Platoons of Granadiers of the Front Angles, who had wheel'd up and faced outward, are to march to the Right and Left outward in a direct Line from the Flanks of the Front Face, and when they have march'd far enough for the Platoons of the Battalion, and the Granadiers (who were wheeling up) to form between them and the Front Face, they are to stand.

The Colonel, Major, Ensigns with the Colours and Adjutant are to march at the same time into the Front; and the Drummers to repair to their former Posts.

As soon as the Platoons, which are wheeling up, come in a Line with the Front Face, the Major is to proceed to the third Word of Command.

Halt. At this the Platoons which compos'd the Right, Left and Rear Faces, and the Granadiers of the Rear Angles, Stand ; and the Granadiers of the Front Angles, who face from the Flanks, face to their proper Front ; by which the Square is reduced, and the Battalion form'd as before, without moving the Officers from their Platoons, either in the Front or Rear, in the forming or reducing the Square.

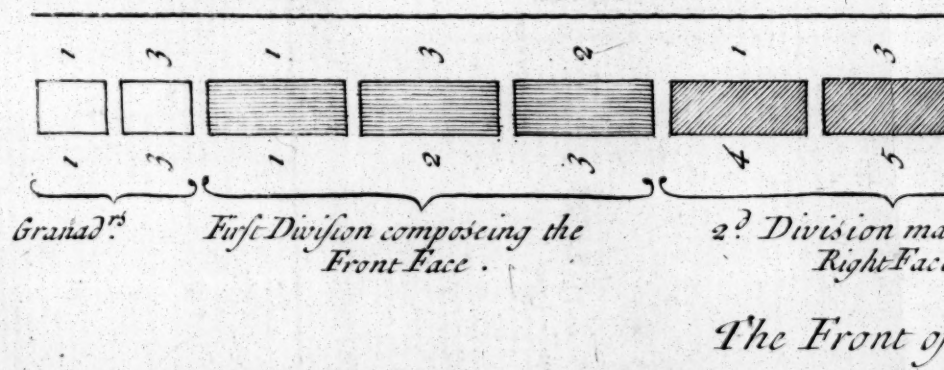
The first Plan being calculated for a Regiment consisting of 600 Men, lest it should be reduced to about 500, I have annex'd a second Plan accordingly told off into 12 Platoons besides Granadiers ; the forming of which into a Square, and the Reducing it again into Battalion, is to be perform'd in the same manner as the first ; with this Difference only, that as each Face is compos'd but of three Platoons, there must be two Platoons taken from one Flank, and one Platoon from the other to form the Rear Face ; which Difference is so small, that I believe it will not be objected against in Service, whatever it may in Exercise.

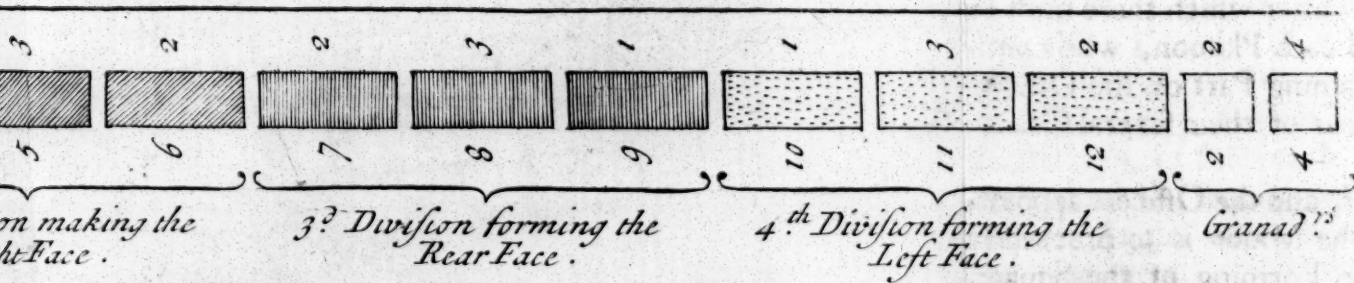
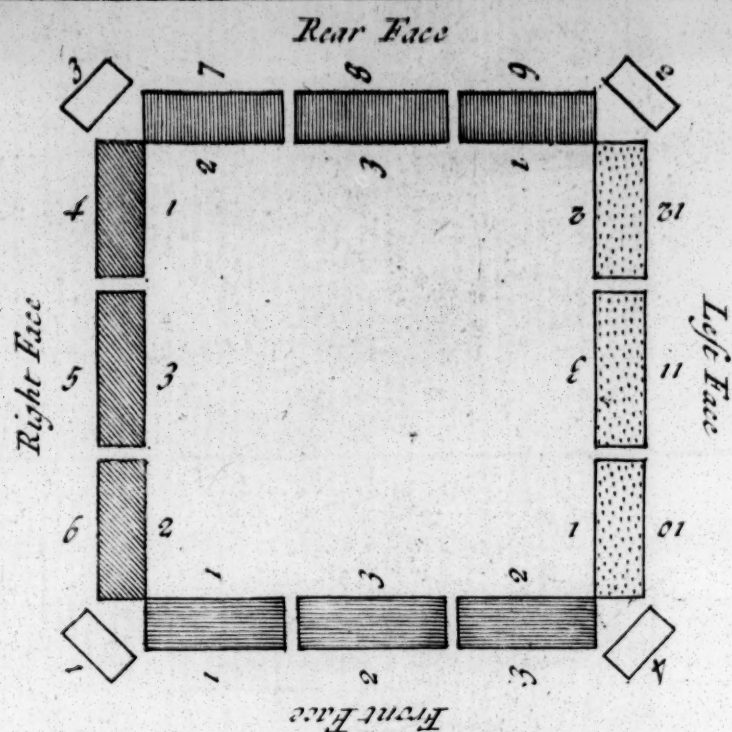
When the Strength of the Battalion will allow of it, the telling off the Platoons according to the first Plan is what I would recommend, as being the most perfect both for the Firings in Battalion and in the Square, and for the Regularity and Ease in forming the Square. If the Regiment consists of 600 Men, they may be told off into 18 Platoons, including the 2 Platoons of Granadiers, two Platoons of which will consist of 12 Files each, and the other 16 Platoons of 11 Files each ; so that by making of the two Platoons of Granadiers, 12 Files each, they will have, when they are subdivided for the forming of the Square, a Platoon of 6 Files for each Angle, which is as few as they ought to have for the covering them.

But when a Battalion consists of 500 Men, the Model of the second Plan may be followed, most of the Platoons of which will consist of 12 Files ; they may be divided into three Firings, containing 4 Platoons in each, and the Granadiers kept for the Reserve, which should be carefully preserv'd if your Flanks are the least expos'd to the Enemy's Attacks : And if you are under any Apprehension of the Enemy's Horse, it would be very proper to strengthen your Reserve, by adding the whole Front Rank of the Battalion to it, and only fire the two Rear Ranks of the three Firings by Platoons,

The Manner of Forming the Square, as above describ'd, is the *Dutch Way* of performing it ; the bare mentioning of which,

Plan 3.^d of Forming the Square by Grand Divisions.





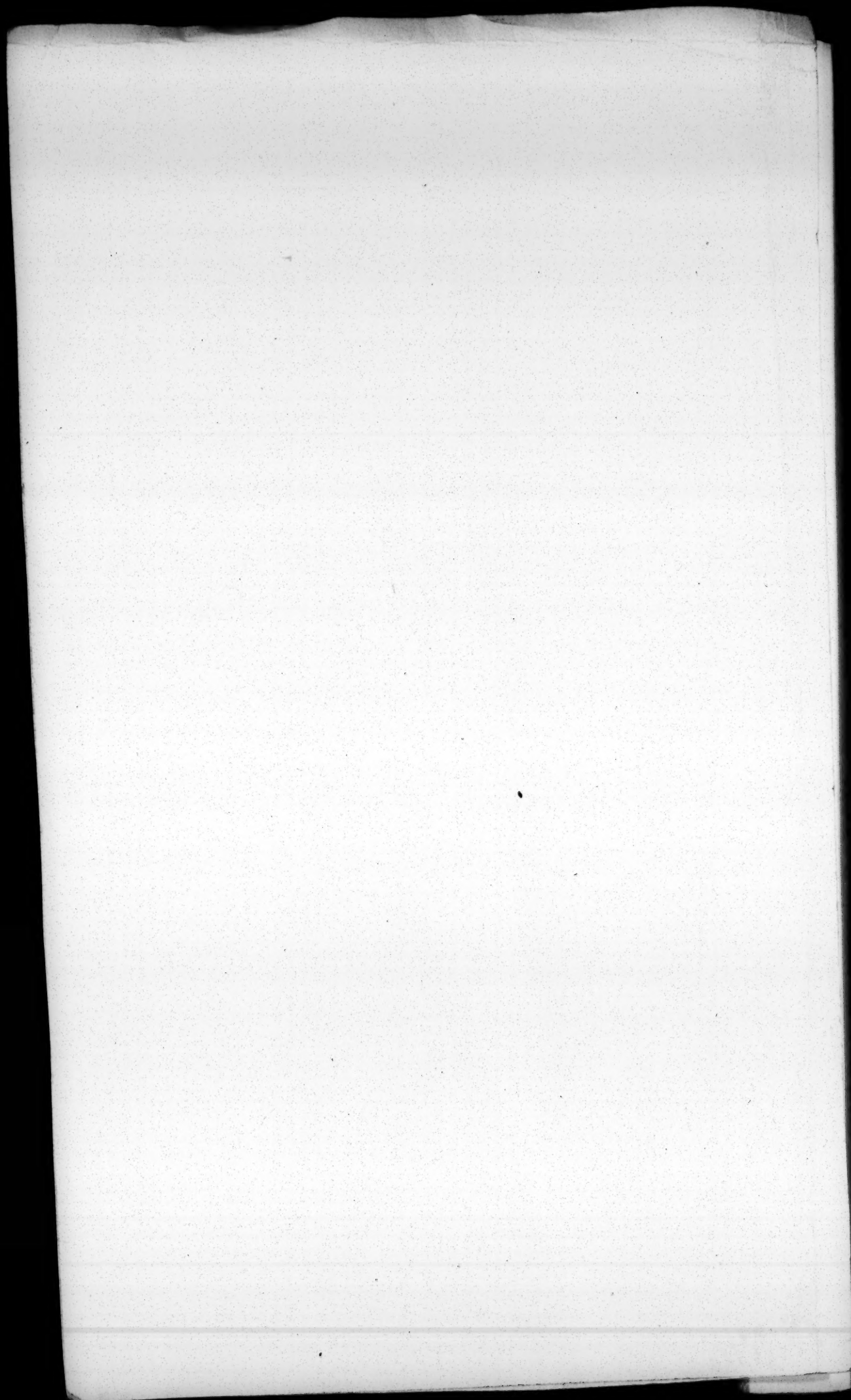
on making the
the Face.

3^d Division forming the
Rear Face.

4th Division forming the
Left Face.

Grand 1st

ent of the Battalion



which, will recommend it infinitely more than all I am capable of saying of it. But as other People may not be prepossess'd in favour of it so much as I am, I shall therefore set down another Way of forming the Square (and which is generally practis'd by the *British* foot) by Divisions; with some Remarks why I prefer the *Dutch* Way to this; after which I shall give Directions for the Firing and Marching in the Square.

A R T I C L E III.

Manner of Forming the Square by 4 Grand Divisions.

When the Square is to be form'd by 4 Grand-Divisions without having gone thro' any Part of the Platoon Firing, they are to proceed in the following Manner.

The Rear Half Files of the Battalion must be doubled to the Left; after that the Granadiers must be divided on the Right and Left, and then subdivided for the Angles.

The Battalion must be divided into four Grand Divisions, and each Grand-Division sub-divided into three Platoons each. See the annex'd Plan, where the said is told off, as here describ'd.

The Captains, Subalterns and Serjeants are to be divided equally on the 4 Grand-Divisions; after which there must be an Officer appointed to command each Platoon, who continues in the Front; but the remaining Part of the Officers are to fall immediately into the Rear of their several Grand-Divisions.

When the Divisions are told off, and the Officers appointed to them, as above directed, the Major is to proceed to the Words of Command for the Forming of the Square, which are the same as in the other Way of doing it.

I. *Form the Square.*

At this Word of Command, the first Grand-Division and two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, face to the Right and Left inwards, thus: the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 1, and the first Grand-Division face to the Left, and the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 4, faces to the Right.

The other three Grand-Divisions, and the two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, face, at the same time, to the Right-about.

The Officers and Serjeants face as the several Divisions do on which they are posted.

The Drummers on the Flanks fall in the Rear of the first and fourth Grand-Divisions, and then face as they do; but the Center-Division of Drummers falls in between the Ensigns with the Colours and the Front Rank of the seventh Platoon of the Battalion, being one of those which compose the Rear Face. After this the Major proceeds.

II. *March.*

After the Word of Command, the Whole are to march and form the Square, thus.

The second and fourth Grand-Divisions wheel inward a Quarter of the Circle, and form the Right and Left Faces of the Square.

The third Grand-Division, with the Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, Ensigns with the Colours, and the third Division of Drummers, march in a strait Line to the Rear, till they come to the extrem Flanks of the Right and Left Faces, and then stand, which third Grand-Division forms the Rear Face of the Square.

The first Grand-Division marches to the Left, 'till they come into the Ground where the third Grand-Division stood, and then stand, being to form the Front Face of the Square.

The Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 2, wheels with the Left Face, and stands when they do, being to cover that Angle.

The Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 3. marches to the Right Flank of the Right Face, and stands, being to cover that Angle.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1. and 4, being faced inwards, march in a direct Line to the Flanks of the Front Face, and then stand, being to cover the Front Angles.

When the several Grand-Divisions and Platoons of Granadiers have marched as above directed, they will appear in the following Position.

The first Grand-Division, composing the Front Face of the Square, stand faced to the Left.

The Third Grand-Division, forming the Rear Face, face to the Rear.

The second and fourth Grand-Divisions, which form the Right and Left Faces of the Square, face into the Square.

The

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, being to cover the Front Angles, face to the Right and Left inwards.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, being to cover the Rear Angles, face as the Right and Left Faces do.

The Officers and Serjeants face as their respective Divisions do.

The Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, Ensigns with the Colours and Drummers, having march'd as before directed, fall into the Square.

As soon as they have come to their Ground and stand, the Major proceeds to the third and last Word of Command.

III, *Face Square.*

At this Word of Command, the whole face outward, thus.

The Front Face going to the Right, and the Right and Left Faces to the Left-about, the two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, face to their proper Front, and the two Platoons, Num. 2, and 3, face to the Left-about, immediately after which the four Platoons of Granadiers wheel back and cover their several Angles.

The Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers face as their Divisions do, and the Drum-Major is to divide the Drummers equally in the Rear of each Face.

The Officers, who were posted in the Rear of the third Grand Division, are to move immediately into the Square; and the Officers, who were appointed to command the Platoons of that Division, are to move out, the Rear Rank of that Face becoming then the Front

As soon as they have faced Square, the Major and Adjutant march into the Square, no Officer remaining without, but those who command the Platoons.

The Firing in this are the same as that of the second Plan, they being calculated for the same Number of Men; but if the Battalion consists of six hundred Men, the Grand-Divisions may be divided into four Platoons each, as the first Plan is, and yet keep to the forming the Square by Grand-Division.

I shall now shew how it is to be reduced into Battalion.

I. From the Square, form the Battalion.

At this Word of Command, the whole being Faced Square, the Front Face, or first Grand-Division, faces to the Right; the Rear Face, or third Grand-Division, faces to the Left about; the two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, covering the Front-Angles, wheel towards their proper Front, and when they come in a Line with the Front Face they are to face to the Right and Left outward; the two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, covering the Rear-Angles, wheel towards their proper Front, 'till they come in a Line with the Right and Left Faces, or second and fourth Grand-Divisions, and then stand. The Officers face with their Divisions.

II. March,

At this the Whole march and form the Battalion, thus:

The Front Face and the first Platoon of Granadiers march in a direct Line to the Right, and as soon as they have got to the Right of the Right Face, they are to stand; only the first Platoon of Granadiers is to march a little further, that the third Platoon of Granadiers may have room to form between them and the Right of the first Grand-Division.

The Right and Left Faces wheel towards their proper Front a Quarter of the Circle, and then stand; the second Platoon of Granadiers wheeling up on the Flank of the Left Face, or fourth Grand-Division.

The third Platoon of Granadiers marches to the Right, and forms between the first Platoon of Granadiers and the Right of the Battalion.

The fourth Platoon of Granadiers marches in a straight Line to the Left, and when they have left room enough for the Left Face and second Platoon of Granadiers to form in, they are to stand.

The Rear Face, or third Grand-Division, with the Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Ensigns with the Colours, march straight forward to the Front, and when they come between the second and fourth Grand-Divisions and Dress in a Line with them, they are to stand.

As soon as they have all got into their proper Posts, as before, the Major proceeds.

III. Halt.

III. *Halt.*

At this Word of Command, they all face to their proper Front, thus. The first Platoon of Granadiers and the first Grand-Division face to the Left, and the fourth Platoon of Granadiers to the Right; after which the Officers in the Rear may be order'd into the Front, and the Drummers to their former Posts; which compleats the Reduction of the Square into Battalion.

The only thing that is irregular in the Forming of the Square in this manner, is in the third Grand-Division, by the Rear Rank becoming the Front, and the Front Rank the Rear, when the Square is form'd, and the Officers in the Front and Rear changing of their Posts; but this Piece of Irregularity is of no great Consequence upon Service, since the Men in the Rear Rank may be as good as those in the Front, and the Officers may change in a Moment.

But the greatest Fault consists in there being no Front preserv'd while the Square is forming, the Whole being in Motion at the same time, which may be of dangerous Consequence if the Enemy's Horse should be near.

Whereas the *Dutch* Manner of forming the Square, as explained in the second Article, has not the Irregularity above-mention'd, nor the Danger, while it is forming, for Want of a Front to the Enemy. Besides it may be done quicker, and with as much ease, by practising of it at Exercise, as that by Grand-Divisions: However, those who don't approve of the *Dutch* Way, (which I imagine will be but very few) may follow the other; but before they determine absolutely, it will be but fair to try both.

I shall give Directions in the following Article, how they are to Fire and March in the Square at Exercise, since the doing of it upon Action must depend on the Manner you are attack'd, in which the Commanding Officer must be directed by his own Judgment and Experience.

ARTICLE IV.

Directions for Marching and Firing in the Square.

The Square being form'd, and the Platoons of each Face divided into their proper Firings, as describ'd by the different Plans

Plans in the foregoing Article, they may proceed to the Firings.

I shall begin with Directions for that of the first Plan, containing four Firings, which is one more than they are generally told off in, either in Battalion or in the Square, which renders it in my Opinion, the more perfect, as being of greater Service than when they are divided into three.

For when they are told off into three Firings, whether in Battalion, or in the Square, the entire Front-rank is commonly kept for the Reserve, and the two Rear-ranks only fired by Platoons; so that in Reality there are four Firings, without being call'd so: Tho', I humbly conceive, the Effect won't be the same; from the Observation I made on the Firing by Ranks in the fifth Article of the preceding Chapter; as also in the first Article of this on reserving the Front-rank.

Those who differ with me on this Head, may divide the Square into three Firings, according to the Method of the second Plan; but as the four Firings will appear better in the Exercise, by having one upon the marching towards each Front, I will pursue that Scheme, and give the necessary Directions accordingly.

The Firings may be perform'd standing, or by making a Movement before each Firing.

The four Platoons of Granadiers on the Angles, and the Platoons on the Right of each Face, Num. 1, on the Inside, belong to the first Firing; so that when the Platoons of the first Firing are order'd to make ready, the four Platoons of Granadiers, and the four Platoons of the Square, Num. 1. do it together.

The second Firing consists of the third Platoons from the Right of each Face, Num. 2, on the Inside.

The third Firing consists of the second Platoons from the Right of each Face, Num. 3, on the Inside.

The fourth consists of the Left Platoons of each Face, Num. 4, on the Inside.

When you would go through the Firings both standing and marching, it would be proper to vary them from one another.

Those standing, to be perform'd in their Order; and those marching together; as is explain'd in the third Article of the sixth Chapter.

But lest Firing in their Order in the Square should not be thoroughly comprehended by the Directions in the Article above-

above-mentioned, we shall here explain how it is to be perform'd.

When the Granadiers are to fire in their Order, the first Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 1, covering the Angle on the Right of the Front Face, fires first. The Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 2, on the Right of the Rear Face, fires next. The Granadiers, Num. 3, on the Right of the Right Face, fire the third. The Granadiers, Num. 4, on the Right of the Left Face, fire last.

When the Platoons of the Square are to fire in their Order, if it is those of the first Firing, they are to make ready when the Granadiers do; and as soon as the fourth Platoon of Granadiers has fired, the Platoon, Num. 1, of the Front Face fires; then the Platoon, Num. 1, of the Rear Face fires next; after that the Platoon, Num. 1, of the Right Face; and lastly, the Platoon, Num. 1, of the Left Face.

The Platoons of the other Firings are to observe the same Method, when they are to fire in their Order, by beginning with that in the Front Face; secondly, that of the Rear Face; thirdly, the Right Face; and fourthly, the Left Face.

The first Firing consists of the four Platoons of Granadiers, and the four Platoons of the Square, Num. 1, on the Inside.

The other three Firings consist of four Platoons each, one, in each Face of the Square. See how they are disposed of by the Plan, the Numbers on the Inside shewing which Firing they belong to.

How the Square is to Fire, Standing.

At the Beating of the Preparative, the Platoons of the first Firing make ready, and as soon as the four Platoons of Granadiers come to their Recover, and cock their Firelocks, they are to march forward three Paces, then Kneel and Lock; but the four Platoons of the Square, Num. 1, who are of the first Firing, stand with recover'd Arms, being to march forward three Paces when the Granadiers are order'd to Present, to open a Passage for them to retire into the Square when they have fired; and as soon as the Granadiers have got into the Square, the Platoons are to fall back into their Place, and immediately Kneel and Lock.

When the Platoons have made ready, as before directed, the Major orders a Flam; at which the Officer who commands the first Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 1, gives the Words,

Words, *Present* and *Fire*; after which they are to recover their Arms, face to the Right-about, march into the Square then halt and face the Angle, and immediately load and shoulder.

As soon as the first Platoon of Granadiers has fired, the Officer commanding the second Platoon of Granadiers is to order his to do the same, and then march into the Square. After that the third Platoon of Granadiers is to fire, and then the fourth.

When the four Platoons of Granadiers have fired, the Platoons of the Square, of the first Firing, are to fire in their Order. They are to be very exact in moving forward three Paces, when the Word *Present* is given to the Platoon of Granadiers which covers their Angle; and, when they have march'd into the Square, to fall back into their Places, and immediately Kneel and Lock.

After the first Firing is over, a Preparative is to be beat for the Platoons of the second Firing to make ready; then a Flam for them to Fire, which they are to do in their Order.

The third and fourth Firings are to be performed in the same Manner.

As soon as the Platoons have fired, they are immediately to load and shoulder.

After the first Firing is over, the Platoons on the Right of each Face, Num. 1, are to march forward three Paces, to open a Passage for the Granadiers to march out of the Square, and form on the Angles as before; and as soon as the Granadiers are marched out, they are to fall back into their Places. This may be deferr'd till the Platoons of the first Firing are ordered to make Ready a second time; in which Case, as soon as they have made Ready, the Platoons of the Square, Num. 1, are to march forward three Paces, and stand there with recover'd Arms till the Granadiers have marched out, fir'd, and return'd again into the Square, after which they are to fall back into their Places, Kneel, Lock and Fire: However, I shall follow the first of these two Methods, and give Directions accordingly.

They having gone thro' the Firings in the Square standing, I shall now shew how they are to perform in marching.

Directions for the Square to March.

The Drummers being divided in the Rear of each Face of the Square, the Major orders the Square to be ready to face and

and march towards the Front on which the Drummers there posted shall beat a March; and as soon as they cease beating, they are to halt and face Square.

As there are four Firings told off in the Plan of this Square, they should make a Movement towards each Front before each Firing, by marching twenty or thirty Paces at a time, or more or less, as the Commanding Officer shall think proper, or the Ground admit of it.

Before we proceed further, it will be necessary to give Directions how the several Parts of the Square are to face and march, on the Drummers beating on the different Fronts.

When the Division of Drummers in the Rear of the Front Face are order'd to beat a March, the whole Square is to face and march towards the Front, thus: The Rear Face comes to the Right-about on their Left Heels; the Right Face goes to the Left on their Right Heels; the Left Face to the Right on their Left Heels, and the four Platoons of Granadiers wheel an eighth Part of the Circle towards that Front. All the Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers, are to face as those Parts do on which they are posted.

As soon as they have faced, as above directed, they are all to step forward together, and march in that Order, without opening or closing their Ranks or Files, very slow towards the said Front as long as the March is beat, and when the Drummers are ordered to cease, they are then to halt and face Square, thus:

The Rear Face goes to the Left-about on their Left Heels.

The Right Face to the Right on their Right Heels.

The Left Face to the Left on their Left Heels; and

The four Platoons of Granadiers wheel back and cover their Angles.

When the Division of Drummers in the Rear of the Rear Face beats a March, they are all to Face and march towards that Front, thus:

The Platoons of Granadiers wheel, as before, towards that Front.

The Front Face goes to the Right-about on their Left Heels.

The Right Face faces to the Right on their Left Heels.

The Left Face faces to the Left on their Right Heels.

After

After which, they are all to march towards the Rear Front, as long as the March continues beating, and when it ceases they are to face Square, and Stand, thus :

The Granadiers are to wheel back and cover their Angles.
The Front Face goes to the Left-about on their Left Heels.

The Right Face to the Left on their Left Heels; and
The Left Face to the Right on their Right Heels.

On the beating of a March in the Rear of the Right Face, they are all to face and march towards that Front.

The Granadiers are to wheel towards that Front.
The Left Face goes to the Right-about on their Left Heels.
The Front Face to the Right on their Left Heels; and
The Rear Face to the Left on their Right Heels.

As soon as the March ceases, they are all to Face Square.

The Granadiers wheel back and cover their Angles.
The Left Face goes to the Left-about on their Left Heels.
The Front Face to the Left on their Left Heels; and
The Rear Face to the Right on their Right Heels.

On the beating of a March in the Rear of the Left Face, they are all to face and march towards the Front.

The Granadiers wheel towards that Front.
The Right Face goes to the Right-about on their Left Heels.

The Front Face to the Left on their Right Heels; and
The Rear Face to the Right on their Left Heels.

When the March ceases, they are all to Face Square.

The Granadiers wheel back and cover their Angles.
The Right Face goes to the Left-about on their Left Heels.
The Front Face to the Right on their Right Heels; and
The Rear Face to the Left on their Left Heels.

The March is to be beat only by that Division of Drummers who are posted in the Rear of that Face towards whose Front you intend to march; which finishes the Directions
how

how the several Parts of the Square are to face and march towards each of the four Fronts.

The Square being to march before each Firing, in order to vary it from that Standing, the Platoons of each Firing should fire together; if so, the Major must acquaint them with it, and give the Words of Command himself; after which he proceeds in the following Manner:

Drummers of the Front Face, beat a March.

On the Drummers beating the March, the whole Square faces, as above directed, and march very slow towards the Front of the Front Face; and when they have march'd as far as shall be thought proper, he is to order the Drummers to cease beating, at which all face Square and stand.

After this, he orders a Preparative; on which the four Platoons of Granadiers, and the four Platoons of the Square of the first Firing make Ready, and when they come to their Recover, the Granadiers are to advance three Paces, then Kneel and Lock; but those of the Square stand with recover'd Arms 'till the Granadiers are order'd to *Present*, and then march forward three Paces, as before directed, 'till the Granadiers have fired and marched into the Square, after which they fall back into their Places, and Kneel and Lock.

As soon as the Granadiers have Kneel'd and Lock'd, the Major proceeds.

Platoons of the Granadiers, Present.—Fire.

As soon as the Granadiers have marched into the Square, and the Platoons of the first Firing fallen back, Kneel'd and Lock'd, the Major then goes on.

Platoons of the first Firing, Present.—Fire.

The Granadiers and the Platoons of the Square of the first Firing may fire together, if the Commanding Officer thinks proper, by ordering those of the Square to march forward three Paces at the same time with the Granadiers, and to Kneel and Lock when they do; in which Case the Words of Command will be as follows:

Granadiers and Platoons of the first Firing, Present.—Fire.

After the first Firing is over, the Major proceeds thus:

Drummers

Drummers of the Rear Face, beat a March.

At this the whole Square face and march towards the Front of the Rear Face; and when they have got on their former Ground, the Drummers should be order'd to cease, on which they face Square. Then he orders a Preparative for the Platoons of the second Firing to make Ready, Kneel and Lock, and then proceed thus:

Platoons of the Second Firing, Present.—Fire.

As soon as the second Firing is over, the Major goes on.

Drummers of the Right Face, beat a March.

The Square, at this, is to face and march towards the Front of the Right Face; and when the Drummers are order'd to cease, they are all to face Square: After which, a Preparative for the Platoons of the third Firing to make Ready; then the Major gives the Words of Command.

Platoons of the Third Firing, Present.—Fire.

When the third Firing is over, the Major orders next.

Drummers of the Left Face, beat a March.

On which the Square is to face and march towards the Front of the Left Face; and when the Square is come to the Ground on which the first form'd, or pretty near it, the Drummers should be order'd to cease Beating, upon which they are all to face Square. After that a Preparative for the Platoons of the fourth Firing to make Ready; then the Major says,

Platoons of the Fourth Firing, Present.—Fire.

As soon as the fourth Firing is over, the Granadiers are to march out of the Square, and form on the Angles, as before directed in that Part where they fire standing.

When the Platoons of each Firing have fired they are to load in marching, and then Shoulder.

This compleats the several Movements of the Square, with a Firing after each; which Firings may be varied, if the Commanding Officer thinks proper, from the foregoing, after this manner:

After the first Movement, the whole Front Face, with the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 1, may be ordered to fire together.

After the second Movement, the Rear Face, with the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 2, fire together.

After the third Movement, the Right Face, with the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 3, fire together.

After the fourth Movement, the Left Face, with the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 4, fire together.

This Manner of Firing may appear very well in the Exercise; but would prove too dangerous in Service; since there would be an entire Front for sometime, without any Fire to defend themselves: Therefore I only mention it as proper for the Exercise, to vary it from the other.

They may likewise fire by Ranks, as they do in Battalion, by ordering the Whole to make ready together, then begin with the Rear-Rank of the whole Square, and the Rear Rank of the Granadiers; after that the Center-Rank of the Whole, and lastly the Front-Rank.

After they have gone through the different Firings of the Square, both standing and marching, they may finish with a Fire of the whole Square, which may be done where they stand, or after a Movement towards their proper Front.

As soon as this Fire is over, the Square should be reduced into Battalion; the Officers in the Rear ordered to the Front, and to take their Posts in Battalion; the Granadiers on the Left ordered to their Right; their Bayonets unfixed, and the Rear Half-Files to the Right as they were; which does not only conclude this Chapter, but also the Directions for the different Firings of the Foot in every Part of the Service: But, as what I have hitherto mentioned is only the Rudiments of Discipline, I shall endeavour to raise the Subject, by treating on such Parts of the Service, as will give all those who are desirous to know it, a general Notion of their Duty, on different Occasions.



C H A P. VIII.

Consisting of General Rules for the Marching of a Regiment of Foot, or a Detachment of Men, where there is a Possibility of their being Attacked by the Enemy.

A R T I C L E I.



HERE is not any thing in which an Officer shews the Want of Conduct so much, as in suffering himself to be surprized, either upon his Post, or in marching with a Body of Men under his Command, without being prepared to make a proper Defence, and by not having taken the necessary Precautions to prevent it.

When an Officer has had the Misfortune of being Beat, his Honour won't suffer by it, provided he has done his Duty, and acted like a Soldier. But if he is surprized by neglecting the common Methods used to prevent it, his Character is hardly Retrievable, unless it proceeds from his Want of Experience; and even in that Case he will find it very difficult.

An Officer, who is detached with a Body of Men, ought to consider, that the Lives of those under his Command depend in a great measure on his Prudence; and if he has any important Post committed to his Charge, the Lives of many more may follow.

This Consideration alone, without mentioning the Loss of Reputation, is sufficient, in my Opinion, to make us apply ourselves to our Duty with a more than common Zeal, that we may not be ignorant in what relates to our Profession, when our King and Country has an Occasion for our Service.

The Military Profession, has, in all ages, been esteemed the most Honourable, from the Danger that attends it. The Motives that lead Mankind to it, must proceed from a Noble

ble and Generous Inclination, since they sacrifice their Ease, and their Lives, in the Defence of their Country.

To answer this Glorious End, we should endeavour at the Knowledge of our Calling, by a thorough Application to the Service.

The same Spirit that brings us into the Army should make us apply ourselves to the Study of the Military Art, the common Forms of which may be easily attained by a moderate Application, as well as Capacity: Neither is it below any Military Man, let his Birth be ever so Noble, to be knowing in the minute Parts of the Service. It will not cramp his Genius (as some have been pleased to say, in order, as I suppose, to excuse their own ignorance) but rather aid and assist it in great and daring Enterprizes.

Our great and warlike Neighbours the *Germans*, are so entirely prepossessed in favour of this Opinion, that they oblige even their Youth of Quality to perform the Function of a Private Soldier, Corporal and Serjeant, that they may learn the Duty of each, before they have a Commission: And sure no Nation has produced greater Generals.

Our late Monarch, the Glorious King *William*, whose Military Capacity was Second to none, was perfectly knowing in the Small, as well as the Grand Detail of an Army. In visiting the Out-posts, he would frequently condescend to place the Centinels himself, and instruct the Officers how to do it. He was a strict Observer of all the Parts of Discipline; and knew the Duty of every one in the Army, from the Highest to the Lowest: And if so great a Prince thought it a necessary Qualification, I believe there will be hardly any one found of another Opinion.

I don't pretend to infer from the above Observations, that it is absolutely necessary for our young Nobility and Gentry to pass through those little and servile Offices before they arrive at a Commission; but I think it absolutely necessary that they should apply themselves to the Service, as soon as they have one: For without they know the Duty of those under their Command, how can they pretend to direct?

A Commission, it is true, qualifies a Man for the Pay; but it must be Time and Experience, and a thorough Application to the Service, that entitles him to the Appellation of a Soldier.

He that makes himself Master of the Duty of those below him, will the easier comprehend what is due to those above him; and be a means to qualify him for a higher Post, and

to the duty of it with Honour and Credit when given him, with this Addition, that He was fit for the Post, and not, that the Post was fit for Him.

It is more commendable and praise-worthy to owe our Preferment to Merit than Favour. The Dependance on the latter, is the Reason why so many young Gentlemen neglect the former.

Money and powerful Relations will always procure them what they want; they have therefore no occasion to apply themselves to the Knowledge of their Duty. It is from this way of thinking that so many of them do so little Credit to their Posts; not from the want of Genius, but Application.

I hope these few Observations won't be taken as a Reflection on the young Gentlemen who have come lately into the Army; but rather as an Admonition to avoid the Neglect complained of; my Design being purely to serve them, that they may be the better qualified to serve their Country when she calls upon them.

A R T I C L E II.

I shall now proceed to what was proposed in this Chapter, the necessary Precautions proper to be taken in the marching of a Regiment, or a Detachment of Men, to prevent a Surprise, &c.

When a Regiment is to march through a Country, where there is a Possibility of meeting with the Enemy, the Commanding Officer should leave nothing to chance. Fortune may fail us, if we trust too much to her; but a prudent Conduct never will. It is true, we may be overpowered, and conquered, notwithstanding all our Care; but never shamefully beat, if we act as we ought: And a Man may gain Reputation, though he is overcome.

The common Method of marching a Regiment is by Sub-Divisions, and the Captains divided in the Front and Rear; but, I am of Opinion, that Form should be broke through, where there is the least Probability of Service, and that of marching by Platoons substituted in its Room, as described in the seventh Article, Chapter Six, on Street-Firing.

In this Case the Regiment will be ready to enter upon Action in whatever Shape it may be required, whether in Street-Firing, in Battalion, or in the Square: Whereas in that of marching by Sub-Divisions, it will require some time after the

the Battalion is drawn up, to post the Officers to their Platoons.

But there is another Advantage, besides that abovementioned, by the Officers being divided to, and marching with the Platoons, which is, that the Men will march in greater Order by having the Eyes of so many more Officers on them, nor venture to leave their Ranks without Leave, for fear of being discovered. A Consideration, I am sure, of no small Consequence, since it will be the means to prevent a great many Men from being killed by the Country People, either in the Defence of their Goods, or out of Hatred to the Soldiers; or from their being taken by Partizan Parties, when they fall behind: But tho' they should have the good Fortune to escape both, the Apprehension of being punished, by quitting their Posts contrary to Orders, too often induces them to desert.

I believe I need not trouble myself in producing further Reasons to support my Opinion, those already mentioned being, according to my Judgment, sufficient to convince any Man of the Advantage it has over the other Method of marching by Sub-Divisions.

The common Method used to prevent your being attacked on the March before you have time to make a proper Defence, is, by having a Van and Rear-Guard, which Guards may be stronger or weaker, according to the Danger you may apprehend from the Enemy, or the Country you are to march through.

Those Guards are generally commanded by Officers, and frequently by Captains. They should never lose sight of the Regiment, or at least be out of the hearing of the Drum; for which Reason there should be a Drummer ordered to beat in the Rear-Platoon or Division, as well as in the Front; but more particularly in Night-marches.

Before the Regiment marches from the Parade, or the Head of their Encampment, these Guards are to be Drawn out; and if your March is towards the Enemy, or that you apprehend more Danger in the Front than the Rear, your Van-Guard should consist of a Captain's Command, and the Rear-Guard only of a Subaltern's: However, this depends on the Discretion of the Commanding Officer.

As soon as these Guards are Formed, the Officers who command them should receive their Instructions from the Commanding Officer of the Regiment or Detachment. But as young Officers can have but a very imperfect Notion of

the Intent and Meaning of these Guards, without some further Insight than barely the mentioning of them; I shall endeavour to give them a clear Idea of the Nature and Design of those Guards, by setting down the Duty of each.

General Instructions to the Van-Guard.

The Van-Guard is to march before the Regiment. The Distance which they are to be advanced, cannot be absolutely determined; since it must depend on the Nature of the Country you march through; so that in an inclosed Country it can hardly exceed two hundred Yards without losing Sight of the Regiment, which they are by no means to do, unless they have Orders: And in an open or Champain one, they ought not to be above three or four hundred Yards, lest they should be attacked and cut off by a superior Party, before the Regiment could come up to their Relief.

The Van-Guard is to reconnoitre, or view, every place where any number of Men can lie concealed, such as Woods, Copses, Ditches, hollow Ways, straggling Houses, or Villages, through which you are to march, or pass near.

That the Regiment may not Halt upon every Occasion of this Nature, the Officer who commands the Van-Guard must order a Serjeant, and 6 or 12 Men, to advance before him, but not to march out of his Sight, who are to reconnoitre all suspected Places; and where there are more than one of those Places to be looked into at a time, by having them both on the Right and Left of the Road, he is to order out another small Party for that Purpose.

When there are any Woods or Villages which will require some time to view, the Officer must halt his Guard at some Distance from them, and remain there 'till his advanced Parties have reconnoitred them thoroughly, and sent him an Account that all is safe; after which he is to march on.

Upon every Halt of this kind, he is to send one to the commanding Officer of the Regiment to acquaint him with the Reason of his Halting; upon which he should halt the Regiment as soon as they come in sight of the Van-Guard; and when it marches again, the Regiment is to do so too.

The Reason for the Van-Guard's halting at some Distance from a Wood or Village 'till it is reconnoitred, is for fear of an Ambuscade: for should they march up too near before it is viewed, they might be drawn too far into the Snare to be able to extricate themselves, and by that means, draw the
Regiment

Regiment into the same Misfortune; whereas by Halting at some Distance, that Danger is avoided; at least so far, that they cannot surprize you, by falling upon you unprepared, which is all that can be expected from an Officer.

The same Reason holds good for the Regiment's Halting when the Van-Guard does.

When the Van-Guard discovers any Body of Men, it is to Halt, and the Officer is to send back immediately and acquaint the Commanding Officer with it, and to know what particular Commands he has for him; and when he discovers any thing further, he is to do the same, whether it relates to their Numbers, Quality, (as Horse or Foot) Movement and Disposition, that he may take his Measures accordingly. Thus I have given as full an account of the Duty of a Van-Guard as the Nature of the thing will admit of, or General Rules can direct.

General Instructions to a Rear-Guard.

The chief employment of a Rear-Guard is to take up all the Soldiers who shall fall behind the Regiment, and march them Prisoners, in Order to their being punished for leaving it; which but too many will do, without a great deal of Care, in order to Plunder or Marode.

This Precaution is therefore absolutely necessary; without which a great many Men may be lost, and the Country suffer extremely, by being left to the Discretion of those Gentlemen.

The Officer commanding the Rear-Guard, must therefore be very diligent in examining every Place in which the Soldiers can hide themselves, to prevent these Disorders.

As the Rear-Guard is not to be at any great Distance from the Regiment, it will likewise prove a Security, in preventing their being fallen upon in the Rear, before they have Notice to prepare for their Defence: For the Moment that any Troops appear in the Rear, the Officer of that Guard must send and acquaint the Commanding Officer with it, that he may have Time to make a Disposition suitable to the Occasion; to gain which, the Officer of the Rear-Guard is to oppose them in the best Manner he can; but if the Superiority of the Enemy obliges him to give way before he can receive further Orders from the Commanding Officer, he must endeavour to join the Regiment by a slow and regular Retreat, in making a Stand at every Spot of

Ground that can be disputed. If he finds it impracticable for him to join the Regiment, by his Retreat being cut off, he must endeavour to gain the nearest Place of Security, whether Inclosures, Woods, Hollow-ways, Morasses, Villages, or Towns, in order to save himself and Party; but this should not be attempted while there are any Hopes left of his putting a Stop to the Enemy, or his joining the Regiment, since it will be weakened by his going off.

ARTICLE III.

Having explained, in the foregoing Article, the Nature and design of the Van and Rear-Guards, I shall now proceed to what relates to the Body of the Regiment, or Detachment, and in what manner the Commanding Officer is to conduct himself for the Security of the Whole.

A good deal of Care and Judgment is required in the Marching of a Regiment in good Order, and to prevent its running out into too great a Length.

The Officers on the several Platoons, or Divisions, must endeavour to avoid it, by keeping up their Divisions to a proper Distance from those before them; for if they once suffer the Division in the Front to march any considerable Distance from them, they will not only fatigue their Men, but find it a very difficult Matter to regain the Ground so lost; and if it proves so to one Division, it will be much more difficult to those in the Rear: For which Reason, the Officers can't be too exact in the Marching of their Divisions, and the keeping of their Ranks to their true Distance, particularly in inclosed Countries, where the Roads are generally narrow; but if the Officers neglect this Precaution, the Regiment may run into such a Length, that the Front may be attack'd and beat, before the Rear can be brought up to sustain them. But lest the Officers should fail in this Part of their Duty, the Commanding Officer should order the Major and Adjutant to Halt by turns every Half Hour, to see the Regiment pass by, and bring him an Account in what Order they find it, that he may direct his March, by moving faster or slower, according to the Report made him.

When the Regiment is to pass a Defile, where a Division can't march entire, but are obliged to Rank off, that is, to pass by Half or Quarter Ranks, the Officer who leads the first Division should Halt, or march extream slow, after he has pass'd it, 'till he has an Account that they are all over
and

and come up to their proper Distance, upon which Notice he is to march on as before.

The Officers must make the Men of their respective Divisions pass the Defile as fast as they can without Loss of Time, and fall into their Ranks the Moment they are over; and when their Divisions are formed, they must march them as quick as possible, without running, 'till they join those in their Front, and then march as they do.

If the above Directions are observed, the Regiment will not only march more secure, but also quicker, and with less Fatigue to the Men; but if they are neglected, it will be impossible for the Rear Divisions to keep up, so that in half a Day's March the Regiment may extend it's self from Front to Rear a Mile or two, which may prove of dangerous Consequence.

Particular Care should be taken that the Soldiers don't fasten the Tent-Poles to their Firelocks, (which is frequently done for the Ease of carrying them) lest they should be attack'd before they have time to untie them, and by that means render'd useless; a fatal Example of which, and of neglecting the above Precautions, I believe, will not be thought improper to be here inserted.

A Regiment of Foot, consisting of above 600 Men, being order'd to march from one Quarter to another, the Commanding Officer imagined, from the Distance of the Enemy's Frontier Garrisons which was at least ten Leagues, that he had nothing to apprehend, and therefore neglected the common Precautions usually taken, in ordering his Van-Guard to examine all suspected Places where Horse might lie conceal'd. Besides, he took no Care in the keeping up the Divisions, but suffered the Regiment to run into a Train of a Mile long, in a very short Time.

About half Way lay a little Wood, close to the Road where the Regiment was to march, in which a famous Partizan with eighty Horse lay conceal'd; which Wood the Van-Guard passed without examining; and as soon as the Center of the Regiment came opposite to the Wood, the Partizan with the eighty Horse rush'd out upon them, and after killing about fifty Men, and wounding as many more, the rest threw down their Arms and surrendered themselves Prisoners: The Men having their Tent-Poles fastened to their Firelocks could make little or no Resistance. Besides, their marching in a straggling manner made the Conquest easy, to which the Surprise did not a little contribute, by making

Ground that can be disputed. If he finds it impracticable for him to join the Regiment, by his Retreat being cut off, he must endeavour to gain the nearest Place of Security, whether Inclosures, Woods, Hollow-ways, Morasses, Villages, or Towns, in order to save himself and Party; but this should not be attempted while there are any Hopes left of his putting a Stop to the Enemy, or his joining the Regiment, since it will be weakened by his going off.

ARTICLE III.

Having explained, in the foregoing Article, the Nature and design of the Van and Rear-Guards, I shall now proceed to what relates to the Body of the Regiment, or Detachment, and in what manner the Commanding Officer is to conduct himself for the Security of the Whole.

A good deal of Care and Judgment is required in the Marching of a Regiment in good Order, and to prevent its running out into too great a Length.

The Officers on the several Platoons, or Divisions, must endeavour to avoid it, by keeping up their Divisions to a proper Distance from those before them; for if they once suffer the Division in the Front to march any considerable Distance from them, they will not only fatigue their Men, but find it a very difficult Matter to regain the Ground so lost; and if it proves so to one Division, it will be much more difficult to those in the Rear: For which Reason, the Officers can't be too exact in the Marching of their Divisions, and the keeping of their Ranks to their true Distance, particularly in inclosed Countries, where the Roads are generally narrow; but if the Officers neglect this Precaution, the Regiment may run into such a Length, that the Front may be attack'd and beat, before the Rear can be brought up to sustain them. But least the Officers should fail in this Part of their Duty, the Commanding Officer should order the Major and Adjutant to Halt by turns every Half Hour, to see the Regiment pass by, and bring him an Account in what Order they find it, that he may direct his March, by moving faster or slower, according to the Report made him.

When the Regiment is to pass a Defile, where a Division can't march entire, but are obliged to Rank off, that is, to pass by Half or Quarter Ranks, the Officer who leads the first Division should Halt, or march extream slow, after he has pass'd it, 'till he has an Account that they are all over
and

and come up to their proper Distance, upon which Notice he is to march on as before.

The Officers must make the Men of their respective Divisions pass the Defile as fast as they can without Loss of Time, and fall into their Ranks the Moment they are over; and when their Divisions are formed, they must march them as quick as possible, without running, 'till they join those in their Front, and then march as they do.

If the above Directions are observed, the Regiment will not only march more secure, but also quicker, and with less Fatigue to the Men; but if they are neglected, it will be impossible for the Rear Divisions to keep up, so that in half a Day's March the Regiment may extend it's self from Front to Rear a Mile or two, which may prove of dangerous Consequence.

Particular Care should be taken that the Soldiers don't fasten the Tent-Poles to their Firelocks, (which is frequently done for the Ease of carrying them) lest they should be attack'd before they have time to untie them, and by that means render'd useless; a fatal Example of which, and of neglecting the above Precautions, I believe, will not be thought improper to be here inserted.

A Regiment of Foot, consisting of above 600 Men, being order'd to march from one Quarter to another, the Commanding Officer imagined, from the Distance of the Enemy's Frontier Garrisons which was at least ten Leagues, that he had nothing to apprehend, and therefore neglected the common Precautions usually taken, in ordering his Van-Guard to examine all suspected Places where Horse might lie conceal'd. Besides, he took no Care in the keeping up the Divisions, but suffered the Regiment to run into a Train of a Mile long, in a very short Time.

About half Way lay a little Wood, close to the Road where the Regiment was to march, in which a famous Partizan with eighty Horse lay conceal'd; which Wood the Van-Guard passed without examining; and as soon as the Center of the Regiment came opposite to the Wood, the Partizan with the eighty Horse rush'd out upon them, and after killing about fifty Men, and wounding as many more, the rest threw down their Arms and surrendered themselves Prisoners: The Men having their Tent-Poles fastened to their Firelocks could make little or no Resistance. Besides, their marching in a straggling manner made the Conquest easy, to which the Surprise did not a little contribute, by making

making the Number of the Enemy appear infinitely more than they were.

The Officer who commanded the Rear-Guard hearing the Fire in the Front, and being about half a Mile in the Rear, had time to put his Men in Order (which with his own and those he had pick'd up, amounted to 50) and stand upon his Defence: And notwithstanding the Disaster which happen'd to the Regiment, and some Attempts to take him, he saved both himself and Party, and retired back to the Town in good Order.

I would not have the World imagine, that I mention this Affair, in order to reflect on the Memory of the Gentleman who commanded the Regiment; but by way of Precaution to others: For he was known to be a brave Man, and a very good Officer. His presuming too far on his Safety, from the Enemy being at such a Distance, occasion'd the Infatuation with which he was then seiz'd, (for I can call it nothing else, since it did not proceed from Ignorance) the Effect of which plunged both him and the Regiment into that Misfortune. The Disgrace of being surpriz'd and taken by a handful of Men, lay so near his Heart, that it put an End to his Life in a few Years; and tho' the World forgave him, from the Knowledge they had of his good Qualities, yet he could never forgive himself.

The above Misfortune is sufficient to convince us that we ought not to slight or neglect our Duty, particularly, where the Lives and Safety of those under our Command depend on our Conduct.

To have the Lives of Men lost by our Neglect, must touch our Breast with unspeakable Grief, unless we are void of Humanity.

But how can we answer it to our King and Country? Or should they, like indulgent Parents, pass it over, how can we reconcile it to ourselves? The Thoughts of it will sting us with Remorse, and imbitter our Lives to such a Degree as to become a Burthen to us. Such was the Case, as I was inform'd, and which I am apt to believe, from the good Character he bore, of the unfortunate Gentleman before-mention'd.

Had the common Precautions been observ'd, without carrying it to a Nicety, that Misfortune could not have happen'd, tho' the Enemy's Horse had been of an equal Number with the Regiment; but, by the foremention'd Neglect, that trifling, that inconsiderable Body made a bold Push; and carried

carried their Point; which redounded very much to their Honour, and the Disgrace of the others.

We may draw Advantages from the Misfortunes of others, if we reflect justly on them. It is with that View purely the above Case was mention'd, and no other. Let us therefore avoid falling into the same Snare, by acting with Caution when we are intrusted with a Command; and tho' we can't be certain of Success, with all our Care and Diligence, it is a great Step towards it: For if we take proper Measures, our Failing will then be attributed to the Chance of War; and we may be unfortunate, tho' we don't deserve to be so.

I will end these Reflections, and this Article, with a *French Maxim*; *La Mefiance est la Mere de Seureté.* *Distrust is the Mother of Security.*

A R T I C L E IV.

When a Regiment, or Detachment, marches through an inclos'd or woody Country, the Danger which they are to apprehend must be from Foot, and not Horse; and lest a Partizan Party should escape the Discovery of the Vanguard, it would be proper to have small Parties, commanded by Serjeants, marching on the Flanks of the Battalion, with Orders to examine all the Hedges, Ditches and Copses which lie near the Road, those being the Places in which they generally conceal themselves; and though the Danger from such Parties cannot be very considerable, yet the neglecting them may occasion you the Loss of all your Stragglers, your Baggage, and perhaps your Rear-Guard; Considerations, in my Opinion, of too much Weight to be slighted.

The Parties on the Flanks must by no means go too far from the Regiment, for fear of being cut off by the Enemies slipping behind them; for which Reason they must be very circumspect in their examining all suspected Places, taking Care to leave none behind them which they have not look'd into, that their Retreat may not be intercepted. Neither must they venture too rashly into a Thicket or Copse, lest they fall into their Hands before they are aware of them, and by that means be taken Prisoners without being able to make a proper Defence, 'till reliev'd by the Regiment.

Without these Precautions your Parties may be taken within a hundred Yards of the Battalion, in an inclos'd or woody Country, or have their Retreat cut off by the Enemy getting
between

between them and the Regiment. When this is the Case, they should give Notice by the Firing off of a Piece or two, that Relief may be sent them, and then make all the Resistance possible 'till it comes, and not surrender upon any Terms, but defend themselves to the last Man.

When this happens, it would be very proper to sustain them immediately, by detaching the Granadiers, or a Platoon or two from that Part of the Battalion which lies nearest; but with positive Orders not to engage too rashly, for fear of being drawn into an Ambuscade, and only endeavour to rescue their own Men, without attempting any thing further, 'till they receive fresh Orders from the Commanding Officer how they are to proceed: For the usual Decoy by which People are drawn into an Ambuscade is, by laying of small Parties at some Distance from the Place where the Body lies concealed, which, at your Approach, shew as if they were frighten'd, and retire with Precipitation before you, in hopes to draw you into the Trap; but when the Officers so detached, have effected what they were sent for, that of disengaging their own Men, they ought to pursue it no further, without fresh Orders from the Commanding Officer; otherwise, they may be engaged so far, that the Commanding Officer shall find himself under a Necessity to sustain them with the Whole, and by that means be drawn into an Engagement before he has thoroughly considered whether it was proper or not.

Young Officers are but too apt to commit these Mistakes, by exceeding their Orders; being hurried on, by the Heat and Impetuosity of their Temper, to do something that is great and noble, without considering the Consequences that may attend it. I own it is an Error on the right Side; but 'tis still an Error: for Orders are, for the most Part, positive, and leave us no room to act according to our Inclination; a Restraint that proves rather indulgent than hard in Cases of Danger, into which Youth would precipitate themselves and others, were it not check'd by the cool Reason of Men of Experience. Let us therefore be subservient to the Commands of our Superiors, and submit to their Judgment in all Things relating to the Service. We shall gain Honour and Reputation enough, if we adhere strictly to our Orders; but Disgrace may attend the exceeding of them, as well as the falling short; the one, however, is more excusable than the other; tho' the Consequences may prove as fatal, since it proceeds from a mistaken Zeal, but the other from the Want of Courage. To blame a Man for want of Courage when Nature has not bestow'd

bestow'd it on him, is not only hard, but unjust; but a Man that continues in the Service when he knows himself defective in that Point, betrays both his King and Country, and therefore merits the severest Punishment.

As soon as the advanc'd Parties discover any Troops, they are to acquaint the Commanding Officer immediately with it, and whether they appeared to be Horse or Foot, what Number, and which Way they were marching; and so from time to time, in Case they discover any thing further. Upon such a Discovery, the advanc'd Parties are to halt, and to remain there 'till they are order'd to retire, or forced to it by the Enemy; in which Case, they are to retire in a regular Manner, and not with Precipitation, lest they should intimidate the Whole by a disorderly Flight.

Upon such Notice being given, the Commanding Officer should immediately order the Whole to halt, and prepare for Action, and send the Major, or an Officer that is well mounted, to Reconnoitre them near, in order to discover what he can of their Numbers and Quality, and whether they appear to be Friends or Foes. But lest the Closeness of the Country won't permit him to do it without the Danger of being intercepted in his Return, small Parties may be order'd to follow him at some Distance, to secure his Retreat; after the Performance of which, they are to join the Regiment.

The Commanding Officer must direct his Measures according to the Report he shall receive from the Officer who was sent to Reconnoitre; and if it is only judged to be a Partizan Party sculking about to pick up Stragglers, or to take the Baggage, he ought, no doubt, to order out a proper Detachment to attack them; but with Directions to the Officer who commands it, to be very cautious in the Execution, by not pursuing too far, for fear of an Ambuscade; and that if he should discover the Body to be greater than what they apprehended, or find them too advantageously posted to be easily dislodged, to defer the Execution 'till he acquaints him with it, and receives his further Orders. Restrictions of this kind are not only proper, but absolutely necessary; without which, the Party so detached may not be only lost, but the Regiment thereby involved in insuperable Difficulties.

When the Case happens, as above related, by their being too numerous, or too strongly posted to be attack'd by the Detachment so sent; the Number of the Enemy, and their Situation should be thoroughly consider'd, and a proper Disposition

position made to attack them to the most Advantage, which must be done if they obstruct the March of the Regiment; but if they don't, I presume, the Commanding Officer may desist from the Attempt, if he finds much Difficulty and Danger in it, and pursue his March, taking Care to secure the Baggage (by marching it in the Front, or on the Flanks) and Rear-Guard, which he may do, by ordering it to be reinforced, and keeping near the Rear of the Regiment.

This, however, must depend on his Instructions, and by them alone he must be determined; it being impossible to say what should, or should not be done, without seeing them. For if his Orders are only to march from such a Place, to such a Place, he is not to hazard his Men in looking out for Adventures; but to pursue his Instructions to the best of his Power, and attack those who shall oppose his March, provided they are not too powerful a Body to encounter, or too advantageously posted to be forced; in which Case, he may very justly retire to the Place from whence he came, or into any other of Safety that shall be nearer to him, acquainting the General, or Officer from whom he received his Orders, with the Reasons for his so doing, and wait there for his further Directions.

ARTICLE V.

The foregoing Directions being more particularly calculated for the marching thorough an inclosed Country, where the Danger from Foot was the chief thing to be apprehended, I shall, in the next Place, lay down the necessary Precautions for marching in an open or champain one.

In quitting the inclosed Country, and entering into a plain or open one, the Commanding Officer must take the necessary Precautions against being surprized and attacked by the Horse; and tho' they may be discovered at a considerable Distance, the Quickness of their Motions makes it proper that a Disposition should be thought on before there is a Necessity to put it in Practice.

As the Square is the principal Figure into which a Regiment of Foot can throw themselves against a considerable Body of Horse, they should be prepared to Form it at the first Order.

The Method I propose for their marching in an open Country, is as follows.

Upon their coming into the plain, or open Country, the Distance between the Platoons should be no larger than what is required to Form in, when order'd to wheel to the Right
or

or Left ; by observing of which, the Battalion may be form'd in a Moment, by one Word of Command, and ready to enter upon Action.

The Parties on the Flanks may join the Regiment, the Van and Rear-Guards being sufficient.

In marching by Platoons, the Regiment will take up the less Ground, and become thereby more compact, and consequently not liable to a Surprise ; and while they discover none of the Enemy, they may pursue their March in that Order ; but upon the appearance of any Troops, or Notice given them of their being near, the Battalion should then march in four Grand-Divisions. The Platoons being order'd to Double up to the Left, according to the Number into which it was Told off : For if it consisted of 16 Platoons, besides Granadiers, then each Grand-Division will consist of 4 ; but if only into 12, then each Grand-Division will consist of 3 Platoons.

The Reason why I mention the Battalion's being Told off into 16 Platoons, or 12, is, because the Grand-Divisions are form'd from one of those two in a Moment, and from thence the Square, without any Alteration in the Officers or Platoons in the forming of both ; whereas a new Division, both of the Officers and Platoons, is required, should the Battalion be Told into 13, 14, or 15 Platoons, before either the Grand-Divisions or Square can be form'd ; which Inconveniency, and Loss of Time, is avoided, by dividing the Battalions into 16, or 12 Platoons, exclusive of the Granadiers, as may be seen by the Plan of forming the Square by Division, in *Article 3. Chap. 7.*

But as that only shows how the Square is form'd by Grand-Divisions, when drawn up in Battalion, I shall shew how it is to be form'd from Grand-Division upon the March. I shall begin with 16 Platoons.

How a Battalion of 16 Platoons is to be form'd into four Grand-Divisions on the March, and then into the Square.

As soon as the Commanding Officer gives Order for the forming the Grand-Divisions, the first Platoon is to Halt, or move on as slowly as possible ; the second Platoon marches immediately, and draws up on the Left of the first, the third on the Left of the second, and the fourth on the Left of the third, which forms the first Grand-Division.

The

The fifth Platoon marches straight forward in the Rear of the first, and when it comes to a proper Distance, it is to Halt or March as it does, on which, the sixth, seventh, and eighth Platoons draw up on the Left of the fifth, which forms the second Grand-Division.

The ninth Platoon marches straight on, 'till it comes to a proper Distance off the fifth, after which, the tenth, eleventh and twelfth Platoons draw up on the Left of the ninth, which forms the third Grand-Division.

The thirteenth Platoon is to march straight on 'till it comes to a proper Distance off the ninth, then the fourteenth, fifteenth and sixteenth Platoons draw up on the Left of the thirteenth, which forms the fourth Grand-Division.

While the Grand-Divisions are forming, the Granadiers are to be divided into two Platoons, and those sub-divided into two each, to be ready to form on the Angles of the Square. After which, the Granadiers may be either kept in a Body, or divided in the Front and Rear of the Grand-Divisions, or on the Flanks, as the Commanding Officer shall judge most proper for the Service.

By the above Method, the Battalion may be form'd into four Grand-Divisions, even without Halting, when the Commanding Officer thinks proper; and from thence into the Square, in the following manner.

As soon as the Word of Command, *Form the Square*, is given, the first Grand-Division Halts, and by that forms the Front Face.

The second and third Grand-Divisions divide in the Center, and wheel to the Right and Left outwards, and form the Right and Left Faces, thus: The two Platoons on the Right of each of those Grand-Divisions wheel to the Right, and form the Right Face; and the two Platoons on the Left of each wheel to the Left, and form the Left Face.

The fourth Grand-Division marches on 'till they come to the Flanks of the Right and Left Faces, and then face to the Right-about on their Left Heels, which forms the Rear Face; on which, all the Officers, except those who Command the Platoons, move immediately into the Square, as directed in the forming of the Square.

The Ensigns with the Colours, being at the Head of the third Grand-Division, are only to move two or three Paces forward, and then stand, in order to give the Platoons Room to wheel by them; by which, they fall into the Center of the Square without any further Trouble.

Upon

Upon the ordering of the Square to be form'd, the Granadiers are to repair immediately to their several Angles, the first Platoon to divide and cover the Front Angles, and the second Platoon to divide and cover the Rear Angles.

By keeping the Grand-Divisions in the Center up to their proper Distance, and the Rear-Division close to the Third, and dividing the Granadiers on the Flanks, or in the Front and Rear, the Square may be form'd as quick, almost, as Thought, without running the least Hazard, tho' the Enemy's Horse should be within 30 Paces: For which Reason, the Commanding Officer may continue his March in Grand-Divisions 'till he finds they have made a Disposition, and are actually on their March to attack him on all Sides, since the March will be quicker, and with less Fatigue to the Men, in marching by Grand-Divisions, than in the Square. Neither do I think that a Regiment of Foot can be under a Necessity to throw themselves into a Square for three or four Squadrons of Horse, since they may be kept at a Distance by marching the Granadiers on the Flanks, and to fire on them whenever they venture too near; but if that should not be sufficient, a few Platoons from the Battalion will soon make them Retire.

Upon discovering the Enemy's Horse, or Notice given of their Approach, the Van and Rear Guards, as also the Baggage should be order'd to keep near the Regiment; and if they find the Number of the enemy considerable, and that the Baggage cannot be preserved without running too great a Hazard, it ought to be abandon'd, and nothing thought of but the Security of the Regiment: However, they need not give up the Baggage 'till they are under a Necessity of doing it, nor defer it when they are.

When this is the Case, the Van and Rear-Guards should be divided into the several Platoons, that they may not be exposed to the Enemy, by being left out, when the Square is form'd.

If the Enemy should not think proper to attack you, on their finding you drawn up in the Square, and ready to receive them in too warm a manner, but retire to a greater Distance, the Commanding Officer may then pursue his March, either in the Square, as has been shewn in *Article 4. Chap. 7* or in Grand-Divisions. If their Distance is such, that he may march with Safety by Grand-Divisions, the Square is to be reduced into them, in the following Manner.

K

When

When the Word of Command, *From the Square, Form into Grand-Divisions*, is given, the Platoons which wheel'd up to form the Right and Left Faces, are to wheel back 'till they come to a Parallel Line with the Front Face, and then stand, by which the second and third Grand-Divisions will be form'd as before; for by wheeling back the two Platoons on the Left of the Right Face, and the two on the Right of the Left Face, the second Grand-Division will be form'd; so that the wheeling back of the two Platoons on the Right of the Right Face, and two Platoons on the Left of the Left Face will form the third Grand-Division.

The Men of the Rear-Face are only to face to the Left-about on their Left Heels, by which Means the four Grand-Divisions will be form'd as before, and in the same Space of Time as was taken up in forming the Square.

The Granadiers may be order'd to fall in the Front and Rear, or March on the Flanks of the first and fourth Grand-Divisions; after which, they may march on 'till the Enemy comes again to attack them.

When the Regiment is Told off into 12 Platoons, each Grand-Division will consist of but three Platoons; for which Reason the Square must be form'd in this Manner.

The first Grand-Division forms the Front Face.

The Second wheels to the Right, and forms the Right Face.

The Third marches on 'till they come opposite to the Right Flank of the second Division, and then wheels to the Left and forms the Left Face.

The fourth Division forms the Rear-Face as in the other.

In reducing the Square, from hence, into Grand-Divisions, the Right and Left Faces are to wheel back, as they did up, entire; only the Right Face must not wheel back, so quick as the Left, that they may fall into their proper Places, and avoid the Confusion which their meeting, in wheeling back, might occasion.

This Manner of forming the Square requires a little more Time than the other; but in all other Respects, it is quite as regular, by requiring no new Telling off, or changing the Officers; whereas, should the second and third Grand-Divisions divide in the Center, and wheel to the Right and Left outwards, to form the Right and Left Faces, as the other did, the Center Platoon of each of these Grand-Divisions

would be cut in two, and thereby occasion a new Telling off of the Right and Left Faces as soon as they were form'd, which would not be quite so proper, if the Enemy were very near, as that of wheeling up the Grand-Divisions entire.

But as the Difficulty seems to lie in the Time, which is requir'd in the forming of the Right and Left Faces by Grand-Divisions entire; and that a greater will happen, by the dividing of them in the Center, when they consist but of 3 Platoons each, as has been observed; I shall offer therefore another Way of doing it as a Medium between both, as thus:

The Right Face may be form'd by ordering the two Platoons on the Right of the Second Grand-Division, and the Right Platoon of the Third, to wheel to the Right, to form that Face.

The Left Face will consist of the Left Platoon of the Second Grand-Division, and the Two on the Left of the Third; so that by ordering them to wheel to the Left; at the same Time that the others wheel to the Right, the Left Face will be form'd at the same time with the Right; by which Method the Platoon, with their Officers, will be kept entire, and the Square sooner form'd than by Grand-Divisions.

If the foregoing Rules are observed, an Officer can never be so far surpriz'd on his March, but that he will be ready to act upon the offensive or defensive, which was all that I propos'd to treat of in this Chapter; in the prosecuting of which, I have endeavour'd to shew the Duty of the Whole, in such a Manner, that every Officer may plainly discover his own; either in the proper Directions for marching the Whole, or a particular Platoon or Division, and passing a Defile, or the Command of the Van or Rear-Guard; or being order'd out with a Detachment to sustain or relieve any of his own Parties, or to attack a Partizan Party that shall be discovered on the March, with the Precautions how they are to proceed in the Execution, for fear of further Danger than at first appear'd, and how they are to act when it so happens; but more particularly in the Conduct requir'd of a Commanding Officer, for the Security and Preservation of the Whole, both in an open and an inclos'd Country.

It is impossible to say in what Manner he is to act when he meets with the Enemy, without knowing their Numbers, Quality and Disposition. His own Judgment and Experience must direct him in taking proper Measures; for without he has both, those who are under his Command, at such a Juncture, are much to be pitied, let his Courage be ever so great.



C H A P IX.

*Consisting of general Rules for Battalions of Foot
when they are to engage in the Line.*

A R T I C L E I.



HO' it may be supposed that all Colonels will keep their Regiments in such Order, that they may be ready to march and enter upon Action, when Commanded; however, it is absolutely necessary, that they make a thorough Inspection into their Mens Arms, and Ammunition, the Day before they expect an Engagement, least any thing should be wanting, when their Service is required.

The Commanding Officers should take particular Care to have their Regiments as strong as possible on the Day of Action, by permitting no more Men to be out of the Ranks than what are absolutely necessary for the Security of the Baggage, or are commanded out upon Duty.

As soon as the Battalions are form'd, they should be told off into Platoons, and the Officers appointed to them, as directed in *Article 1. Chapter 6.*

When the Officers are posted to their Platoons, they should view their Men's Arms and Ammunition, and make a Report of the same to the Officer commanding the Regiment; this Inspection should not be omitted, lest several Men, by having lost, or embezzled their Ammunition, may be rendered useless for want of being supplied in due time, which they will be apt to conceal, for fear of being punished.

In marching up to attack the Enemy, and during the Action, a profound Silence should be kept, that the Commanding Officers may be distinctly heard in delivering their Orders: Neither are the Officers who command the Platoons to use any more Words than what relate to the Performance of their Duty.

The

The Commanding Officer is to give the Word of Command for all the Movements which his Regiment is to perform, whether it is to Advance, Retire, or Halt; but lest He should not be distinctly heard by the Whole, they are to regulate their Motions by the several Beatings of the Drum; for which End, the Drummers in the Center Platoons are to be very attentive to the Words of Command, and to Beat; on the Delivering of them, according to the following Directions.

When the Battalion is order'd to march Forward, they are to beat a March; and when the Word Halt is given, they are to cease.

When they are to Retire, as soon as the Battalion has faced to the Right-about, and the Word March is given, the Drummers are to beat a retreat; and not to cease 'till the Battalion is order'd to Halt.

The Drummers on the Flanks are to govern themselves, both in their Beatings, and in Ceasing to Beat, by those in the Center; by which Means, those Men who could not hear the Word of Command, from their being at too great a Distance from the Center, or the Noise of the Drums, will know, by the different Beatings, what they are to perform.

The Drummers in the Center must be ready to beat a Preparative for the whole Battalion to Make ready, if the Commanding Officer thinks proper to have it perform'd in that Manner.

A R T I C L E II.

In marching up to attack the Enemy, the Line should move very slow, that the Battalions may be in Order, and the Men not out of Breath when they come to engage.

The Commanding Officer of every Battalion should march up close to the Enemy, before he suffers his Men to give their Fire; and if the Enemy have not given theirs, he should prevent their doing it, by falling upon them, with the Bayonets on the Muzzles the Instant they have fired, which may be done under the Cover of the Smoke, before they can perceive it: So that by the Shock they will receive from your Fire, by being close, and attacking them immediately with your Bayonets, they may, in all Probability, be beat with a very inconsiderable Loss: But if you don't follow your Fire that Moment, but give them Time to recover from the Disorder

yours may have put them into, the Scene may change to your Disadvantage. I therefore don't recommend this Way of Proceeding, but when the Enemy are obstinate, and persevere in not giving theirs first; it being a received Maxim, that those who preserve their Fire the longest, will be sure to Conquer: But if the Method here proposed is duly executed, that Maxim, I believe, will be found Fallible. However, it should only be pursu'd in the Case spoken of, as a proper Expedient when you can't draw the Enemy's Fire from them 'till you come up close; but if you can draw away their Fire at some Distance without giving yours, and that the Execution has not disorder'd the Battalion so much but that it keeps moving on towards them, you may be sure of Success; it being certain, that when Troops see others advance, and going to pour in their Fire upon them, when theirs is gone, they will immediately give way, or at least it happens seldom otherwise. The Point then to be aimed at is, that of receiving the Enemy's Fire first; but when both Sides pursue the same Maxim, in preserving their Fire last, I don't know a more proper Expedient than the one already mentioned: For when the Fire is given near, there won't be only a great many killed and wounded, but those who remain unhurt will be put into such Disorder and Confusion by it, that it will contribute to their being beat without much Difficulty, if the Blow is followed.

When it is apprehended that the Enemy will persist in Reserving their Fire, the Commanding Officers should prepare their Men for it before they go on, and direct them how they are to give their Fire, and in what manner they are to proceed afterwards, with the Advantages that will be gained by the following of it, and that their own Safety, as well as the Destruction of the Enemy, depends on the due Execution.

A R T I C L E III.

When any of the Battalions have forced those they attacked to give way, great care must be taken by the Officers to prevent their Men from Breaking after them; neither must they pursue them faster than the Line advances: For if a Battalion advances out of the Line, it may be attacked on the Flanks by the Enemy's Horse, who are frequently posted between the first and second Lines for that Purpose. The Commanding Officers must therefore remain satisfied with the Advantage of having obliged the Enemy to give way,

way, and not break the Line by advancing before it in the Pursuit; but in order to keep up the Terror of the Enemy, and to prevent their Rallying, the Granadiers may be order'd to advance twenty or thirty Paces before the Line, and to fire upon them from time to time: And while the Granadiers are thus employ'd, the Commanding Officers should take great Care to keep their Regiments in good Order, that they may be ready to engage the second Line of the Enemy, which they may reasonably expect will come up to sustain those they had routed.

The Granadiers being detached in the Front only to prevent those who were routed from Rallying, they must by no means advance too far from the Line, lest they should be cut off from it by the Enemy. They must therefore act with Precaution, and as soon as they perceive the second Line of the Enemy, or a Body of their Troops, marching towards them, they are to quit the pursuit and return to their Regiments, or halt 'till their own Line comes up, if the Enemy don't advance too fast upon them.

Unless these Directions are punctually observed by every Battalion in the Line, the Advantage so gained may be snatch'd from them in a Moment: For by pursuing the Enemy too far, they may be surrounded by fresh Troops, and cut to Pieces before the Line can come up to their Assistance. It is therefore the Duty of every Commanding Officer, to regulate his March according to the Motions of the Line, and not suffer themselves to be too much elated on the first Success, lest it hurry them on too fast without reflecting on the Danger that may attend it: For which Reason the whole Line must act like one Battalion, both in advancing, attacking and pursuing the Enemy together. While they keep in a Body, they can mutually assist one another, but if they should separate in pursuing those they beat, the enemy may destroy them one after another, with such an inconsiderable Number of Troops, that were they in a Body would fly at their Appearance. The Consequence therefore of separating during the Action, is of such Weight and Moment, that by doing it, the Enemy may not only re-establish their Affairs in such a manner as to renew the Action, but in all Probability likewise gain a compleat Victory, if they make a proper Use of the Advantage so given; which we are always to suppose they will, and for that Reason we ought not to give them an Opportunity by which they may have it in their Power.

ARTICLE IV.

Whereas it is ordered by the 14th Article of War, “ That
 “ Whoever after Victory, shall, instead of pursuing the
 “ Enemy, quit his Commanding Officer or Post, to plunder
 “ and pillage; every such Offender being duly convicted
 “ thereof, shall be reputed a Disobeyer of Military Orders;
 “ and shall suffer Death, or such other Punishment as by a
 “ General Court-Martial shall be inflicted on him.”

After what has been mentioned in the above Article of War, relating to those who shall quit their Posts to plunder and pillage, it appears almost unnecessary to enlarge on the Necessity of its being duly observ'd; His Majesty's Commands being sufficient to determine our Obedience, without entering into the Reasons for which they were given: However, it may not be altogether improper, for the Information of those who have not had Experience of the Danger which generally attends the Neglect of it, to show that our own Safety is thereby consulted and preserv'd.

Should the Soldiers be permitted to disperse, and run in Search of Plunder, before the Enemy are entirely routed, and reduced beyond a Possibility of forming themselves again into a Body, they may renew the Action and fall upon them while they are employed in plundering the Baggage; the Consequence of which would not be only certain Destruction to those who commit it, but perhaps prove so to the whole Army likewise.

The History of all Ages will furnish us with numerous Examples of this kind: and a Passage occurs to my Memory, which I have read somewhere, that is very pat to the Purpose.

A General of an Army finding himself under very great Difficulties, by being obliged to engage a superior Force; and being apprehensive that the Battle would go against him, without some extraordinary Means could be thought on to effect it, at last came to the following Resolution. As soon as he drew near the Enemy, he ordered all the Baggage of his Army to be placed in their full View; after which he gave Orders, that, upon the making such a Signal, they should make their Retreat; which, however, should not be given 'till he found that the Battle was likely to go against him; and as he conjectured, so it happened, from the Superiority of the Enemy; Upon which he ordered the Signal to be

he made, and his Army retir'd in pretty good Order, leaving the Enemy Masters of the Field of Battle and all his Baggage; the Temptation of which, and their apprehending that they had nothing to fear from a beaten Army, made them quit the Pursuit, and fall a Plundering. The General finding that the Bait which he had laid had taken Effect, return'd with his Troops, and fell upon them in the Height of their Plundering, and by that means gain'd a compleat Victory.

Whether the above Story is true or false, is of no great Consequence. The carrying an air of Probability in it, was sufficient to my Purpose: And I believe, if the same Stratagem was to be made use of, even in this Age, it might have a very good Effect in saving a great Part of a broken Army, by taking the Enemy off from the Pursuit; for such is the Love of Plunder in the private Soldiers, that were they not restrained from it by their Officers, no Hazard would deter them from it.

As Example is beyond Precept, I beg Leave to insert another of a more modern Date, the Truth of which I can assert.

In the Year 1710, the late Earl *Stanhope*, with a Body of *English* Troops, was attack'd in *Brihuega* by the whole *Spanish* Army, consisting of above 20,000 Men, under the Conduct of the present King of *Spain*, and the late Duke of *Vendosme*; to relieve which, Marshal *Staremborg* march'd with the Remainder of his Army, amounting to 11,000 Men; but before he came up, the Town was taken, and the Earl and his Troops made Prisoners; of which Marshal *Staremborg* could have no Intelligence, 'till he had advanced too near to retire without fighting. The *Spanish* Army looking upon their vast Odds, and being elated with their Success the Night before in the taking of *Brihuega*, concluded on nothing less than the cutting of Marshal *Staremborg* and his little Army to Pieces. With this View, the Duke of *Vendosme* detach'd a Body of 3000 Horse to fall upon the Rear of Marshal *Staremborg's* Army, at the same time that he attack'd him in Front with the rest of the Army; but the Baggage of the Marshal's Army being placed in the Rear of his second Line, saved him from the Danger which threatned him there; for the 3000 Horse, instead of doing their Duty, carried off the Baggage. As soon as the Duke of *Vendosme* had given a sufficient Time for the 3000 Horse to march round, as directed, he attack'd the Marshal's Army in Front; but with so little Success
notwith-

notwithstanding his Superior Numbers exclusive of the 3000 Horse, that the Marshal did not only repulse the *Spanish* Army in every Attack they made, but beat them entirely out of the Field of Battle, and obliged the King of *Spain* and the Duke of *Vendosme* to retire five Miles that Night: Whereas, had the 3000 Horse desisted from the Plunder, and pursued their Orders, in attacking the Marshal's Army in the Rear, when the Duke attacked it in the Front, few or none could have escaped.

As this short Account is only to shew the ill Consequences of suffering the Soldiers to quit their Officers or Post, to plunder or pillage, before the Enemy are entirely beat; I hope, that the Inserting of it here, will not be thought foreign to the Affair in hand; but will rather serve as an Example to deter others from committing the like Error, and oblige every Officer in his Station to exert Himself on these Occasions, that the Danger here complain'd of may be avoided.

A R T I C L E V.

The Commanding Officer and Major of each Regiment should observe the Disposition of their own Troops, when they are drawn up in the Line of Battle, that they may know what Regiment sustains theirs, or whom they are to sustain, according as they are posted in the first or second Line. They should likewise endeavour to know their own Troops from the Enemy, either by their Colours or Cloathing, that in the Confusion, to which Battles are generally subject, they may not mistake the one for the other: For as the Battalions are obliged to separate when a Battle is fought in a close or woody Country, this Mistake is easily made, without the aforesaid Precaution, and therefore it is absolutely Necessary to prevent your Destroying one another.

A R T I C L E VI.

When the Enemy act upon the Defensive, and only endeavour to maintain their Post, if there are any Houses, Hollow-ways, Ditches or Hedges in their Front, they commonly place Men in them to annoy the Line in their marching up to attack them. When this is the Case, the Grana- diers should be ordered to march 30 or 40 Paces before the Line, either in single Companies or joined, as the Service may require, in order to dislodge those Advanced Parties,
that

that the Line may not be ruffled, or interrupted in their Marching up to attack. As soon as the Granadiers have performed that Service, they should Halt 'till the Line comes up, and then join their Battalions.

A R T I C L E VII.

When a Battalion is order'd to retire, or oblig'd to it without being beat or put into Disorder; before the Word of Command, *To the Right-about*, is given, the Commanding Officer should acquaint the Men with the Reason for so doing, lest they should apprehend the Danger to be greater than it is, and thereby occasion their falling into Confusion, instead of making a Regular and Soldier-like Retreat.

The Reason for a Regiment's being order'd, or obliged to retire, may proceed from one of the following Causes.

When a Regiment has sustained a great Loss in the first Line, it may be thought proper to relieve it by one from the second Line; and therefore order'd to retire to make Room for that coming up.

When a Regiment is exposed to the Cannon of the Enemy, they may be order'd to move to the Right or Left, or to retire to a Place of more Safety.

Or when a Regiment is drawn up in some advanced Post, where it is likely to be overpower'd by Numbers, and cannot be easily sustained, they may be order'd to quit their Post and retire to one more secure; but however just the Motives may be for their Retiring, yet without they receive Orders from their Generals for it, they are not to quit their Posts, but must maintain them to the utmost of their Power.

As every Battalion is to observe the Motions of the Line, when they see the greatest Part of it retire, they are to do the same, without receiving a particular Order, from the General who commands the Line, it being impossible for him to send such Orders to every Regiment, in the Heat of Action: for which Reason, it is a fixed Rule for every Battalion to Act, as near as possible, in concert with the Whole, both in Advancing, Attacking, Pursuing, or Retiring together: however, we are not to conclude from hence, if some of the Battalions should be ruffled in the Attack and forced to give way, that the Rest are obliged to follow their Motions; neither are two or three Battalions to go on, when the Rest retire. But whatever the Motives may be for their retiring, whether those above-mentioned or others, the Commanding
Officer

Officer should always acquaint the Regiment with it, and give his Orders clear and distinct, without showing any Concern; otherwise the Men may fall into Confusion, for want of being apprized and duly prepared to perform what shall be order'd them; for if this precaution is omitted, and the Words of Command, for the changing of Ground or Retiring, are given in a Hurry, the Men are apt to perform them in the same Manner, and by that means occasion their falling into Disorder, which, in the Presence of the Enemy, may produce dangerous Consequences, by not only losing the Reputation of the Regiment, but occasioning several others to be seized with a Panick, and follow their Example.

ARTICLE VIII.

When the first Line is put into Disorder by the Enemy and forced to give way, the Battalions are to retire thro' the Intervals left between those of the Second Line; but, to prevent their being too closely pursued, the Officers in the Front should rally some of their boldest and most resolute Men, and form them into small Platoons, and Fire upon them from time to time as they retire; which will not only oblige the Enemy to advance with more Deliberation, than they would do were there none to oppose them; but it will likewise do them considerable Damage, and give their own Battalions an Opportunity of making a more safe and orderly Retreat.

The Officers who were posted in the Rear of the Battalion, as also the Major and Adjutant, must prevent their Men from retiring too fast, and endeavour to keep them in a Body, and from mixing with those of another Regiment, and to march them in the best manner they can through the Intervals of the second Line, which when they have passed, they are to Halt and form them again into Battalion, with the utmost Expedition, in order to march up and sustain the second Line.

On these Occasions, the Danger which the second Line runs of being broke by the first, is very great: For when the first Line is put into Disorder, instead of Retiring thro' the Intervals of the second Line, they frequently run directly into the Battalions, and either carry them off with them, or put them into such Confusion, that the Enemy are upon them before they have Time to repair the Disorder: For which Reason, the Officers of the first Line must use their

utmost

utmost Diligence and Care to prevent their Men from committing this Error by observing the above Directions; without which, their own Preservation is not only obstructed, but the Loss of the Whole must inevitably follow.

ARTICLE IX.

As the Case above-mentioned, that of the second Line being broke by the First when they are forced to give Way, is very common, I shall therefore offer the following Expedient, in order to prevent the Evil complained of, and what, in my Opinion, will be very conducive thereto.

As soon as the first Line gives way, the Granadiers of the Second should be order'd to advance 20 Paces in the Front, and directly opposite to the Center of their own Regiments, in order to keep the Men of the first Line clear of them, and oblige them to retire thro' the Intervals, or compel them to it by Force: but that should be used with Moderation: However, in Cases of Danger, as this is, it is better that a Few should suffer than the Whole.

By advancing the Granadiers into the Front of each Battalion, the Intervals of the second Line will be considerably enlarged, which consequently opens a greater Passage for those of the first Line to retire thro'; by which, the Danger of the second Line's being put into Disorder by the First, will be less; which Consideration alone appears to me of sufficient Weight for its being done.

But I am likewise of Opinion, that it will not only prevent the second Line from being thrown into Confusion, but prove, in some measure, a Security to the First, by putting a Check to the Enemy in their Pursuit, and either oblige them to Halt, or Advance slower, when they perceive the Granadiers of the Second advancing in Order and ready to oppose them: But whether it has this Effect or not, the other Advantages proposed by it, that of Securing the second Line from being broke or put into Disorder, and the Enlarging of the Intervals for the first Line to march thro' are sufficient Motives for doing it.

The Design of Advancing the Granadiers, being only to prevent the first Line from mixing with the Second, and to stop the Pursuit of the Enemy, by showing themselves to them, in order to facilitate the Retreat of the Men of the first Line, and to prevent a further Execution on them, they must therefore by no means engage; but as soon as the Men

of

of the first Line have gain'd the Intervals, they are to join their Regiments.

The Method, of ordering the Granadiers of the second Line to advance upon the first Line's giving way, being purely a Notion of my own, neither having seen nor heard that it was ever put in Practice, I shall not lay it down as a fix'd Rule; therefore every Body is at liberty to reject it at Pleasure.

A R T I C L E X.

Upon the first Line giving way, the Second should march up briskly to their Relief, and attack the Enemy before they have time to repair the Disorder which both the Action and the Pursuit must of course have thrown them into; by doing which, they may, with Ease, retrieve what was lost; and, in all Probability, do such Execution, that those Troops, who were before victorious, may be render'd incapable of any further Service that Day: For we may reasonably suppose, that they will be considerably diminished, and put into Disorder, by their Action with the first Line; and as their first Fire is spent, which is the one that does the most Execution, the others, from the too great Hurry in Loading, are of no great Consequence; at least in Comparison with the First: Whereas, on the other hand, the second Line being entirely fresh, in good Order, and their Arms well loaded, by being ramm'd down, and the Edge of the Enemy's Vigour somewhat blunted, we may justly conclude, that they will not be able to resist the Attack of the second Line, if perform'd like brave and resolute Soldiers: So that by the Loss which they sustain'd from the first Line, and the immediate Attack of the second, the above Supposition, that of rendering those Troops unserviceable, appears both a reasonable and a well-grounded Assertion.

But the greatest Difficulty which we have to struggle with on these Occasions, does not proceed so much from a Real as an Imaginary Danger: For when the Men of the second Line perceive those of the First give way, they are apt to form to themselves vast Idea's of the Enemy, which by working strongly on the Imagination, become so terrible, that, by the Time they approach near, they frequently betake themselves to a shameful Flight, or make but a weak Resistance: So that by being seiz'd with a false Fear, they do not only lose the Opportunity, which Fortune throws in their way, of gain-

gaining an advantage over the Enemy; but quit even the Means by which their own Lives might be saved: whereas, if they would but give themselves Time to consider, their own Reason must tell them, that fresh Troops will always prove too powerful for those who have been already engag'd; and that, if they acted as became Soldiers, they could not fail of Success in the present Case. But we cannot expect that the Majority of the Private Men will reason in this manner, since their Reflections proceed rather from what is convey'd to them by the Eye, than from the Understanding: However, I must do the Common Soldiers of our Kingdom the Justice to say, that they are as seldom guilty of the Failing here complained of, as those of any other Nation in *Europe*: And that whenever it does happen, it proceeds oft'ner from the Want of Conduct in the Officers, than Courage in the Men: For the *English* are naturally Active, Strong, Bold and Enterprizing; always ready to go on to Action; but impatient when delay'd or kept back from it. I should therefore think it adviseable, in the Case we speak of, for the second Line to move on briskly upon the First's giving way; by which means, they will not only save the Lives of a great many Men of the first Line, but may fall upon the Enemy before they can have Time to put their Battalion in Order, which is a great Point towards rendering their Success both certain and easy: But if the second Line should halt, or move but slowly on, it will give the Enemy Time to do great Execution on the Men of the First, the Sight of which may strike those of the second Line with a Panick; whereas, the Carrying them on briskly will divert their Eyes from the Sight of the Slain, or at least not suffer them to remain so long as to prove of any ill Consequence, or abate their Courage.

As there is not any one Part of the Service more difficult to manage, than what is above treated of; or where the Courage and Conduct both of the Officers and Soldiers are put to a greater Tryal; I was therefore induced to be the more particular on that Head, in order to remove the wrong Impressions, which those of the second Line generally receive, upon their seeing the first Line give way; and likewise to shew how easy it is to repair that Loss, and gain immortal Honour, if they Act as they ought to do; which Design, (tho' I am afraid very unskillfully executed) I hope will excuse the Length.

ARTICLE

A R T I C L E XI.

It being a General Remark, that the Private Soldiers, when they are to go upon Action, form their Notions of the Danger from the outward Appearance of their Officers; and according to their Looks apprehend the Undertaking to be more or less difficult: (For when they perceive the Officers dejected, or thoughtful, they are apt to conclude the Affair desperate:) In order therefore to dissipate their Fears, and fortify their Courage, the Officers should assume a serene and chearful Air; and in delivering their Orders to, and in their common Discourse with, the Men, they should address themselves to them in an affable and affectionate Manner.

When the Private Soldiers have an Opinion of the Military Capacity of their Officers, or have had Experience of their Courage, and Conduct, the above Method will effectually prevail, and create in them such an Opinion of their own Superiority over the Enemy, that they will look upon them with Contempt, and conclude them, in a manner, beat before they begin the Action. When such a Spirit is once raised in the Men, they seldom or never fail of success. But when Officers have not had Experience of the Service, or neglect the Means by which they might attain to it, (of which the Private Men are strict Observers, and from thence form their Judgment of them) the Case will not hold: For unless the Men have an Opinion of their Conduct, as well as their Courage, they won't be able to influence them in the Manner above spoken of.

A R T I C L E XII.

When the Line is marching to attack the Enemy, and that a Battalion is so straitned for want of Room that they can't march the whole in Front, by the others pressing too much upon them, or that the Ground will not admit of it, an entire Platoon should be order'd to fall back and march in the Rear of the Regiment, 'till the Interval will allow of its moving up; and in case the Battalion should engage before the Platoon can move up, it will not only prove a good Reserve, but be of considerable Service in keeping the Rest up to their Duty

A R T I C L E

A R T I C L E XIII.

Having treated at large, in the seventh Chapter, how a Battalion of Foot, when detached, is to proceed when attacked by Horse ; and as those in the Line may be liable to it during some Part of the Action, the Commanding Officer of every Battalion should be prepared to receive them according to the Method laid down in the said Chapter ; with this Difference, that when they are attacked by Horse in the Line, or in Brigade, they are not then to act separately, but in Conjunction with one another. The Method of acting in this Case, must depend on the Manner you are attacked : For if they endeavour to fall on the Flank of the Line, by its lying open to them, a Battalion or more must be wheeled back to secure it. But as this would carry me into a higher Scene than what I proposed, or am qualified for, I have therefore endeavour'd to avoid it as much as possibly I could ; and have only enter'd so far, as not to leave the Parts treated on dark or obscure, that the young Officers, for whom it is writ, may have a clear and perfect Notion of the several Parts of their Duty, in order to execute what shall be commanded them by their Superiors ; without which, it was impossible for me to make them comprehend it.

A R T I C L E XIV.

I intended to have ended this Chapter with the above Article ; but as the Infantry of *Holland*, begin the Action, when they engage in an open or champain Country, with Firing by Platoons as they advance upon the Enemy ; I believe it will not be improper to set down their Method of performing it, with the Advantages and Disadvantages that may arise from that Way of proceeding.

Upon the Line's approaching so near the Enemy that they can do Execution on them with their Fire, which I suppose to be about 60 Paces, all the Battalions make ready, and march on with Recover'd Arms : a little after which, the Platoon on the Right of each Battalion advances forward, 'till the Rear-Rank comes even with the Front-Rank of the Regiment, then Halt, Kneel, Lock, Present and Fire. As soon as the Platoons on the Right have Fired, those on the Left advance and do the same ; and so from the Right and Left of each Battalion, 'till they finish in the Center, by making

king every Platoon Fire once. This Way is call'd Alternate Firing.

In performing the Alternate Firing, the whole Line moves as slow as Foot can fall, that the Battalions may not fall into any Disorder, by the Platoons advancing to Fire; as also to give the Men Time to load their Arms before they approach too near the Enemy; which when they have done, the Line then moves on briskly; and when they come up close to the Enemy, they give them their whole Fire, as the *English* do.

By this way of proceeding, the Enemy must receive two Fires; but it has sometimes happen'd, that, by their Alternate Firing only, they have done such Execution, that the Enemy did not wait for their second Fire; or if they did, they were too much weaken'd and disorder'd by it to make their Resistance prove of any great Consequence; by which means, they have often beat those they attacked with a very considerable Loss to themselves.

When a Body of Foot can be brought to perform the Alternate Firing in a cool and regular manner, it must be own'd, that they will have a great Advantage over those they attack, if they don't act in the same Manner: But unless the Officers have a thorough Knowledge of the Service, or at least those who command the Platoons, and the Private Men be very exact in obeying the Words of Command, and expert in loading after they have fired, it will be dangerous to attempt it.

For should the Enemy by a quick and sudden Motion, advance upon them before they have all loaded (which would be right for them so to do) those who have not loaded will be apt to give Way, from a Notion of their being then defenceless; the Consequence of which may throw a Panick into the Whole, and involve them in the same Misfortune: Therefore, unless it is manag'd with great Conduct, it may very easily turn to their Disadvantage.

But the *Dutch*, from the Excellency of their Discipline, which they strictly adhere to, have surmounted these Difficulties: For as the Selling and Buying of Commissions is a Traffick (and I believe the only one) unknown, or at least not allowed of, in the Republick; their Officers are generally promoted by their Service; by which Means, the Majority of them are Men of Experience, and therefore may undertake it without running much Hazard: For as they are Judges of the Service, they will easily perceive, by the Mo-
tions

tions of the Enemy, when they should continue or desist from the Alternate Firing, and, consequently, can avoid the Danger above-mentioned, that of being attacked by the Enemy before all their Men have loaded.

We have a common Notion, that this *Sang-Froid*, or Obedient Quality in the *Dutch*, is owing chiefly to Nature, by their having a greater Proportion of Phlegm in their Constitution than the *English*, by which their Minds are not so soon agitated as ours. But I look upon this way of Reasoning, to be rather a plausible Excuse for our own Neglect, in not bringing our Men to the same Perfection of Discipline, than the Production of any natural Cause in the *Dutch*. But, allowing that Nature does contribute something towards it, yet, it is evident, Art has the greatest Share, since their Troops are generally compos'd of different Nations.

The *French* form the same Notion of us, as we do of the *Dutch*; but I am surprized that Nation should still entertain such an Opinion, considering how often we have given sufficient Reasons to convince them that we don't want a due Proportion of Fire: And I hope we shall never have an Occasion of being convinced, by such powerful Arguments, that the *Dutch* are not defective in that Point.

It is allow'd by all Nations, that the *English* possess Courage in an eminent Degree; but, at the same time, they accuse us of the Want of Patience, and consequently that which it produces, Obedience; so that by our being defective in the Latter, the great Advantages which might be reaped from the Former are often lost, or at least fall short of what might be justly expected from it. This Accusation is something severe, since by it they deprive us of an essential Quality (and, I was going to say, the most essential one) towards the Forming of a Soldier, without which, no Man can be justly-styled a Compleat one. They might say as well, that our Courage is the effect of Passion, and not Reason: And, indeed, as it generally appears to them, they have too much Colour for the Assertion, by our Neglect of Discipline; and from thence conclude, that the *English* can't be brought into it: but they are certainly mistaken in that, since none are more capable of Instruction than the *English*; and when proper means are used, neither Patience, nor Obedience are wanting in them.



C H A P. X.

Consisting of the Duty of the Infantry in Garrison.

A R T I C L E I.



HAVING treated in *Chap. 8.* of the necessary Precautions for Marching a Regiment of Foot, &c. I shall proceed to the several Parts of the Duty which is to be perform'd before they arrive at, and during their Stay, in Garrison; according to the modern Practice of the Garrisons abroad.

The Day before the Regiment is to arrive, the Commanding Officer should send the Regimental Quarter-Master, or a proper Officer, with an exact Copy of his Route or Orders to the Governour, or Commander of the Garrison, to apprise him of their coming, that he may give the necessary Orders for their being quarter'd.

When the said Orders are given, the Quarter-Master is to go along with the Barrack-Master, or Person appointed for that Purpose, to take Possession of the Caserns, or Barracks allotted for the Regiment, and to examine nicely into the Condition of the said Quarters, in order to have them repaired, if they want it, before the Regiment arrives.

He is likewise to take an exact Inventory of all the Furniture, as Beds, Tables, Stools, and the Utensils for the dressing of Victuals, &c. And what Condition they are in, that it may be inserted in the Receipt which he is to give to the Person who delivers them.

If there is no Conveniency for the Lodging the Officers with the Men, they should be billeted on the Houses which lie most contiguous to the Caserns, or Barracks of the Regiment, that they may be ready, on all Occasions to join their Men.

He

He is to make an exact Division of the Caserns, or Rooms, according to the Number of the Companies in the Regiment; placing the Number designed for each, contiguous to one another; after which they are to be put into Lots, to be drawn for when the Regiment arrives.

He is likewise to receive the Fire and Candle allotted for the Regiment, and to deliver it to the Men as soon as they are quarter'd.

ARTICLE II.

If the Troops in the Garrison are so numerous, that several Regiments must be quarter'd on the Inhabitants, for want of Caserns or Barracks to contain them; the Town should, in that Case, be divided into as many Parts as there are Regiments to be quarter'd; that the Officers and Soldiers of each Regiment may have a distinct Part to themselves, in order to their being drawn together without Loss of Time, in Case of an Alarm; as also to avoid Disputes which might arise betwixt Regiment and Regiment, by having them intermixed with one another. It will likewise be a great Ease to the Officers in the Visiting of their Mens Quarters; and to the Serjeants and Corporals in delivering of Orders to the Men, and in assembling of them for the Parade, Exercise, or the viewing of their Arms and Accoutrements.

This Way of Quartering, is call'd in the Military Phrase, Cantoning of a Town.

ARTICLE III.

When the Regiment comes near the Garrison, the Commanding Officer should send an Officer, to acquaint the Governour, that he shall arrive at such a Time, and to desire he will send Orders to the Officer of the Port-Guard to permit the Regiment to march into the Town; without which Precaution they will be kept without the Barrier, 'till the Officer of the Guard sends and receives the Governour's Orders for their Admittance.

On this Notice, the Governour commonly sends the Town-Major, or one of the Town-Adjutants, with Orders for their Entrance, and to conduct the Regiment to the Grand-Parade:

The Quarter-master, or Officer who was sent to prepare the Quarters, should meet the Regiment at some distance from the Town, to acquaint the Colonel with his Proceedings; as also to find out some convenient Place near the Town for the Regiment to draw up before they enter, and to conduct them to it. This small Halt is only to give the Men time to roll their Cravats, cock their Hats, and put themselves in the best Order they can, that they may appear in a decent and Soldier-like Manner upon their entering the Town.

While the Men are putting themselves in Order, the Officer's Billets may be distributed amongst them, which is commonly done by Lot, to avoid shewing any Partiality; that is, those of each Rank are to draw with one another. The Reason why I think that the Officers Billets should be distributed before they march into the Town, is, that they may send their Baggage directly to their Quarters, and not lose time by deferring of it 'till they come to the Parade; but this may or may not be done, as the Colonel shall think proper.

As soon as the Men have put themselves in Order, and the Files are compleated, they may then pursue their March; and when they come near the Barrier, all the Officers, except the Colonel, Major and Adjutant, must dismount, and march at the Head of their Divisions with their Half-Pikes in their Hands, and the Ensigns with the Colours.

It is a standing Rule, that when the Officers are order'd to dismount, and the Ensigns to take the Colours, the Drummers are to fall into their Divisions, and beat a March, unless the Service may require their being silent; in which Case, Orders are given accordingly.

The Colonel, or Commanding Officer, marches always on Horseback at the Head of the Regiment; but when the Governour (or a Superior Officer) is to see the Regiment march by, as soon as he has Notice of the Governour's Approach, he is to dismount, and march with his Half-Pike in his Hand, and pay him the Complement due to his Character in the Army.

ARTICLE IV.

As soon as the Town-Major, or the Officer appointed to act for him, has Notice from the Centinels that the Regiment is in View, he should take a Serjeant and a File of Men,

Men, and go to the outermost Barrier, and order one of the Draw-bridges to be drawn up after him, 'till he has examin'd the original Orders or Route of the Regiment, lest the Enemy, by having Notice of the March of the Regiment, should, under that Pretence, endeavour to surprize the Town.

The Town-Major and the Party from the Guard are to remain within the Barrier; and when the Regiment approaches near it, he is to order the Gate to be shut; upon which the Colonel should halt the Regiment, and send the Major with the Original Order for his Marching to that Garrison, to be perused by the Town-Major, who is to receive it over the Barrier; and when he finds it authentick, and has discovered the Regiment to be Friends, he then orders the Gate of the Barrier to be open'd, the Draw-bridge to be let down, and the Regiment to march in.

When the Colonel comes up to the Barrier, the Town-Major is to return him the Route or Order, and then conduct the Regiment to the Grand-Parade, where they are to draw up in Battalion; after which, the Colonel, attended by the Town-Major, is to wait upon the Governour, to whom he is to deliver the original Order for his Marching to that Garrison, and at the same time acquaint him with the State of the Regiment, and deliver him a Return of it in Writing.

During the Time the Colonel is at the Governour's, the Regiment may order their Arms; but no Man must be suffer'd to stir out of the Ranks.

After the Governour has perused the Route and the Return of the Regiment, and asked such further Questions concerning it, as he shall think proper, he then orders the Town-Major to wait upon the Colonel back to the Regiment, and to read the General Orders of the Garrison to the Officers and Soldiers, that they may not commit a Crime through Ignorance; and then to conduct the Regiment to the Alarm Post assign'd them, and afterwards to their Caserns, Barracks, or Cantonment, where he is to dismiss them.

Upon the Colonel's returning from the Governour's, he is to be received with rested Arms, and all the Officers at their Posts with their Half-Pikes in their Hands; which Ceremony is always due to a Colonel from his own Regiment.

It is a standing Rule, than whenever the Complement of Rested Arms is paid to any person, or from one Body of Troops to another, it is always to be done from shoulder'd Arms.

The Colonel then orders the Men to Shoulder, and the Battalion to be told off into three Grand-Divisions; after which the Flank Grand-Divisions to be wheel'd to the Right and Left inwards, and the Granadiers to draw up opposite to, and facing the Center Grand-Division. This being done, he commands them to keep a profound Silence; and the Town-Major being placed in the Center of the Square, reads the General Orders of the Garrison, and delivers an Extract of the same in Writing to the Major, that each Officer may have a Copy of them.

After this, they are to be reduced into Battalion; then the Town-Major conducts them to their Regimental Parade, from thence to their Alarm Post, and afterwards to the Quarters assign'd them, where (after a proper Guard is appointed for the Security of the Quarters, and for relieving the Colonel's Sentry, and the Colours lodg'd) they are to be dismissed.

It is a General Rule for every Regiment to furnish their Proportion of Men to the Town-Guard the Day after they arrive: but when that can be dispensed with, it would be proper to give them that Day to clean their Arms and Accoutrements: However, this depends on the Governour, whether he will or will not allow of it.



CHAP. XI.

The usual Guards in a Garrison, with Directions for Forming the Parade.

ARTICLE I.



HE Guards are compos'd of a Detachment of Men taken from each Regiment, who are to mount daily for the Security of the Place.

The Number of Men who mount daily, must depend on the Strength of the Troops in Garrison, and the Number of Posts to be guarded; according to which the Duty is calculated: However, it is a fix'd Maxim in most of the Garrisons Abroad, to calculate the Duty in such a Manner, that the Soldiers shall mount Guard every third Day; and tho' the Troops should be very numerous, they never suffer them to be above three Days off, and the fourth on Duty. This is done by Mounting of more Guards than usual, or by adding to the Number of each Guard.

The Main-Guard is generally compos'd of a Captain, 2 Subalterns, 2 Serjeants, 2 Corporals, 2 Drummers, and 48 or 50 Private Soldiers.

Each Port has a Subaltern, Serjeant, Corporal, Drummer, and 25 or 30 Private Soldiers.

Where there are Outworks of Consequence, such as Redoubts, detach'd Bastions, &c. Officers Guards mount commonly in them; but more particularly so in Frontier Garrisons; otherwise Serjeants Guards may be sufficient.

The Citadel has generally a Garrison for its own Security, compos'd of an entire Regiment or more; in which case, those Troops do the Duty of the Citadel only, without interfering with that of the Town, or furnishing any Men for its Guard.

In Frontier Towns, they commonly mount another Guard, call'd the Reserve, being much in the same Nature as a Picquet

quet-Guard in Camp, which is to be ready to march whenever the Governour shall order them.

The Reserve Guard consists commonly of a Captain, 2 Subalterns, 2 Serjeants, 2 Corporals, 2 Drummers, and 50 Men, or a greater Number, if requisite.

The Time of mounting the Town-Guards, is commonly at eight, nine, or ten in the Morning: However, that depends on the Governour.

A R T I C L E II.

The Men who mount the Guard, are to assemble at their Captains Quarters, to be viewed by them, or their Subaltern, to see that their Arms, Ammunition and Accoutrements are in good order, and that they are clean and well dressed; after which, the orderly Corporals are to march them to the Regimental Parade, and deliver them over to the Adjutant, who is to draw them up according to the Seniority of their Companies, and to see that each Company has furnished the Number appointed. He must likewise size them as soon as they are formed, which should never be omitted, even in a Detachment of 12 Men, since it will add vastly to their Appearance.

As soon as the Detachments from the several Companies, are drawn up, the Men sized, and the Files compleated, the Adjutant and the Officers of the Regiment, who mount that Day, are to view the Mens Arms, Ammunition, Cloaths and Accoutrements, that there may be nothing wanting when they come to the Grand-Parade.

By this Inspection, the Adjutant will know if the Officers of the several Companies have complied with their Duty, in viewing their Men before they were brought to the Regimental Parade; and when he finds that they have been remiss, by the Men not being clean and well dressed, or any thing wanting, he is to acquaint the Colonel with it, that they may be reprimanded for their Neglect.

In some Garrisons it is the Custom to have the Men, who mount, on the Regimental Parade two Hours before the Beating of the Assembly; in order to be exercised apart by their own Adjutants. In others, they are to be at their Regimental Parade only half an Hour before the Assembly; in which case, the Whole are exercised together on the Grand-Parade by the eldest Officer who mounts the Guard.

It may be done in this manner, when the Garrison is composed of Troops of one Nation, and that the Number who mount do not exceed 600 Men; but when it is composed of different Nations, or that the Numbers are too great to be exercised together, the former Method must be followed, that of the several Corps being exercised a-part, on their Regimental Parade, by their own Adjutants.

ARTICLE III.

The Drum-Major, with all the Drummers of that Regiment which gives a Captain to the Main-Guard, and the Drummers of the several Regiments, who are ordered to mount the Guard, are to beat the Assembly together.

They are all to parade at the Head of the Main-Guard, half an Hour before the Time of beating; and when the Hour appointed is come, the Drum-Major is to form them into Ranks, and placing himself at the Head of them, orders them to beat the Assembly, which they are to do quite round the Grand-Parade, and back to the Main-Guard; after which the Drummers, who mount, separate, and march to their Regimental Parade, beating the Assembly the whole Way; but the Drum-Major, with the others who don't mount, beat back to the Grand Parade, where they are to remain 'till the Guards are marched off.

As soon as the Drummers return to their Regimental Parade, the Officers, who mount the Guard, are to march their Men, to the Grand-Parade, where they are to draw up, not by Seniority of Regiments, but according to Lot, which the Adjutants are to draw for, before the Detachments arrive, that they may show them where they are to draw up.

The Main-Guard is always composed of the Officers and Soldiers of one Regiment, each taking it in his Turn, and beginning with the Eldest.

The Regiment, which mounts the Main-Guard, draws up on the Right of the Parade; the Detachments of the other Regiments having no fixed Post, are to draw up according to the Lot drawn for them.

The Reason why they draw for their Posts on the Parade, appears to me as follows.

Should the Regiments have a fixed Post on the Parade, by drawing up constantly by Seniority of Regiments, the Men could then know what Guard they were to mount, and by

that Means have it in their Power to carry on a treacherous Correspondence with the Enemy, for the Delivering up of a Post or Outwork of Consequence; but as their Posts are drawn for daily, they can't know where their Lot will fall? the Uncertainty of which will keep them out of Temptation, and effectually prevent any Design of that Nature; for which Reason, neither Officer nor Soldier is allowed to change his Guard with another: Which Maxim, of the Regiments drawing for their Posts on the Parade, and the not suffering of the Officers and Soldiers to change their Guards with one another, I presume, is founded on the sad Experience which a contrary Proceeding had produced.

When the Detachments from the several Regiments are drawn up on the Grand-Parade, the Serjeants who mount are to form themselves in a Rank entire, opposite to their own Detachments, facing the Men, and four Paces advanc'd, in order to be posted to the Guards, as the Town-Major tells them off.

A R T I C L E IV.

The Town-Major begins on the Right to form the Guards; and as each is told off, he posts the Serjeants to them, taking them first from the Right. As each Guard is told off, and the Serjeant or Serjeants posted to them, he commands the Men to order their Arms, in which Position they are to remain 'till order'd to shoulder.

As the Serjeants are posted to the Guards, they are to fall into the Intervals on the Left of the Front-Rank of their Guards; but where there are two to one Guard, the other is to fall into the Rear of it, in order to prevent the Men from leaving the Ranks, or changing their Guards, which those in the Front are likewise to have an Eye to.

When the Guards are form'd, the Drum-Major, with all the Drummers who assembled at the Main-Guard, are to beat the Assembly along the Head of the Guards, beginning at the Center, and marching to the Right, from thence to the Left, and back again to the Center, where they are to finish.

During the Time the Assembly is Beating, all the Officers are to draw for their Guards, those who mount the Main-Guard and Reserve excepted; after which they are to give in their Names with the Regiments they belong to, and the Guard they have drawn, to the Town-Major, who enters them

them in a Book. The Names of the Officers who mount the Main-Guard are to be given by their Adjutant, to be entered with the Rest.

The Reserve being a distinct Duty from that of the Town-Guards, it is always to be drawn up on the Left of the Parade, or form'd after the rest are marched off. It is compos'd of an equal Number of Men from each Regiment, and a Roll of Duty kept apart for the Officers.

When a Guard of Horse mounts, it is to be drawn up on the Right of the Main-Guard, leaving an Interval between them.

As soon as the Town-Major has enter'd all the Officers Names in his Book, he is to order a Drummer to beat a long Ruffle; at which, the Officers are to take their Half-Pikes in their Hands, and Place themselves at the Head of their Guards, facing the Men; the Serjeants are at the same time to fall into their Divisions, and the Drummers to place themselves between the First and Second Ranks of their Guards.

After this, he orders the Drummers to beat three Flams; at the First of which, the Men are to rest their Firelocks; at the second they are to poize; and at the third, to shoulder. He then orders a short Ruffle to be beat; at which the Officers are to Face to the Left-about to their proper Front, and immediately Dress in a Line.

When the whole Parade is to be exercised together, the eldest Officer, who mounts, is to give the Words of Command, and to proceed in the same Manner as is directed from the Exercising of a Battalion, by opening the Files, ordering the Officers to take their Posts in the Rear; but to go no further than the Manual Exercise; after which, he orders the Officers to take their Posts in the Front, and closes the Files. If the eldest Officer has not a Voice strong enough, or any other Impediment, upon his speaking to the Town-Major, I presume, he will excuse him, and order an Adjutant of one of the Regiments to do it, or order it to be done by Beat of Drum.

As soon as the Exercise is over, the Town-Major orders the Guards to March off, one after another, beginning on the Right; but no Guard is to move till he says to every Officer who Commands a Guard, *March*. The Reason for this is, that he may have Time to View every Guard distinctly, to see if they are in Order, and that they have their Complement of Men.

When

When the Main-Guard is posted on the Parade, all the others march off before it.

As soon as the Guards of Foot are marched off from the Parade, the Guard of Horse is then to march; but it is not to move 'till all the Foot are marched.

This must proceed from an old Custom, that of the Foot having the Rank in Garrison, and the Horse in the Field; by which the youngest Captain of Foot commanded all the Captains of Horse, while in Garrison; and the youngest Captain of Horse commanded all the Captains of Foot in the Field, without any Regard to the Dates of their Commissions. But that Custom is now abolished, and every Officer commands according to Seniority, whether of Horse, Foot, or Dragoons; however, that Custom of the Foot-Guards marching off first, still subsists; because they are not only more numerous, but the immediate Security of the Place is committed to their Charge: Whereas the Guard of Horse is only employed to patrol during the Night in the Streets, and to reconnoitre the Avenues leading to the Town at the Opening of the Gates, to discover if the Troops of the Enemy are near, that the Town may not be surprized.

When the Drummers of the Main-Guard, or that which marches off first, beat a March, all the Drummers of the other Guards are to do the same.

As soon as the Guards are marched off, the Town-Major should wait upon the Governour, or Commander of the Garrison, and acquaint him with it, and know if he has any Commands for the Garrison; after which, he returns to the Parade and dismisses the Adjutants, or sends them Notice by an orderly Serjeant, that there are no further Commands for them at that Time; 'till which they are not to leave the Parade.

The Orderly Serjeant and Corporal of each Company are to attend the Parade every Morning, and to remain there 'till the Adjutants are dismissed, that if any Orders are to be delivered, they may be ready to receive them.

In all the *French* Garrisons, as soon as the Parade is formed, and the Guards ready to march, the Town-Major acquaints the Governour, or Commandant, with it, who is obliged to come and see the Guards march off; but in the Garrisons of *Holland*, the Governours lie under no such Injunction, tho' they frequently do it.

In Garrisons, which are remote from the Enemy, the Orders are generally delivered out immediately after the Guards
are

are marched off from the Parade ; but in Frontier Towns they are never given out to the Adjutants 'till the Gates are shut.

When the King, a Prince of the Blood, the Captain-General, or a Person of Authority, who is entitled to a Guard, comes into a Garrison, the eldest Regiment is always to mount a proper Guard on him during his Stay there, without Rollings with the others, or having any Allowance for it in the Town Duty ; being to furnish the same Number of Men for the Parade, Reserve, and Detachments as before : This is the Custom Abroad ; but I presume it is meant only when such great Persons stay a Night or two ; for should they continue any considerable Time, the Duty would fall too hard upon one Regiment ; which Rule in my Opinion, may be very justly broke thro' by either allowing them for it in the other Duties, or by ordering each Regiment to take that Guard in its Turn ; the latter of which appears the most equitable, because the Town-Guards and Detachments are much more fatiguing than those mounted on great Persons.

ARTICLE V.

The Officers, who are to be relieved, are to order their Men to stand to their Arms as soon as they hear the Drum of those who are coming to relieve them ; and when they come in Sight, they are to order their Men to Shoulder their Arms. When the new Guard approaches very near, the Officer of the Old One orders his Men to rest their Firelocks, and the Drummers to beat a March.

The Officer who comes to relieve, is to draw up his Guard opposite to the old one, in the same Manner that they are, whether six or three Deep, or in a Rank entire ; and when the Ranks are dressed ; he then orders his Men to rest their Firelocks ; in which Position both Guards are to remain 'till those who mount in the Outworks have marched past them, which they are to do between the two Guards, provided they are the Port-Guards, otherwise they can't interfere with those sent to the Outworks. After this, the Officers advance towards one another, paying the usual Ceremony with their Hats, and the Officer who is to be relieved, delivers all the Orders relating to the Guards to the Officer who comes to relieve him, acquainting him with the Number of Sentries by Day and by Night, what Patrols, &c. The Serjeants and Corporals of the Old Guard deliver their Orders

Orders to those of the New at the same Time ; and when that is over, the Men of both Guards should be order'd to Shoulder ; the Corporal of the New Guard is to number his Men, and to draw out the Number of Sentries who are then to be posted, forming them into Ranks, and being conducted by the Corporal of the old Guard, march with them to Relieve the Sentries. They go first to the Sentry who is posted the furthest from the Guard, and Relieve him, and so one after another 'till they end with him at the Guard-Room Door.

The Corporal of the new Guard, when he Relieves the Sentries, is to examine whether the Sentry-Boxes, Platforms, Carriages of the Cannon, Palisades, &c. are in Order, or damag'd. If he finds any of those things damaged, he is not to Relieve that Sentry who had the Charge of them 'till the Town-Major is acquainted with it, otherwise he must be answerable for the Things so damag'd, or lost ; but when he finds every thing in Order, he is to Relieve the Sentry. The Corporals are likewise to be attentive when the Sentries are delivering their Orders to one another, lest they should omit some part of them.

As soon as the Sentries are reliev'd, the Corporal of the old Guard returns with those relieved, forms them on the Left of the Guard, and acquaints his Officer with it. The Corporal of the new Guard returns at the same time, and acquaints the Officer with his Proceedings, and whether he has reliev'd all the Sentries, or not ; and if not, the Reasons for it, that the Town-Major may be acquainted with it.

Where there are two Corporals on a Guard, one of them is to take the Charge of the Guard-Room, which he is to have deliver'd over to him clean, and the several Utensils belonging to it in good Order, by the Corporal of the old Guard, which may be done while the others are Relieving the Sentries ; but where there is but one Corporal, it must be done either before or after the Sentries are reliev'd ; the Corporal must take an exact Account of what Things are deliver'd to him, and the Condition they are in, since he must answer for what are lost or spoilt through Carelessness.

It being a Custom for the Drummers to take care of the Officers Guard-Room, with all the Utensils belonging to it, and to keep it clean, the Drummer of the old Guard is to deliver it over to the Drummer of the new One in proper Order.

When these Things are done, the Officer of the old Guard is to order his Men to Rest their Firelocks, then Club ; after

which,

which, to Form their Ranks to the Right or Left, according as they are to march from the Place they are drawn up in, and then March off, the Drummer beating a Troop; for which Reason, when a Guard dismounts, it is called, *Trooping off a Guard*. When the Men of the old Guard Club their Firelocks, those of the new One are to be order'd by their Officer to Rest, and his Drummer is to beat a March, when the other beats the Troop.

When the Officer of the old Guard has marched his Guard about an hundred Yards, he may then dismiss the Men, first halting, and then dismiss them with the Ruff of a Drum.

The Captain of the Main-Guard is to march to the Grand Parade, and draw up his Men before he dismiss them.

Those who Command the Guards in the Outworks, are, when Reliev'd, to march their Guards an hundred Paces within the Gates before they dismiss them.

When a Guard which Mounts with Colours is reliev'd, or order'd to be dismiss'd, the Men are not to club their Firelocks, but to March with shoullder'd Arms, and the Drummers to beat a March to the Grand Parade, and draw up; after which, the Officer who commands the Guard is to send the Ensign to Lodge the Colours with a proper Detachment to Guard them, and to remain on the Parade with the Rest 'till he returns with the Detachment; after this he orders them to Club their Firelocks, and then dismisses them; but if the Place where the Colours are to be Lodged is at a considerable Distance, or that the Weather is very bad, he may then order the Ensign to dismiss his Detachment as soon as he has lodged the Colours; in which Case he dismisses the rest, as soon as the Colours are marched out of sight.

As soon as the old Guards are marched off, the new Guards are to be drawn up on the Ground where the old Ones stood; after which, the Officers may order the Men to Ground their Arms, or place them against the Wall of the Guard-Room, or lodge them in it, according as the Conveniency of the Place, or the Weather will permit.

When a Sentry has not been reliev'd by the Corporal, for the Reasons already mention'd, that of suffering any Thing to be lost, &c. the Officer of the Guard is to send the Corporal to acquaint the Town-Major with it; on which, he is to send one of the Town Adjutants to enquire into the Damages done, and order the Sentry to be relieved, and sent to

M

the

the Provost Marshal's, or Place appointed for Prisoners, 'till he can be try'd in a regular Manner for the same.

When the Guard-Rooms are damaged, or the Utenfils belonging to them lost, or that the Gates of the Town, and Barriers, or the Draw-bridges are spoil'd, or out of order, the Officer is not to Relieve the Guard 'till he has sent to the Town-Major to acquaint him with it, otherwise he will be obliged to repair those Damages.

ARTICLE VI.

The Manner of Relieving the Sentries, with Directions how they are to behave on their Posts.

When the Corporal goes to Relieve the Sentries, as soon as he comes within six Paces of the Sentry who is to be reliev'd, he orders his Men to Halt, and then to Rest their Firelocks; the Sentry who is to be relieved is to Rest his Arms at the same time; the Corporal then orders the first who is to go on Duty, to Relieve the Sentry; upon which he Recovers his Arms, and Advances within a Pace of the Sentry, then Halts, and Rest his Arms, and receives the Orders, relating to that Post, from the Sentry who is to be reliev'd; to which the Corporals are to give Attention, lest some Part of the Orders might be omitted. As soon as they have deliver'd their Orders, they both Recover their Arms and exchange Places, then rest their Arms again. This being done, the Corporal orders the other Men to Shoulder, at which the two Sentries do the same, and the Sentry who is relieved, falls in the Rear of those who are going to Relieve; then the Corporal Marches to the next Post.

If the Sentries are required to have their Bayonets fixed, when the Orders are delivered, they are to Poize their Firelocks, Rest on their Arms, and he who Relieves draws his Bayonet, and fixes it, and he that is relieved unfixes his Bayonet and returns it; then they recover their Arms, exchange Places, and perform all the other Motions above mention'd.

All Sentries are to be Vigilant on their Posts; neither are they to Sing, smoke Tobacco, nor to suffer any Noise to be made near them. They are not to sit down, lay their Arms out of their Hands, or sleep; but to keep moving about their Posts if the Weather will allow of it.

They

They are to have a watchful Eye over the Things committed to their Charge, and not to suffer any of them to be remov'd, or taken away, 'till they have Orders from the Corporal of the Guard for it.

They are not to suffer any one to touch or handle their Arms; or in the Night-time, to come within the Reach of them.

They are not to suffer any Light to remain, or any Fire to be made near their Posts in the Night-time. Neither is any Sentry to be reliev'd, nor removed from his Post, but by the Corporal of the Guard.

No Body is to strike or abuse a Sentry on his Post; but when he has committed a Crime, he is to be reliev'd, and then punish'd, according to the Rules and Articles of War.

When a Sentinel is taken ill on his Post, or that the Cold is so great that he can't support himself under it, he is to call the Corporal of the Guard, and acquaint him with it, in order to his being reliev'd; but when the Sentry, so taken, is at too great a Distance to be heard by the Corporal, the next Sentry to him is to Pass the Word for the Corporal of the Guard, and so from one to another, 'till it comes to the Guard; for which Reason, it is a standing Rule to post Sentries within Call of one another, particularly on the Ramparts of a Town.

When Sentries have Orders to stop People in the Night-time, in order to their being examin'd, or to make Rounds, stand; as soon as they come within twenty Paces of them, they are to Challenge boldly, *Who comes there?* If the Persons so challeng'd don't answer, but approach, the Sentries are to Make Ready their Arms, and Challenge a second time; and if they still advance without answering, they are to Cock their Firelocks, and Challenge a third time; and if they advance after that without answering, the Sentries are then to Fire, and return to their Guard, if they find it necessary; otherwise they may continue at their Posts, and Load again immediately; but when the Persons challeng'd answer, the Sentries are to order them to Stand, and call the Serjeant of the Guard.

A Sentry on his Post in the Night, is to know no Body but by the Counter-Sign. When he Challenges, and is answer'd, *Relief*, he is to order them to Stand, by saying, *Stand Relief, advance Corporal*; upon which the Corporal Halts the Men, and advances alone within a Yard of the Sentry's Firelock, (first ordering his Men to Rest their Firelocks, on which the Sentry does the same, as is directed in the Re-

lieving of Sentries) and gives him the Counter-Sign, taking care that no other Person shall hear it; after which, the Relief goes in Manner before-mentioned.

All Sentries, except those at the Guard-Room Door, when they Challenge, and are answered *Round*, or *Patrol*, they are to say, *Pass Round or Patrol*, and to Rest their Firelocks 'till they are passed, and not suffer them to come within the Reach of their Arms.

When two Sentries are placed at one Post, which is always done at advanced Posts, they are to be very attentive, and keep a profound Silence; and when they hear any Noise, such as the March of Horse or Foot, or any Number of Men approaching towards them, one of them is to return immediately to the Guard, and to acquaint the Officer with it, but without any Noise, and then go back to his Post. The Sentry who remain'd is to listen with great Attention to the Noise, in order to discover what it was, and to make his Firelock Ready, and stand upon his Guard, that he may not be taken by Surprise; and when any Person or Persons come near him, and won't answer or stand when he has challeng'd and commanded them to do it, according to the foregoing Directions, he is to Fire, and return to his Guard.

The Sentry at the Guard-Room Door is to Challenge briskly when any Person comes within twenty Paces of him; and if he is answered *Round*, he is then to say, *Stand Round*, and Rest his Firelock, and call the Serjeant of the Guard. He is not to suffer the Round to approach after that, 'till order'd by his Officer.

When an Officer goes to Visit the Sentries, the Sentry is to Challenge when he comes within ten or twelve Paces of his Post; and when he is answer'd, *the Visit*, he is to say, *Stand Visit, advance one with the Counter-Sign*; upon which he Rests his Arms, and permits the Person, who is to give the Counter-Sign, to approach within a Pace of the Muzzle of his Firelock, that none else may discover the Counter-Sign; therefore all Counter-Signs for Foot ought to be a Name, Word or Number, and that to be spoke very near, and no louder than is necessary for the Sentry to hear; it being easy in the Night for the Enemy to approach undiscovered, near enough to distinguish a Hem, Whistle, or Slap on the Pouch, should they be given for Counter-Signs, and by that means be able to impose on the Sentry and seize him, and after that Surprise the Guard.

A Sen-

A Sentry who is found Sleeping on his Post, or attempts to deliver it up to the Enemy, or suffers it to be surprized thro' Negligence, is to be punished with Death; therefore all Sentrys must be very alert, that they may avoid falling into these enormous Crimes, since the Articles of War, and the constant Practice of all Nations, make it absolutely Death to those who shall be found Guilty of them.

When the Counter-Sign is chang'd during the Night, the Sentrys are to take it from none but the Corporal of the Guard.

When a Town is besieg'd, or that they are apprehensive of the Enemy's making some Attempt to Surprize them, it is customary for the Sentry posted on the Ramparts to call out, every Half-Hour, with a loud Voice, *All is well*; when this is ordered, the Town-Major is to assign the Post it shall begin at, and which Way it shall go round. Upon the First's saying, *All is well*, the next to him is to say the same, and so from one to another 'till it comes quite round to him who began it. The Design of this is to keep the Sentrys alert on their Posts, and to prevent their falling asleep. The Sentrys at the Guard-Room Doors are to be very attentive to the Word (*All is well*) coming round; and when they find that it does not come punctually to the Time, they are to acquaint their Officers with it, who are to send a Corporal with a File of Men round their Sentrys, lest any of them should have fallen asleep, or quitted their Posts, in order to find out where it stopp'd, that the Offender may be brought to Punishment.

The Word going round in this Manner, is never used but in time of Danger; or now and then to instruct young or unexperienced Troops in their Duty: For when Things of this Nature, which should be only practised on proper Occasions, are constantly used, when there is no Necessity for them they grow so familiar 'till at last they fall into Contempt, and, perhaps, are neglected when there is a real Occasion for their being punctually observed. I am therefore of Opinion, that it should not be used, but for the Reasons above-mentioned, that of real Danger, and to instruct young Soldiers.

I believe what I have already said, relating to the Duty of a Sentry on his Post, will be sufficient to give any one a full and clear Idea of it: However, I don't pretend to say that this is all, since particular Cases will require particular Orders; and without they are mention'd, it is impossible to

give the necessary Directions; but whatever Orders a Sentry shall receive, whether those above-mentioned, or others, he is to execute them with the utmost Exactness, since the Safety of an Army, or the Preservation of a Town, may often depend on the due Performance of his Orders.



CHAP XII.

Consisting of Instructions to the Officers on Guard, from the Time of Mounting 'till they are Relieved; with the Manner of going and receiving Rounds, and sending Patrols; with the Design of them.

ARTICLE I.



NO Officer is to leave his Guard during the Time he is on his Duty, which in Garrison never exceeds twenty-four Hours, but must send for what he wants.

He must not suffer above two Men at a time to leave the Guard, and then only for their Victuals and Drink; when they return, he may allow two more to go off on the same Account; they should be allowed no more Time than what is absolutely Necessary, that each may have his Turn; which if they transgress, the Officer should punish them for it at their Return. But lest some of the Men should ask Leave just before they are to go Sentry, in order to escape or avoid their Duty, the Officer of the Guard should always send for the Corporal before he gives a Man Leave, that he may inform him when he is to go Sentry; as also to order the Serjeant or Corporal to set down their Names, with the Hour they went, and the Time allowed them; when they return they are to acquaint their Officer with it, that he may know whether they have been punctual or not.

The Officers of the Port-Guards are to examine all Strangers who come into the Garrison, taking their Names in Writing,

Writing, with the Place where they are to lodge, and the Time they intend to stay; which they are to mention in the next Report they send to the Captain of the Main-Guard; but when a Person of distinction comes into the Town, the Officer of the Port-Guard is to send an Account of it in Writing immediately, by an orderly Man, to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to acquaint the Governour, or Commandant, with it as soon as he can. When any Person comes into the Town, whom they have Reason to suspect, by his not being able to give a good Account of himself, the Officer is to send him to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to secure him 'till he can acquaint the Governour with it, in order to his being further examined.

ARTICLE II.

The Officers of the Port-Guards, are to send a Report Night and Morning, in Writing, to the Captain of the Main-Guard, in which they are to insert the Names of all Strangers who have come into the Town, the Place where they lodge, and the Time they intend to remain, and of those who go out of the Town; as also of every Thing that shall happen on their Guard; which Reports are to be sign'd by the Officers, specifying the Day of the Month, and the Port it came from, and to be sent by the Serjeants who go for the Keys to shut and open the Gates.

All the other Guards, except the Reserye, are to send their Reports in the same Manner, and at the same Time, to the Captain of the Main-Guard. These are called the Ordinary Reports, as being sent constantly Night and Morning at a fixed Time.

Those which are called Extraordinary Reports, are only sent when any thing extraordinary happens on or near a Guard, or a Person of Distinction comes into Town, that the Captain of the Main-Guard may acquaint the Governour with it immediately.

As soon as the Captain of the Main-Guard receives the Night Reports, he is to write them over fair in a Sheet of Paper, or more, if requisite, putting the Report of each Guard distinctly by itself, with the Officer's Name who commands it; after which he is to sign it; and when the Gates are shut, and the Orders are given out, he is to wait on the Governour, give him the Parole, and deliver him the Report of the Whole.

The Captain of the Main-Guard is to enter the Morning Reports in the same manner, with every Thing that has occur'd during the Night, either relating to the several Rounds or Patrols, with the Time each went and finish'd, that it may be known whether the Officers have complied with their Orders or not; as also what Prisoners are on the Main-Guard, with the Reasons of their being committed; and whether Soldiers, Townsmen, or Strangers taken up on Suspicion. In short, he is to put every Thing down which has happen'd between the Evening Report and the Time of Relief, in order to give a faithful and exact Report to the Governour, which he is to do as soon as he is relieved by giving him the Parole first in his Ear, and then deliver him the Report.

When any thing happens on any of the Guards between the Morning Report and the Time of Relief, such as Strangers coming into Town, &c. the Officers are to send an Account of it to the Captain of the Main-Guard, that it may be entered with the rest, before he delivers it to the Governour.

When any of the Rounds neglect going, or don't perform it at the Hour appointed, the Officers of those Guards to which the Round or Rounds have not gone, or gone after the Time directed, are to mention it in the Morning Report to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to enter it in that which he gives to the Governour, that the Reason for such Neglect may be enquired into.

The Reserve-Guard being only a Number of Men kept in Readiness, to act either in the Town, or to March out of it, as the Governour shall have an occasion for their Service; the Officer who commands it, is therefore to receive no Orders but from the Governour, or the Town-Major, by his Directions, which he is to be ready to execute at a Minute's Warning. He is therefore to keep no more Sentries than what are necessary for the Security of his Guard, and only to Patrole near his own Guard-Room: Neither is he under the Direction of the Captain of the Main-Guard, nor to make any Report to him; but when he is reliev'd he is to wait on the Governour, give him the Parole, and deliver him a Report of his Guard in Writing, sign'd.

A R T I C L E III.

The Officers of the Port-Guards are to keep the Barriers shut, and the Draw-Bridges up, on Sundays and Holidays, during

during the Time of Divine Service ; as also every Day from Twelve a Clock 'till One.

They are likewise to shut the Barriers, and draw up the Draw-bridges, at the Approach of any Party of armed Men, tho' it should be Detachments of their own Garrison, and acquaint the Captain of the Main-Guard with it immediately, that he may wait on the Governour to receive his Orders for their Admittance, without which they must not be permitted to come into the Town. One Officer or a Serjeant may be allowed Entrance, to shew the Order or Route, that the Governour may have an exact Account of them.

When a Detachment, or a Number of arm'd Men, enters the Town, the Officer of the Port-Guard is to have his Men under Arms : And if it is a Detachment commanded by an Officer, the Men of the Port-Guard are to Rest their Arms, and the Drummer to beat a March, provided the Party which enters beats a March ; but if it is only a Serjeant's Party, the Guard is to remain Shoulder'd, and the Officer remains at the Head of it without his Half-Pike in his Hand. This may be look'd upon, by some, as too great a Complement from an Officers Guard to a Serjeant's Party ; but they must know that it is not done by Way of Respect to those who enter, but for the Security of the Town ; lest the Enemy, by having forged or procured a Route or Order, might send such a Party to seize the Gate, while the Body lay concealed at some little Distance, and ready to advance on the first Signal. It is therefore a standing Rule in all Garrisons, for the Port-Guards to be under Arms, when any Number of armed Men march into the Town, though they belong to the Garrison.

When a Fire breaks out in a Garrison, the Officer of the Port-Guards are to put their Men immediately under Arms, and order the Barriers to be shut, and the Draw-Bridges drawn up, and to keep them so 'till the Fire is extinguished.

This Precaution is absolutely necessary in Frontier Garrisons, otherwise Towns might be easily surprized, should the Gates be left open on such an occasion ; it being natural for every Body to run to that Part which is set on fire ; which might be contrived on purpose by the Enemy, by procuring proper Emissaries to do it, and who, by lodging Troops, at a time appointed, within a proper Distance of the Town, might, during the Consternation which always attends such Accidents, seize one of the Gates, and by that means possess

sefs themselves of the Town; but by the shutting of the Barriers, and raising the Draw-bridges, that Danger will be effectually prevented, and leave them no Room for such an Undertaking, at least with any Hopes of Success.

When a Riot, or tumultuous Assembly, happens near a Port, the Officer of that Guard is to use the same Precautions, in shutting of the Barrier, drawing up the Bridges, and keeping his Men under Arms, 'till it is over, for the Reasons above mentioned; but when these Things happen to be only some small Disorder, occasioned by a Quarrel, he may send a Serjeant and a File of Men to quell it.

When a Riot, happens in those Parts of the Town which are at a Distance from the Ports, the Captain of the Main-Guard is to send Parties, both from his own and the Horse-Guard, to disperse the Mob, and seize the Offenders.

In all Frontier Garrisons, it is necessary to double the Guards on Market-days, and to examine strictly all covered Waggon, or those loaded with Hay or Straw; as also Boats, Barges or Ships, and every Thing in which Men, Arms, or Ammunition may lie conceal'd; and when any Thing of that Nature is discovered, they are to stop it, and acquaint the Captain of the Main-Guard, that he may inform the Governour with it, and receive his Directions.

A R T I C L E IV.

Half an Hour before the Gates are to be shut, which is generally at the Setting of the Sun, a Serjeant and four Men must be sent from each Port to the Main-Guard for the Keys; at which Time the Drummers of the Port-Guards are to go upon the Ramparts and beat a Retreat, to give Notice to those without, that the Gates are going to be shut, that they may come in before they are. As soon as the Drummers have finished the Retreat, which they should not do in less than a Quarter of an Hour, the Officers must order the Barriers and Gates to be shut, leaving only the Wickets open; after which, no Soldier should be suffered to go out of the Town, tho' Port-liberty should be allowed them in the Day-time.

The Town-Major, or, in his Absence, one of the Town-Adjutants, must take a Serjeant and 12 Men from the Main-Guard and go to the Governour for the Keys of the Town, bring them from thence to the Main-Guard, and deliver them to the Serjeants of the several Ports, who are to carry

carry them to their Guards, Escorted by the Men they brought with them. As soon as the Sentinels at the Ports perceive the Serjeants coming with the Keys, they are to give Notice of it, on which the Officers are to turn out their Guards, ranging the Men under the Vault or Arch of the Port, in two Ranks, Facing one another that the Keys may pass between them. As soon as the Serjeants arrive with the Keys, the Officers are to order their Men to Rest their Firelocks, and the Drummers to beat a March 'till the Gates are Lock'd. He must order a Corporal and four Men more with Arms to escort the Keys to the outermost Barrier, and to place two Men with Rested Arms, on every Draw-Bridge, 'till they return from Locking the Barriers. He must send likewise a sufficient Number of Men without Arms to assist in the Locking of the Gates and Drawing up the Bridges.

When there are any Guards to be posted in the Outworks during the Night, the Town-Major, or one of the Town-Adjutants, should go along with the Keys of that Port from whence they are to be detached, in order to see them Posted, and to give the Officer or Serjeant who commands them the Word, Counter-Sign, and the necessary Orders relating to the Care of the Post or Posts to be Guarded, and then see the Gates of that Port immediately Locked.

When there are Guards to be placed in the Outworks at different Parts of the Town, and that the Town-Major and his Aids can't see them all Posted themselves, without keeping the Gates open beyond the usual Time, the Town-Major may send Directions to the Officers of the Port-Guards, from whence they are to be Detach'd, to go and Post them, with the Orders, Parole, and Counter-Sign, in Writing, seal'd up, to leave with those who command them, with Directions not to open it 'till the Gates are shut. As Cases of this Nature seldom happen, I don't know that the above Method was ever practis'd; and therefore won't recommend it, but when it can't be avoided, by the Night-Posts in the Outworks being too numerous for the proper Officers to see them all Posted themselves; but whenever this should be the Case, I believe the Expedient won't be thought improper.

When the Gates are shut, which the Officers on the Port-Guards are always to see done, the Keys are to be carried back to the Main-Guard, by the Serjeants and Escorts who brought them; and delivered to the Town-Major, or Adjutant, who, when they are all returned, is to carry them to the

the Governour's, escorted by a Serjeant and 12 Men from the Main-Guard.

As soon as the Gates are shut, all the additional Night-Sentrys within the Walls are to be posted, and to take Possession of all other Night Posts which shall be order'd; after which the Officers are to order their Men to Recover their Arms, and lodge them in the Guard-Room, taking Care to place them in such Order, that every Man may take his own Firelock, when commanded, without any Bustle or Confusion.

The Serjeants who carried the Keys back to the Main-Guard, are to remain there 'till they have received the Night Orders from the Town-Major, and the Tickets for the Rounds from the Captain of the Main-Guard; after which they are to return to their Guards, and deliver the Orders, Parole, and Counter-Sign, with the Tickets, to their Officers, and then to the Corporals of the Guards.

As soon as the Gates are shut and the Keys return'd to the Governour, the Town-Major should come to the Main-Guard, and deliver out the Night Orders to the Majors and Adjutants of the Garrison, and to the Serjeants from the Port-Guards and others.

The Captain of the Main-Guard is to deliver to the Serjeant from the Port-Guards, as many Tickets as there are Rounds order'd to go, taking care that the Names of the Officers Guards are named on the Tickets, one of which is to be delivered to every Round as they pass.

In Frontier Garrisons, they commonly order so many Rounds as to have an Officer always walking on the Ramparts in the Night. When this is necessary, they compute the Time that the first Round will be going round the Town; and when that has almost finish'd, the Second is to begin, and so one after another 'till the Reveille Beats. These are called the Visiting Rounds. The Officers who dismount in the Morning, are always appointed to go these Rounds; because they are furthest from Duty. They are to assemble at the Main-Guard at the Time of delivering the Night Orders, to draw by Lot for the Hour each is to go his Round at; after which the Town-Major is to enter their Names, Regiments they belong to, and the Time of going their Rounds, in his Book; that if the Governour should find by the Morning's Report, that no Round went such an Hour, or staid beyond the usual Time, he may inform Him who should have gone then, that the Reason may be enquired into.

The Retreat, or Tat-too, is generally beat at Ten a-Clock at Night in the Summer, and at Eight in Winter. It is perform'd by the Drum-Major, and all the Drummers of that Regiment which gives a Captain to the Main-Guard that Day.

They are to begin at the Main-Guard, beat round the Grand Parade, and return back and finish where they began. They are to be escorted by a Serjeant and a File of Men from the Main-Guard.

They are to be answer'd by the Drummers of all the other Guards; as also by four Drummers of each Regiment in their respective Quarters, if the Town is very large.

The Tat-too, is the Signal given for the Soldiers to Retire to their Chambers, to put out their Fire and Candle, and go to Bed. The Publick Houses are, at the same time, to shut their Doors, and sell no more Liquor that Night.

In Frontier Garrisons, the Burghers are constantly oblig'd when they go out after Tat-too, to carry a Light with them. Those who don't are taken up by the Patrols, and kept Prisoners all Night upon the Guard, in order to be punished next Morning by the Governour, for disobeying the Orders of the Garrison.

A R T I C L E V.

The Patrols are to go every Hour in the Night, from the Beating of the Tat-too 'till the Reveille. The Patrols are commonly compos'd of a Serjeant and 6 or 12 Men from each Guard. They are to walk in the Streets to prevent Disorders, or any Number of People assembling together, and to oblige all those who keep Publick Houses to send away their Guests and shut their Doors. When they see any Light in the Soldiers Caserns or Barracks, to oblige them to put it out, or acquaint the Guard of those Quarters with it, that they may see it done. To take up all the Soldiers they find out of their Quarters; as also all the Inhabitants who go without Lights, if the Orders of the Garrison are such, and carry them Prisoners to the Guard. When any of the Publick Houses entertain Company after the Patrol has forbid them, they are to carry the Landlords to the Guard, that the Governour may punish them the next Day for their Disobedience.

The Town-Major is to Assign a proper District for each Guard to Patrol in, by Dividing of the Town in such a Manner

ner, that every Street may be included in one Patrol or another. The Districts should lie Contiguous to the several Guards, that the Patrols may not interfere with one another. The Middle of the Town belongs to the Main-Guard, and the Streets near the Ramparts, to the Port-Guards.

It is the Custom, in some Garrisons, for the Horse-Guard to perform these Patrols on Horseback. When the Town is very large, it will be very proper to order them to Patrol through the Principal Streets of the Town, and the great Squares and Market-Places, to prevent any tumultuous Assembly, or Rising of the Inhabitants; but as to the performing of the other Parts, for which Patrols are designed, as above-mentioned, how is it possible for them to comply with it? For as the Noise of the Horses Feet will be heard at a considerable Distance, it will be easy for those who disobey the Orders of the Garrison to avoid the Patrol, and thereby escape due Punishment: For which Reason Patrols of Horse, in Towns, are generally laid aside, except in the Case above-mentioned, and those of Foot appointed in their Room; which, as being more useful, are infinitely more proper.

When the Patrols are Challeng'd by the Sentries, they are to answer, *Patrol*; upon which the Sentry replies, *Pas Patrol*.

When they return from Patrolling, and are Challenged by the Sentry at the Guard-Room Door, they are to Answer *Patrol of the Guard*, naming it, as Main-Guard, Reserve, or such a Port; upon which the Sentry permits them to go into the Guard-Room and Lodge their Arms.

As soon as the Patrol Returns, the Serjeant is to make a Report to his Officer of every Thing that happened during his Patrol, and what Prisoners he has brought to the Guard, that he may examine them himself, and set down their Names in Writing, the Time and Reason for their being taken up, the Place of Abode, if Towns-Men, or if Soldiers, the Regiment and Company they belong to; all which must be inserted in the Morning Report to the Captain of the Main-Guard, at which time the Prisoners must be conducted there also.

ARTICLE VI.

The ordinary Rounds are Three. The Town-Major's Round, the Grand Round, and the Visiting Round.

The Extraordinary Rounds, are those which are appointed to go every Hour of the Night, or every Two Hours, as the Governour shall think proper ; which Rounds are perform'd by the Officers who dismount the Guard that Morning, and are call'd the Visiting Rounds as beforementioned.

As soon as the Gates are shut, and the Night Orders deliver'd to the Garrison, the Town-Major may begin his Round ; the Design of which is, that he may see whether all the Gates are shut, the additional Night Posts and Sentinels posted, and the Officers and Soldiers all on their Guards.

Manner of going the Rounds, and receiving them.

When the Town-Major goes his Round, he comes to the Main-Guard and demands a Serjeant and four or six Men to escort him to the next Guard ; and when it is dark one of the Men is to carry a Light. He may go to which Gate first he pleases : whereas, all the other Rounds except the Governour's or Commandant's, are to go according to the Method prescribed them.

As soon as the Sentinel at the Guard-Room Door perceives the Round coming, he should give Notice to the Guard that they may be ready to turn out when order'd ; and when the Round comes within 20 Paces of the Guard, he is to Challenge briskly, and when he is answered by the Serjeant who attends the Round, *Town-Major's Round*, he is to say, *Stand Round*, and rest his Firelock ; after which, he is to call out immediately, *Serjeant, turn out the Guard, Town-Major's Round*. No Round is to advance after the Sentinel has Challenged and order'd them to stand.

Upon the Sentinels calling, the Serjeant is to turn out the Guard immediately, drawing up the Men in good Order with shoulder'd Arms, and the Officer is to place himself at the Head of it with his Arms in his Hand. After this, he is to order the Serjeant and four or six Men to advance towards the Round, and Challenge. When the Serjeant of the Guard comes within six Paces of the Serjeant who escorted the Round, he is to Halt and Challenge briskly. The Serjeant of the Escort is to answer, *Town-Major's Round* ;

upon which the Serjeant of the Guard replies, *Stand Round, Advance Serjeant with the Parole*, and then orders his Men to rest their Firelocks. The Serjeant of the Escort advances alone, and gives the Serjeant of the Guard the Parole in his Ear that none else may hear it, and while he is giving it, the Serjeant of the Guard holds the Spear of his Halbard at the other's Breast. He then orders the Serjeant to return to his Escort, and, leaving the Men he brought with him to keep the Round from Advancing, goes to his Officer and gives him the Parole he receiv'd from the Serjeant; the Officer finding the Parole right, orders the Serjeant to return to his Men, and then says, *Advance Town-Major's Round*, and orders the Guard to Rest their Arms; upon which the Serjeant of the Guard orders his Men to wheel back from the Center and form a Lane, thro' which the Town-Major is to pass, the Escort remaining where they were, and go up to the Officer and give him the Parole, laying his Mouth to his Ear. The Officer holds the Spear of his Half-Pike, or Partizan, at the Town-Major's Breast while he gives him the Parole. The Reason of this Ceremony, is, I presume, lest he should prove an Impostor, and come to betray the Guard; and that if he should give a wrong Word, or appear not to be the Person whose Character he assumes, the Officer may be prepared to punish him as he deserves; as also to be in a State of Defence, lest he should attempt his Life; the Surprise of which might throw the Guard into such Confusion, for want of an Officer to command it, that the Men would perhaps abandon their Post, or deliver themselves up, without making any Resistance, on the Appearance of the Enemy's Troops, or a Body of Arm'd Men Advancing towards them: So that unless the above Precautions were taken, viz. that of obliging the Round to stand at some Distance, 'till the Guard is put under Arms, with all the other Parts of the Ceremony, as above-mention'd, it might be easy for the Enemy to surprize an Out-Post or Camp-Guard, by lodging a Party of their Men at some convenient Place near them, and then send out a small Party in the Nature of a Round, with an Enterprizing Person to command it, and assume the Character, in order to kill the Officer; which, with the Enemies appearing that Moment, would effectually prevail, and make them yield without any considerable Resistance, or abandon their Post: but the strict Examination they are to go thro' before they are suffered to approach the Guard, makes the Enterprize too difficult to be attempted

attempted with Safety to the Person who shall undertake it. Besides, it is a standing Rule, both in Camp or Garrison for an Officer on Guard to know no Body in the Night, but by the Parole; and till that is given in the usual Form, he is to suffer none to approach his Guard.

Tho' an Enterprize of this Nature would be more difficult in a Garrison than in Camp, it might, however, be effected, were these Ceremonies laid aside: For if the Enemy can draw the Inhabitants into their Interest, they may send Men into the Town on Market-days in the Disguise of Peasants, on pretence to sell Provisions (it being impossible for the Port-Guards to distinguish who are really Peasants, and who are not) with Directions how they are to conduct themselves 'till the Time appointed for the Undertaking. We may suppose that the Inhabitants, who have entered into the Plot will not be wanting on their Part, to make the necessary Preparations of Arms and Ammunition, and to lodge them in some House near the Gate which they propose to seize; and conceal the Men who are sent in, 'till the Time it is to be executed. When the Time appointed comes, the Enemy will send a Body of Troops superior to those in Garrison, and take Care to conceal themselves in the Day-time, and not approach the Town 'till Night, and even not then 'till the appointed Hour, for fear of being discovered; with full Directions how they are to proceed, and when to advance to the Gate which is to be seized.

Were Measures of this kind well concerted, both within and without the Town, it would be no difficult Matter to seize a Port-Guard, and, with proper Instruments, break open the Gates, let down the Draw-Bridges, and give a free Entrance to the Enemy, before the Troops of the Garrison could be got together to prevent it.

This Digression may be thought foreign to the present Subject, and therefore might have been omitted; but my Design in it, is to shew young Gentlemen the Necessity there is, for the Ceremony in Going and Receiving the Rounds; sending frequent Patrols; Sentinels not suffering any one to come within the Reach of their Arms; none permitted to come near a Guard at Night, 'till they are strictly examin'd; the Searching of Waggon, Boats, &c. which come into the Town, lest Men, Arms or Ammunition should be concealed; Strangers who enter, giving an Account of themselves and obliging the Inhabitants to give an Account of all Strangers who lodge in their Houses, without which no Frontier

N

Town

Town could be safe from the Enemy in Conjunction with the Inhabitants, who may always be gained by the Force of Money, or at least a sufficient Number to carry on the Design; so that the Danger within is to be guarded against, as well as that without; and how is it possible to be done, unless the foregoing Rules and Ceremonies are strictly adhered to, and duly executed?

The Town-Major having given the Officer of the Guard the Parole, he is then to examine if the Gates are Lock'd and well secured; whether they have taken Possession of their Night-Posts, and placed the Additional Night Sentinels; and to count the Men who are under Arms, to see if they are all on Guard, and if not, to enquire into the Reason of their Absence. He may likewise enquire into the Night Orders, as also all others relating to the Guard, that if there should be any Mistake in them he may then rectify them. After these Things are done, he should send back the Serjeants and Men, who attended him, to the Main-Guard, and take the same Number from this Guard to escort him to the next: and so from one Guard to another 'till he has finished his Round. He is to be received at all the Guards in the same Manner as he was at the first.

As the Town-Major's Round is design'd to see if the Gates are lock'd, the Night-Posts posted, and the Orders delivered right, I presume, he may go either along the Ramparts, or through the Streets, from one Guard to another, as he shall think proper; but all the other Rounds, except the Governour's, must go along the Ramparts.

As soon as the Round is gone, the Officer is to order his Men to Lodge their Arms; and when the Serjeant returns from conducting any of the Rounds, he is to acquaint his Officer with it, and whether the Sentinels, as they pass'd, were alert or not.

When it was said that the Town-Major is to go his Round when the Night Orders were delivered, it is to be understood, that he is not to go 'till they are, and that the Gates are shut; after which he may take his own Time, there being no certain Hour prescribed him, provided he goes and finishes before Twelve a-Clock. Besides, it is even necessary for him to go at uncertain Hours, and change his Way of going, in order to keep the Guards alert: However he must always go the first Round, to verify the Night Orders.

When the Town-Major has finished his Round, he is to wait on the Governour, give him the Word, and make him
a Re-

a Report of the State of all the Posts, and the Condition he found them in.

In the *French* Garrisons, all the Officers who command Guards are to give the Parole to the Town-Major, or, in his Absence, to the Town-Adjutant when he goes the first Round, which is always called the Town-Major's Round, tho' gone by one of his Aids. The Reason for this, is not by way of Compliment to the Town-Major; but that by receiving the Parole from the Officers of the Guards, he may know if they have received it right, otherwise, they say, how can he be certain if they know it? When the Town-Major goes any more Rounds that Night, he must give the Parole to the Officers every Time he goes, except the first, as the other Rounds do.

This Method, in my Opinion, is grounded on a very just Principle, and therefore preferable to the other, which is that of the Town-Major's giving the Word to the Officers on Guard, even the first Time of his going: However, I am not going to introduce new Customs here; but only set down the Practice abroad; and where they differ from the *Dutch*, from whom we have taken the greatest Part of our Discipline, by having been in a long Alliance with them; and tho' it must be owned, that we could not have followed a more perfect System of Discipline than theirs, both in Camp and Garrison; yet, in particular Parts, though perhaps not many, one may be allowed to dissent from them, and prefer those of a neighbouring Nation, when we find them better; as I think that is, just above-mentioned, of the Officers giving the Town-Major the Word, in his first Round, in order to verify it.

All other Rounds must be received in the same Manner as is directed for the Town-Major's; only with this difference, that the Officers on Guard are to give the Parole to the Grand Round; but all other Rounds are to give it to them: And tho' the Governour should go his Round after the Grand Round is made by the Captain of the Main-Guard, he is to give the Word to the Officers on Guard; but in this Case, the Governour may carry an Officer to give the Word for him.

The Captain of the Main-Guard is to go the Grand Round, which is commonly made about Midnight; and the Lieutenant is to go the Visiting Round, which is made about an Hour before Day.

When the Governour intends to go the Grand Round, he is to send Notice of it to the Captain of the Main-Guard, to prevent his going it, and that he may be prepared to receive him; it being usual for the Governour to come to the Main-Guard first, and take an Escort along with him from thence to the next Guard, or to conduct him quite round if he thinks proper, and order the Lieutenant of the Guard to attend him. The Governour may order what Number of Men for his Escort he pleases, which generally consists of a Serjeant and 12 Men.

When the Governour goes the Grand-Round, the Captain of the Main-Guard is to go the Visiting-Round.

The Grand-Round, or any Round which the Governour, or Commandant, shall make, may begin where they please, because whatever Round they meet is to give them the Word, whereas when two other Rounds meet, that which Challenges first has a Right to demand the Word of the other. But as this might occasion Disputes in the giving the Word, should both Challenge together, or imagine they did, the Place where they are to begin, and the Hour which each Round is to go at, must be particularly mentioned; by which Method they cannot possibly meet, but will follow one another in a regular Manner, provided they are punctual in the Execution.

All Rounds (the Town-Major's, Grand, and Governour's Rounds excepted) are to demand a Ticket from the Officer of each Guard, as they pass it; and when they have finish'd their Rounds, they are to deliver them to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to examine them very carefully, to see if they have miss'd any of the Guards; after which, he is to set down the Officers Names that went the Rounds, and the Hours they return'd at; as also every Thing that happen'd extraordinary to them in going their Rounds; such as Officers being absent from their Guards, or negligent in their Duty; Sentinels drunk, asleep, or off their Posts; if they discover any Thing from the Ramparts, or heard any Noise in the Country; or saw any Number of People assembled together in the Town, or found any Disturbance, that he may mention it in his Report next Morning to the Governour.

When a Round discovers from the Ramparts any Number of Troops, or hears any considerable Noise which may induce him to believe there are some near, he must give Notice of it to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to acquaint the

the Governour with it immediately, that he may send the Reserve to strengthen that Post, from whence the Noise was heard, and to give Orders for the Troops to repair immediately to their Alarm Post, to prevent the Garrison's being Surprized.

If the Sentries on the Ramparts make the same Discovery, they are to call the Corporal of the Guard and acquaint him with it, who is to inform his Officer, that he may enquire into it immediately; and if he finds it of any Consequence, he must send an Account of it to the Main-Guard, that the Governour may be acquainted with it; after which, he is to draw out his Guard, that he may be ready to oppose any Attempt that shall be made, either from without, or within the Town. He should send a Corporal and two Men round his Sentries, to see that they are all alert, and to give them strict Orders to be very watchful; and when they discover any thing further, to Pass the Word for the Corporal, that he may come and know what they have discover'd: the Corporal must have Orders to go on to the next Post-Guard and acquaint the Officer with what they saw or heard; who is immediately to put his Guard under Arms, send his Corporal round his Sentries, and acquaint the next Post-Guard with it, that they may do the same; and so from one to another 'till it has gone quite round.

This Precaution, of sending to every Guard, is absolutely necessary, since it is certain, that when the Enemy have a Design to Surprize any Place, they will endeavour to draw your Attention from it, by making a Show of Attacking some remote Part, and thereby draw your Forces from the real Attack; therefore Prudence directs us to be careful of the Whole, and not suffer ourselves to be amused by Appearances; but to suspect a deeper Design, than what may at first offer itself to our View.

The Officers of the Guards should likewise send out Patrols, lest the Inhabitants should be in Concert with the Enemy; which they will easily discover by their assembling together, and by that means avoid the Danger from within, or be prepared against it.

The Design of Rounds is not only to Visit the Guards, and keep the Sentries alert, but likewise to discover what passes in the Outworks and beyond them; for which Reason, the Officers who go the Rounds should walk on the Banquet, and go into the Sentries Boxes, that they may look into the Ditch, and discover with more ease what Passes there; they

must likewise enquire of the Sentries if they had discover'd any thing on their Posts, or heard any Noise.

Some Governours have a Round to go just before the Opening of the Gates; their Reason for it is this: As it is then pretty light, that Round, by the Elevation of the Ramparts will be able to discover a good way into the Country. When they have no Horse in Garrison to Patrol, it is not only proper, but absolutely necessary. When such a Round is order'd, it should begin just at the Reveille, which is then so light, that they may see an hundred and fifty Yards, and when the Officer has finish'd his Round, and return'd to the Main-Guard, the Keys are to be sent to the Gates.

A R T I C L E VII.

In Frontier Garrisons, as soon as the Reveille beats, the Officer of the Horse-Guard, with his Men mounted, is to repair to the Main-Guard, and according to his Orders from the Captain, he must go, or send Patrols of Horse out of the Gates to Reconnoitre the Country. The Patrols are generally composed of a Corporal, and four or six Troopers each,

At the Beating of the Reveille, a Serjeant and twelve Men from the Main-Guard are to attend the Town-Major, or one of the Town Adjutants, to bring the Keys from the Governour's to the Main-Guard, and to deliver them to the Serjeants from the Ports, who are to be there, with four Men each, at the same time; and after they have received them, they are to carry them to their Guards, followed by the Patrols of Horse who are to be let out to Reconnoitre.

Upon the Serjeant's coming with the Keys, the Officers are to have their Guards under Arms in the same manner as is directed for the shutting of the Gates. When the Keys are come, the Officer orders the first Gate to be open'd, and lets out the Patrol of Horse, and then shuts it; when that is done the Draw-Bridges are let down, and as soon as the Patrol has passed them, they are drawn up again; after that, the Barriers are open'd, the Horse Patrol let out, and closed again after them, the Corporal and four Men of the Guard remaining within the Barrier.

The time which the Horse are to Patrol, and the Parts which they are to Reconnoitre, must depend on the Orders they shall receive from the Governour: However, they generally Reconnoitre those Places from whence they apprehend the Danger may proceed; such as the Roads leading to the
Garrisons

Garrisons or Territories of the Enemy; hollow Ways, Woods or Thickets, which lie near the Garrison, left Troops should be conceal'd there; and to get upon the Eminences which overlook the Country, in order to discover what passes a considerable way in it; and when they have complied with their Orders (which takes them up generally three Quarters of an Hour, unless their Situation requires them to be more circumspect) they return to the Garrison, and acquaint the Officers of the Port-Guards with what they have discover'd and if all is well, the Officers then order the Gates to be open'd, the Draw-bridges to be let down, and the Patrols to enter, who return to their own Guard, and make a Report to their Officer; and when they are all returned, he is to make his to the Captain of the Main-Guard, which Report he is to enter with the Rest. As soon as the Gates are open'd, the Keys are to be carried back to the Main-Guard, in the usual Form, and deliver'd to the Town-Major, and from thence Escorted to the Governour's.

During the Time that the Horse are Patrolling, and that the Keys remain at the Ports, the Guards are to continue under Arms; the Corporal and four Men who open'd the Barrier to let the Horse out, are to shut the Barrier after them, and to remain within it, 'till they return. As soon as the Draw-Bridges are drawn up, after the Horse have passed them, the Wicket of the innermost Gate should be open'd, that the Men who are placed at the Draw-Bridges may come and give the Officers an Account when the Patrols return; upon which the Officers of the Guard must go and examine the Corporals of the Patrols themselves; after which, if they have no Reason to the Contrary, they are then to order the Gates to be open'd, the Draw Bridges to be let down, and the Patrols to enter; but 'till the Officers have examin'd them, the Gates are not to be open'd, or they admitted.





C H A P. XIII.

*Of Detachments, Visiting the Soldiers Quarters,
and the Hospital.*

A R T I C L E I.



ALL Detachments which are sent from a Garrison, are either to Guard Posts which lie at a Distance from the Place, for Escorts, or Parties.

The Detachments are composed of an equal Number of Officers and Soldiers from the Regiments in Garrison, as is done for the Town Guard; but is a separate Duty from it, and a Roll is kept apart by the Town-Major.

When a Captain, Lieutenant, and Ensign are commanded, they order the eldest Regiment to give a Captain, the second Regiment the Lieutenant, and the third Regiment the Ensign, with an equal Proportion of Men from each Regiment in the Garrison. When another Captain is ordered, he is taken from the second Regiment, and so on 'till every Regiment has given one, and then it begins again with the eldest. The same Method is observed by the Lieutenants, Ensigns, and Serjeants.

There is no Roll kept for the Drummers, because the Regiments send as many Drummers as they have Officers order'd on Duty: So that whatever Guard, or Detachment, an Officer is posted to, he takes his own Drummer along with him; which is a standing Rule both in Camp and Garrison.

Every Battalion, whether strong or weak, furnishes an equal Proportion of Officers and Soldiers to all Detachments; whereas, in the Town-Guards they are so far indulged sometimes, as to give only in Proportion to their Numbers, when the Disproportion between them is very considerable; occasion'd by the Loss of Men in Action, violent Sicknes, or from

from the different Establishments as to Numbers: For it would be highly unreasonable that a Battalion of 400 Men should do equal Duty with one of 600. But if their Establishment is the same, and that they have not one of the above Reasons to plead, or that the Difference in Numbers is but inconsiderable, they must then do the Town-Duty equal with one another, as well as all Detachments.

The ordinary Complement of a Captain, when Detach'd, is a Lieutenant, Ensign, 2 Serjeants, 2 Drummers, and 45 or 50 Men, Corporals included.

A Lieutenant has a Serjeant, Drummer, and 25 or 30 Men.

An Ensign has a Serjeant, Drummer, and 20 or 24 Men.

A Serjeant has 12, 15, or 18 Men; but on Detachment always 18 Men.

When a Serjeant is Detach'd from a Garrison, he should never have less than 18 Men; because it is a Rule with the *French*, and their Neighbours, never to send out a Party of a smaller Number; and whenever they seize a Party under it, they treat them like Party-Blews, or Robbers, unless they should have lost some of their Men, which will appear by their Order or Route.

A Major's Command is from 150 Men to 300.

A Lieutenant-Colonel's from 400 Men to 600.

A Colonel's from 600 Men to 800, or 1000.

But notwithstanding the ordinary Complement above-mention'd, yet an Officer must not scruple to March with a much smaller Number, when the King's Service requires it; they are likewise often Commanded with a greater Number than what is mention'd: However, when the Command comes up to, or exceeds 1000 Men, they appoint General Officers to command them, in Proportion to the Number detach'd, all which must depend on the Will of the Governor, or Commandant of the Place.

They generally send a Lieutenant-Colonel and a Major along with a Colonel when he is Detach'd; but always one Field Officer with him, if there are any; when a Colonel is commanded he takes his own Adjutant with him.

ARTICLE II.

If an Officer, after he has march'd his Detachment beyond the outermost Barrier of the Place, should be order'd to Return, it passes for a Duty; but if he should be order'd back

before he has pass'd the Barrier, it won't be allow'd as a Duty ; but he must go with the next that is commanded ; for his Marching off from the Parade don't excuse him, as a great many imagine : It holds the same with the private Men.

If an Officer's Tour of Duty to Mount the Guard should come while he is on Detachment, he is not obliged to take it when he returns ; but if he comes into Town the Day that he is to Mount, and that his Detachment is dismiss'd before the Guards are march'd off from the Parade, he must then Mount the Guard, without any Difficulty or Scruple.

All Parties or Detachments of Infantry which are sent out of a Garrison, should not consist of less than 19 Men, that is, a Serjeant and 18 private Soldiers. But unless there is a Necessity for their sending no more, they should not Detach less than an Officer and 25 Men.

All Parties are to have a Passport, or Order, in Writing, sign'd by the Governour or Commander of the Garrison, and seal'd with his Coat of Arms ; in Failure of which, should they be taken, they won't be treated like Prisoners of War ; but left to the Discretion of the Enemy ; and the Governour to whom they belong'd, has no Right to claim them.

If a Party under 19 Men are taken, and have not a Pass under the Governour's Hand and Seal to shew that there were so many detach'd, they will be treated as above-mention'd, and condemn'd by a Court-Martial, either to the Gallies for Life, or a Punishment equally as bad.

This Custom, I presume, is only to prevent a smaller Number from being detach'd, who can only be sent to pilfer and steal, which is look'd upon, by all Sides, as an ungenerous way of making War, since it can only make a few People unhappy, without contributing any thing to the Service, or the bringing the War to a Conclusion.

It is likewise to prevent Party-Blews, which are Parties of Robbers, who sometimes dress themselves like Soldiers, and plunder every one they meet, without Distinction ; for which reason, they are always hang'd by both Sides when taken : therefore, to distinguish real Parties from those, it is absolutely necessary that they should have Passports sign'd and seal'd by the Governour, or Commandant of the Garrison.

Another Reason, why smaller Parties than 19 Men ought not to be sent, may proceed from the Danger of their being overpower'd by a Party-Blew, or the Peasants.

Tho' the Rules abroad declare positively, that any Party which shall be taken, consisting of less than 19 Men, shall be

be treated like Party-Blews; yet, I think, it can never be taken in the literal Sense, but must mean, that if they are sent out with less, they will be treated in that manner: For as Action, Sickness, or Desertion may reduce a greater Party under that Number, it would be the Height of Barbarity, to use those ill who remain'd, for a Crime which they were not Guilty of: Therefore it can't be doubted, in my Opinion, but the producing their Passport will clear them, and make them be used like Prisoners of War.

When an Officer who commands a Party, is oblig'd to send a Detachment from his Party, either out of his Sight or Call, he is not to send less than a Serjeant and 18 Men; to whom he must give an exact Copy of his Passport, with Directions what they are to perform, and the Time they are to return to him, or the Garrison, writ under the said Passport. It is therefore presum'd, that an Officer who has not the Command of 40 Men or upwards, won't send a Party out of his Sight or Call, otherwise he will be left with a smaller Number than the Custom of War allows of.

All Parties or Detachments must return to their Garrison punctually at the time appointed; unless they are prevented by the Enemy's getting between them and Home, and, in order to avoid them, are oblig'd to retire to the next Place of Safety, or go a great way about for fear of being taken; in which Case, an Officer is not only excusable for staying beyond the Time, but deserves Thanks for his Care and Conduct.

The Time limited, with the Number of Officers and Soldiers, is always inserted in the Pass or Order; and, for the most part, the Service which they are imploy'd on, is likewise mentioned: however, that may be committed to a particular Paper, and only communicated to the Commanding Officer of the Detachment, when the Service they are sent on require Secrecy.

A R T I C L E III.

There must be a Serjeant and a Corporal of each Company Orderly for a Week, the Serjeants and Corporals taking it in their Turns to perform this Duty; which, however, does not excuse them from Mounting of the Guard, or going on Party, when their Tour comes for either. When this happens, the Serjeant or Corporal, who is to be on the Orderly Duty next, must perform the Orderly Duty for them

them, 'till they are reliev'd, or that their Orderly Time expires; after which they commence the Orderly Duty for themselves. Neither are the Orderly Serjeants or Corporals who are on Guard or Party during their Orderly Week, obliged to repay the Orderly Duty, which is done for them during that Time, when they return; it being a fix'd Rule for those who are next in Turn to perform it, without being repaid it.

The Orderly Serjeants and Corporals are to receive all Orders which shall be deliver'd, either to the Garrison in general, or to the Regiment and Company they belong to in Particular, and deliver them to their Officers.

They are to march the Men of their Companies, who are to mount the Guard, to their Captain's Quarters, to be view'd by one of their Officers, before they are sent to the Regimental Parade; and if they carry any Man that has not his Arms, Ammunition, Cloaths, and Accoutrements in good Order, they are answerable to their Officers for it, and liable to be punish'd for the same; in order to avoid which, they must inspect these things before they present the Men to their Officers. They are to march them from thence to the Regimental Parade, and deliver them to the Adjutant of the Regiment, who is to examine the Men again, to see that they are in Order, and that he has his Complement. After this, they are to attend the Adjutant 'till the Guards are march'd from the Grand Parade, that if any Orders are to be deliver'd that Morning, either from the Governour, or their Colonel, they may be ready to receive them.

They are to remain constantly at their Caserns, or Barracks, when they are not employ'd in receiving or delivering of Orders, and Carrying their Men to the Parade, as above-mention'd, that they may be ready to execute all Commands which shall come at any time from the Governour, or their Colonel.

They must take care to keep 6 or 8 Men in a Company, of those who are to go first on Duty, always in the way, in case there are any order'd for Parties, or any other Occasion, for which they may be wanted; and when any Men are order'd, they must see that their Arms, Ammunition, &c. are in good Order, before they go to the Parade, and take care to provide them with Ammunition-Bread and Pay for the Number of Days they are to be out on Party, or that Proportion of both which shall be order'd for them. The Corporals are to march the Men to the Parade, and deliver them

them to the Adjutant, and the Serjeants may remain at their Barracks, (unless they are employ'd in getting the Money and Bread for them) there being no occasion for their going with any Men to the Parade, but those who Mount in the Morning, without the Rules of the Garrison order it otherwise.

They are likewise to see that the Men keep the Caserns or Barracks very clean and in good Order, and that the Utensils belonging to them are neither spoil'd nor lost. They are to make the Men sweep their Rooms very clean every Morning, and make their Beds; and afterwards to wash themselves very clean, and dress in a Soldier-like Way, by having their Shoes well black'd, their Stockings and Cravats well roll'd, their Hats cock'd, and their Hair tuck'd under them, and their Cloaths brush'd and put on to the best Advantage; but 'till these things are done, they are not to suffer them to leave their Quarters, that they may not appear slovenly in the Streets.

They are to call over the Roll of their Companies as often as it shall be order'd, and make a Report of the absent Men to their own Officers and the Adjutant, that they may be punish'd for it.

They must go through every Room immediately after the Tat-too, and oblige the Men to put out their Fire and Candle, and go to Bed.

The Men of each Company should be divided into Messes, each Mess consisting of four or six Men, or according to the Number in each Room; and every Pay-Day, each Man should be oblig'd to appropriate such a Part of his Pay to buy Provisions, which Money should be lodg'd in the Hands of one of them, in order to be laid out to the best Advantage, which the Orderly Serjeants and Corporals are to see duly executed, and make each Mess boil the Pot every Day. Without this is carefully look'd into, the Soldiers will be apt to spend their Pay on Liquors, which will not only occasion their Neglect of Duty, but, in all probability, the Loss of a great many Men by Sicknefs for Want of proper Victuals to support them. It is therefore a Duty incumbent on every Officer to be more than ordinary careful in this Particular; and not to think themselves above the looking into these Things, since the Preservation of their Men depends so much on it: For in those Regiments where this Method is duly observ'd, the Men are generally Healthful; but when it is neglected, great Numbers fall sick and die.

The

The Captain should visit their Mens Quarters at least once a Week, and the Subalterns twice, to see that they are kept clean and in good Order ; as also to inspect into the several Messes of their Companies, and to see whether their Provisions are good, and the Money laid justly out.

In some Regiments there is an Officer appointed daily to visit the Caserns or Barracks of the Regiment, to see that they are kept clean, and that the Men dress their Victuals, and to make a Report of the whole to the Colonel : However, that should not prevent the other Officers from looking into it also.

The Major should visit the Whole very often, that he may know whether the other Officers do their Duty, and reprimand those who neglect it ; it being his immediate Business and Duty, to see all Orders punctually obey'd.

A R T I C L E IV.

In all Garrisons, there is an Officer of a Regiment order'd to visit their sick Men daily. They are to examine nicely into the Manner their Men are treated, and if they are kept clean ; what Medicines and Diet they have given them, taste their Bread and Broth, and see their Proportion of Bread and Meat, and enquire of them how they are used ; a Report of which, with the Number belonging to each Company, they are to make to their Colonels.

Besides this Regimental Inspection, the Governour appoints an Officer or two of the Garrison to visit the Hospital, to see how the Men are Treated, with the Number belonging to each Regiment, and to make him a Report of the Whole.

A Captain, who has any Regard for his Men, won't think these general Visits sufficient ; but will go from time to time himself, and enquire into their State, and send his Officers and Serjeants to do the same. There are a great many little Things which may save the Life of a poor Soldier, and which they can't have but from their own Officers ; so that unless they go to see them, they may Perish for the Want of them : Therefore common Humanity requires this Duty of us even to Strangers, but much more so to those who are immediately under our Care, and share the Danger of the War with us.

There is one Rule which should be strictly observ'd, which is, not to suffer the Men to continue too long in the Hospital ;

pital; but to take them from thence as soon as possibly they can: For it often happens, when they stay too long after they are Recover'd, that they Relapse and Die; occasion'd by the badness of the Air, which must be in some Degree infected by the Breath of the Sick, in spite of all the Care that can be taken to prevent it. But the least Evil that can happen by their remaining too long in the Hospital, is, that they will thereby contract a slothful, lazy, idle Habit, and turn, according to the Military Phrase, *Malingers*; that is, Men who have lost all Spirit to the Service, and feign themselves Sick when there is a Prospect of Action, or that they are to undergo any Hardship or Fatigue, in order to be sent to the Hospital; which Life, through Habit, becomes agreeable to them.

Where there is no Publick Hospital, there should be some Rooms in the Quarters appointed for the Sick Men, to which they may be removed, lest they infect the others; and that the Surgeon of the Regiment may attend them with the more ease. They should likewise have Nurses appointed to attend them, and proper Care taken about their Diet: And, unless the Distemper is of a very malignant Nature, I am of Opinion, that they should not be sent to the Hospital upon every slight Indisposition, but removed into the Infirmary of the Regiment, the Air of which must be much purer than the other, and therefore there is a greater Probability of their quick Recovery. Besides, the Evil above complain'd of will be avoided; which is an Article of no small Consideration to the Service.





C H A P. XIV.

Relating to the Command of the Governour in his own Town, with the Respect and Obedience due to him, from the Troops which compose the Garrison; as also what Compliments are to be Paid to all the other Officers.

A R T I C L E I.



HOEVER is Governour of a Town, has the entire Command of the Troops which compose the Garrison, tho' Officers of a Superior Rank to him in the Army should be order'd in with them: For the Town being committed to his Charge, he is answerable to his Master for it, and consequently cannot give up the Command without expresse Orders from him in due Form, or from him to whom he shall delegate his Power.

In the Absence of the Governour, the Command devolves on the Lieutenant-Governour: And if the Town-Major has a Commission of Town-Major Commandant (which is sometimes conferr'd on those Abroad) the Command falls to him in the Absence of the Governour and Lieutenant-Governour; otherwise it goes to the eldest Officer in the Garrison, whether he is of the Horse, Foot, or Dragoons, who is called, during the time, Commandant of the Garrison. This is the general Rule; but as they may be obliged, on particular Occasions, to throw a considerable Body of Troops into the Garrison (either for the Defence of it, or to annoy the Enemy) and that a general Officer of a considerable Rank may be Order'd in with them, it is usual to give him a Commission of Commandant of the Troops, in the Body of which is particularly specified, how far his Power over them is to extend, to avoid all Disputes that might

might happen betwixt him and the Governour about it: And tho' this may, in a great measure, lessen and divide the Governour's Power, yet the outward Marks of Distinction are generally left with him, such as the giving the Parole, the Administration of the Civil Affairs, Keeping the Keys of the Town, &c. as also the Signing of the Capitulation, jointly with the Commandant of the Troops, in case of a Surrender.

The Reason for appointing a Commandant of the Troops, I suppose, may arise from the Governour's not being of a Rank in the Army sufficient to give him a due Authority over them, or that he may not be thought equal to the Command; but supposing him equal to it, both from his Experience and Ability, unless he is distinguished with Titles of Dignity, his Orders will not be so readily executed as if he was: And tho' a Commission of Governour creates him, in a manner, Captain-General in his own Town, yet when Officers of an Equal Rank to him in the Army are ordered into the Garrison, it is a hard Matter for him to keep up his Command as it ought to be, or get them to obey him with the same Deference as they would one of a Superiour Rank; And if it proves so, when only those of an equal Rank are Commanded into the Garrison, it will be much more difficult for him to exert his Authority over those who are his Superiours in the Army, as well as shocking to them to be Commanded by an Inferiour; the Truth of which, with the Detriment that arises from it to the Service, is so well known in *France* that when the Case happens so there, and that they have no mind to supersede the Governour, they always appoint an Officer of Rank and Ability (in Proportion to the Number of Men, which upon occasion of Danger, shall be ordered into the Garrison) Commandant of the Troops; in which case Care is generally taken, that the Person so appointed be of such a Rank in the Army, that not only all Dispute about Command in relation to him is out of the Question, but likewise any Contests of this Kind that may arise in the Garrison are terminated, and his Decisions more readily submitted to, than if they came from one of an inferior Character. I shall now proceed to the Command of a Governour, when there is no Commandant of the Troops appointed.

How far the Governour's Power extends over the Civil, must be determined by the Laws and Constitution of the Country: However, all Persons in the Town, whether Ec-

ecclesiastical or Civil, are subject to his Jurisdiction, as far as it relates to the Order and Preservation of the Town; and whoever Offends therein, tho' he may not have the Power of Punishing, yet he may secure their Persons 'till they can be Tried in a regular Manner for the Crimes they have committed.

His Power over the Military is very Extensive; for all the Officers and Soldiers in the Garrison are obliged to obey him, without Controul.

He may order the Troops under Arms as often as he shall think proper, either to Review them, or upon any other Account.

He may send out Detachments, or Parties, without being obliged to give a Reason to the Officers for it, or come to an Explanation with them on that Head. Neither have they a Power to demand it; but if they think themselves grieved, they may represent it to him in a respectful Manner; that is, Singly, and by Way of Request, and not in a riotous Way, and in Numbers, since that will be deemed Mutiny, which by the Articles of War, is Death.

Neither Officer nor Soldier must lie a Night out of the Garrison without the Governour's Leave; but that the Colonels, or those who command Regiments, may have a proper Authority over their own Corps, a Governour seldom grants his Leave of Absence to either Officer or Soldier but at their Request. A Governour who has a true Notion of the Service, will act according to this Rule; and it appears to me Reasonable that he should do so: otherwise, how can they answer for their Regiments, if their Officers and Soldiers have Leave of Absence given them without their Knowledge? Besides, as the Colonels are supposed to have a thorough Knowledge of those under their Command, they must be proper Judges who ought or ought not to have Leave given them, and therefore won't importune the Governour but when it is reasonable they should have it; which will not only ease him of a great deal of Trouble, but likewise prevent his being imposed upon, by their pretending to have Business, when perhaps Pleasure, or the Love of Idleness is the chief Motive which induces them to ask it; the Truth of which cannot be so easily entered into by the Governour, as by the Colonels, who, in Justice to their Regiments, will limit the Number they ask Leave for, that the Duty may not fall too hard on those who remain.

What

What is above-mentioned, without entering into the Deference due to Colonels, when it relates to those immediately under their Command, is so equitable, that it is generally followed : But however Just this Rule may appear, yet a Governour has an undoubted Right to deviate from it when he shall think Proper, by granting his Leave of Absence to either Officer or Soldier, without the Consent of their Colonels : And tho' particular Regiments may suffer now and then by such a Proceeding, yet that Evil is of less Consequence to the Service, than what the Limiting of the Governour's Power might produce, *viz.* the Loss of Subordination ; which is of such Weight and Consideration, that it is the very Life and Soul (if I may be allowed the Expression) of Discipline, without a due Observance of which, the Service can never be carried on : For whoever endeavours to weaken it, by making the Officers or Soldiers Independant of the principal Persons who are placed over them, whether Governours or Generals, must do it either through an evil Design, or Ignorance ; since both produce the same Effect, Disorder and Confusion ; a State which Soldiers may be easily brought into (from a natural Love of Independancy which reigns in all Mankind) but not so soon Remedied ; for when a Licentious, Independant Humour has prevailed amongst Troops, it must be Time, infinite Pains and Severity, to reduce them to their proper Obedience ; the Want of which may prove as prejudicial to the State, as the Want of Troops ; since the Loss of Subordination produces not only the Neglect of Order, but in a great measure the Power, or at least an Imaginary one, to dispute them ; the Consequence of which is too well known to be farther enlarged upon.

The Practice of the Army in this Case is, that when an Officer has Business that may require his Absence from the Garrison, he is to make his first Application to his Colonel, and to desire him to interceed with the Governour for Leave ; and if the Colonel complies with the Officer's Request, he should wait upon the Governour in his Behalf ; but if the Colonel refuses the Officer, he may then, no doubt, apply to the Governour, tho' such a Step should not be taken without he is necessitated so to do, either from extraordinary Business, or that he finds himself hardly used by his Colonel ; since the doing it is, in a manner, putting him at Defiance, and therefore not to be rashly undertaken.

When any of the Private Men want Leave, they are to apply to their Captain first, the Captain to the Colonel, and if he agrees to it, he is to send their Names by the Adjutant to the Town-Major, that he may acquaint the Governour, that they have his Consent, and to desire he will be pleased to grant them his Leave of Absence.

When the Soldiers have applied to their Captains, and are refused by them, they may then apply to their Colonels: but they ought not to do it 'till they have been with their Captains, for the same Reason that an Officer ought not to apply to the Governour till he has been with his Colonel.

A R T I C L E II.

All Soldiers, who have Leave to go out of the Garrison, must have Passports signed by the Governour, specifying the Regiment to which they belong, the Place they are to go to, and the Time they have Leave to be Absent; the Particulars of which must be given in by the Adjutant to the Town-Major. Whoever goes without one of these Passports, or is found taking a contrary Road to that which is express'd in it, will be look'd upon as a Defenter, and when taken, Try'd accordingly. It is therefore the Duty of the Officers on the Port-Guards, to examine all Soldiers who shall come into the Town, and don't belong to the Garrison; and when they find any of them without a Pass, or that they have taken a wrong Route, or have any Reason to suspect it Forg'd, they are to send them to the Main-Guard, in order to their being further examin'd by the Governour, or those whom he shall appoint for that Purpose; and if they are found to be Deserters, they should be secured, 'till they can be sent to their Regiments to be Try'd as such.

When Officers on Party meet any Soldiers, they must examine their Passports; and if they have any Reason to suspect them, they must take them Prisoners, and deliver them over to the Main-Guard when they return to their Garrison, and acquaint the Governour with it.

No Regiment can hold a Court-Martial, or punish any of their Men, without first obtaining the Governour's Leave, or the Commandant's in his Absence: However, it is Customary, upon the first Application which the Colonel makes of this kind to the Governour, to give him a discretionary Power to hold Regimental Courts-Martial, as often as he shall have Occasion, and to put the Sentence in Execution,

tion, provided the Regiment is not to be under Arms at the Performing it; because no Colonel can order his Regiment under Arms, either for Exercise, punishing Offenders, or otherwise, without having Leave every time from the Governour: Therefore, it is usual to punish the Soldier on the Regimental Parade, in the Presence of the Men who mount the Guard in the Morning, unless the Sentence directs any one to Run the Gantlet thorough the Regiment.

When the Colonel, or Commanding Officer, would have the Regiment under Arms for Exercise, Review, or to Punish any of his Men, he must send the Adjutant to the Town-Major, that he may acquaint the Governour with it when he goes to receive the Night-Orders; and if granted the Town-Major is to give out, in Publick, Orders, that such a Regiment is to be under Arms, &c. to-morrow Morning.

The Ceremony of giving out in Publick Orders, when Regiments are to be under Arms, has an Appearance as if it was only to keep up the Authority of the Governour, and to shew his Command over the Troops in the Garrison: And indeed, I never heard any Reason given for it, but that it was the Custom: However, it can't be doubted, but that a better Reason than Custom can be given for it: but since it has not come to my Knowledge, I beg leave to offer my own Opinion on that Head.

Should a Part of the Garrison Draw out in the Morning without the Rest being appris'd of it, they might imagine that it proceeded from some Attempt of the Enemy, who were going to Surprise the Town, and consequently occasion their Beating to Arms: Therefore to prevent these false Alarms, which would not only Fatigue the Troops, but, by their being too often repeated, make them Dilatory in repairing to their Alarm-Posts upon a real Occasion; as also cause a Bustle and Disturbance in the Town: It is therefore Necessary, that it should be given out in Orders by the Town-Major the Night before, when any of the Troops are to be under Arms, that all may know it. Besides, the Assembling of Troops without the Governour's Leave, must put the Town in the Power of those Officers who Command them; especially 'if we will suppose any ill Intention, or Correspondence with the Enemy: For tho' it is to be presumed, that Officers of their Rank are above Temptation, yet Instances of the Contrary may be given; and in War particularly, we ought not to rely on what they will not do, but what they cannot do.

ARTICLE III.

In case of an Alarum, the Officers and Soldiers, who are not on Guard, are to repair with their Arms, immediately to their Alarum Posts.

Upon these Occasions, the Colonel's Company may be order'd to Assemble where the Colours are Lodg'd, which is generally at the Colonel's Quarters, to Guard them from thence to the Alarum Post of the Regiment.

Some times all the Field Officers Companies are order'd to Assemble there; but unless the Garrison is very Numerous, they will be of more Service with the Regiment, one Company being sufficient to Guard them; the Ensigns who are to carry the Colours are to Assemble there at the same time.

The Reason for the Troops being order'd to their Alarum Posts, may proceed from one of the Three following Causes :

First, Upon the Appearance of the Enemy before the Town, or Intelligence being brought, that a Body of their Troops are marching towards it; therefore to prevent a Surprise, it will be proper to order the Regiments to repair to their Alarum Posts.

Secondly, Upon any considerable Rising of the Inhabitants, or Tumult in the Town, that the Governor may be able to disperse the Mob and bring the Offenders to Justice.

Thirdly, Upon a Fire breaking out in the Town, it is extremely necessary to have the Troops at their Alarum Posts, for by their being assembled, they may be sent under the Command of their Officers to Assist in the extinguishing of it, and to keep the Streets open that the Engines may be brought to play; as also to keep the Mob from stealing the Goods which may be saved from the Flames. Besides, as the Town may be set on Fire by a Stratagem of the Enemy, and, by lodging a Body of Troops at some Distance from the Town, they may endeavour to seize one of the Gates, during the Consternation, which, by the Assistance of the Inhabitants, might be easily effected, were the Precaution of shutting the Gates and assembling the Troops omitted.

But on whatever Occasion the Alarm may be given, when the Troops are assembled, no Colonel must dismiss his Regiment, tho' it should prove a false Alarm, 'till he receives the Governour's or Commandant's Orders for it. Thus far I have endeavour'd to shew the Command which a Governour

vernour of a Town has over the Troops in it, and how the Officers and Soldiers are to conduct themselves towards him on that Head; and in the following Article I shall shew the Respect which is to be paid to him, and the other Officers who shall come into the Garrison, by the Guards.

ARTICLE IV.

All Governours whose Commissions in the Army are under the Degree of General Officers, shall have, in their own Garrison, all the Guards turn out with Rested Arms, and beat one Ruffle; and tho' the Main-Guard turns out with Rested Arms every time he passes, yet they give him the Compliment of the Drum but once a Day; but all the other Guards beat as often as he appears near them.

If they are General Officers likewise, they are then to have the further Compliments paid them, by the several Beatings of the Drum, as is Practis'd in the Army, and are as follows.

To Generals of the Horse and Foot, the Guards turn out, Rest their Arms, Beat a March, and the Officers Salute.

To Lieutenant-Generals, they turn out, Rest their Arms, Beat three Ruffles, but not Salute.

To Major-Generals, turn out, Rest their Arms, and Beat two Ruffles.

To Brigadier-Generals, they turn out with Rested Arms only; but of late they have added one Ruffle to the Compliment.

To Colonels, their own Quarter-Guards turn out, and Rest their Arms, once a Day; after which, they only turn out with Order'd Arms.

The Lieutenant-Colonels, their own Quarter-Guards turn out with Shoulder'd Arms, once a Day; at other times they only turn out, and stand by their Arms.

To Majors, their own Guards turn out with Order'd Arms, once a Day; at all other times they stand by their Arms.

When a Lieutenant-Colonel, or a Major, commands a Regiment, their own Quarter-Guards pay them the same Compliment as is order'd for the Colonel.

All Sentries Rest their Arms to their own Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major; but to those of another Regiment, they only stand Shoulder'd. This Ceremony is the same both in Camp and Garrison.

The Main-Guard is to Rest their Arms to the Governour, and pay him the Compliment with the Drum, as before directed. If he continues to walk on the Parade, or before the Guard, they may lay down their Arms.

All Sentries are to Rest their Arms as he passes them, or comes near their Posts.

A General of the Horse and Foot, when in Garrison, has a Serjeant and two Sentries at his Door.

All Lieutenant-Generals have the same; but the Compliment paid them by the Guards in a Garrison, differs from that in Camp: For tho' they are to have but three Ruffles from the Main-Guard, yet the Officers of that Guard are to Salute them once a Day; but all other Guards are to Beat a March, and Salute them as often as they pass.

A Major-General is to have two Sentries at his Door, and the same Compliment paid him by the Guards, as in Camp.

A Brigadier is to have one Sentry at his Door, and one Ruffle from all the Guards in the Garrison.

All Colonels, or Officers who command Battalions, are to have one Sentry, which they are to take from their own Regiments; but those Colonels who have no Regiments in the Town, are to have the Sentry from the Main-guard, or one of the Port-Guards, if their Lodgings lie more convenient for them.

The Main-Guard is to turn out, and stand by their Arms once a Day to all Colonels; but all other Guards must Order their Arms for them as often as they pass.

The Main-Guard is to pay no Compliment to the Lieutenant Colonels, and Majors; but the other Guards, are to stand by their Arms for them.

Lieutenant-Governours are to be treated in their own Garrisons as Colonels, and the Majors Commandant as Lieutenant-Colonels, unless their Rank in the Army entitles them to a greater Compliment; but when either of them command the Garrison, they are then treated in all Respects as Governour.

When the Governour, Lieutenant-Governour, and the Major Commandant are absent, or by Sickness rendered incapable of Acting, the eldest Officer in the Garrison is to take the Command upon him, who is called Commandant of the Garrison, and has all the Respect paid him by the Guards as Governour, except that of the Drum; unless his Rank in the Army entitled him to it before.

These

These were Rules established by King *William*; but of late the Governours who are General Officers have a March Beat to them in their own Garrisons: However, by the best Information I could get, I do not find that the Governours who are not General Officers, have exceeded the former Compliment of one Ruffle.

A Captain-General of *Great-Britain*, a Marshal of *France*, and a Velt-Marshal of the *Empire*, being the chief Military Titles of those Kingdoms, which are given to Subjects, they are all treated with the same Degree of Respect, both in Camp and Garrison.

When a Marshal of *France* comes into any of their own Garrisons, the Streets are lin'd, by the Troops, from the Gate where he enters, to his Lodging; the Soldiers Rest their Firelocks, the Drummers Beat a March, and he is saluted by all the Officers and Colours. His Guard, which consists of a Captain, Lieutenant, and Ensign with Colours, and 50 Men, are placed at his Door before he comes into the Town. He commands all Governours, and they are to receive the Parole from him. This is the Custom in *France*, and establish'd by the King's Order.

How far this Method may be consistent in *England*, in regard to a Captain-General, is what I can't determine, there being no Regulation of this Kind establish'd by the Royal Authority, that I know of: but as the late Duke of *Marlborough* (a Copy of whose Commission of Captain-General is hereto Annexed) had the same Honours paid him in all the Garrisons Abroad, I presume he look'd upon them as his due.

A N N E R.

A N N E, by the Grace of God, &c. To our Right Trusty and Right Well beloved Cousin and Councillor, John Earl of Marlborough, Greeting. WHEREAS We have thought it Necessary for Our Service to Appoint and Constitute a Captain-General for the Commanding, Regulating, and Keeping in Discipline Our Troops and Land Forces, which are, or shall be allowed by Act of Parliament to be raised and kept on Foot: KNOW YE, therefore, that We, reposing Especial Trust and Confidence in the approved Wisdom, Fidelity, Valour, great Experience, and Abilities of You, the said John Earl of Marlborough,

borough, Have Constituted and Appointed, and by these Presents do Constitute and Appoint You to be Captain-General of all our Troops and Land Forces, already raised, and hereafter to be raised, as aforesaid, and Employed in our Service, within our Kingdom of England, Dominion of Wales, and Town of Berwick upon Tweed, or which are, or shall be Employed abroad in Conjunction with the Troops of our Allies. **GIVING**, and by these Presents granting unto you full Power and Authority, by Yourself, Commanders, Captains, and other Officers, them to Exercise, Array, and put in Readiness, and, according to the Provision of Arms appointed for them, well and sufficiently cause to be Weaponed and Armed, and to take, or cause to be taken, the Musters of them, or any of them, (by the Commissary-General of the Musters, or his Deputies, or by such other Officers as he shall assign for that Purpose) as often as you shall see Cause; and the said Forces to divide into Parties, Regiments, Troops, and Companies, and with them, or any of them respectively, to resist all Invasions which shall be made by our Enemies, and to suppress all Rebellions and Insurrections which shall by levelling War be made against Us; and all Enemies making such Invasion, and Rebels who shall so level War, and be found making Resistance, to Fight with, kill and destroy. As also with full Power and Authority for Us, and in Our Name, as Occasion shall require, according to your Discretion, by Proclamation or otherwise, to tender our Royal Mercy and Pardon to all such Enemies and Rebels as shall submit themselves to Us, and desire to be received into Our Grace and Pardon. And We do likewise Give and Grant unto You full Power and Authority to hold, or cause to be held, from time to time, as often as there shall be Occasion, according to your Discretion, one, or more, Military or Martial Court, or Courts, in pursuance of, and according to the Purport and true Meaning of an Act of Parliament passed in the Thirteenth Year of the Reign of our late dearest Brother King William the Third, of Ever Blessed Memory, Intituled, An Act for punishing of Officers and Soldiers that shall Mutiny or Desert in England or Ireland: And in the same Court, or Courts, to hear, examine, determine, and punish all Mutinies, Disobedience, Departure from Captains, Commanders, and Governours, according to the Directions of the said Act, and to cause the Sentence or Sentences of the said Courts to be put in Execution, or to suspend the same as you shall see Cause. To have, hold, exercise, and enjoy, the said Office of Captain-General, and to perform and execute the Powers and Authorities

Authorities aforesaid, and all other Matters and Things which to your said Office doth or may, of right, belong, and appertain unto you, during Our Pleasure. Willing and Commanding all Officers, Soldiers, and Persons whatsoever, any way concern'd, to be Obedient and Assisting to you Our Captain-General, in all Things touching the due Execution of this Our Commission, according to the Purport and Intent thereof. In Witness, &c. Witness, &c.

EX. EDW. NORTHEY.

May it please your Most Excellent Majesty.

YOUR Majesty is hereby graciously pleased to Constitute John Earl of Marlborough, Captain-General of all your Land Forces within your Kingdom of England, Dominion of Wales, and Town of Berwick upon Tweed, or which are, or shall be Employed abroad in Conjunction with the Troops of Your Allies, Impowering him to execute all the Powers and Authorities thereunto belonging, during your Majesty's Pleasure.

Signified to be your Majesty's Pleasure by Warrant under your Royal Sign Manual, Countersign'd

By Mr. Secretary VERNON.

March 12, 170 $\frac{1}{2}$.

EDW. NORTHEY.

A R T I C L E V.

Whoever Commands in a Castle, Fort, Redoubt or Citadel belonging to the Town, must send every Day to the Governour or Commandant of the Town for the Orders.

The same Rules are to be observed by the Garrison of the Citadel as are given for those of the Town; only with this Difference, that the Governour of the Citadel is not to suffer above one Third of the Officers to be out at a time,

tho' they should only desire to walk into the Town. This is the Method establish'd in *France*. But as the Citadels in that Kingdom are built to be a Check upon the Towns, in order to keep the Inhabitants in awe, this strict Rule may be very proper, lest by suffering the Officers and Soldiers to go out at Pleasure, it might be surprized, when there remain'd only the ordinary Guards to defend it. But where the Case is not the same, I presume, the Governour may, in some degree, dispense with this Order, by not Adhering so strictly to it.

As there are separate Governours for the most part in *France*, the Governour of the Town has no Command over the Governour or Garrison of the Citadel; neither has he the Liberty of going into the Citadel without Leave of the Governour of it: However, the Governour of the Citadel is obliged to send every Day to the Governour of the Town for the Parole, tho' his Rank in the Army should be Superior to the other's. This may be thought absurd, that a Superior must send to an Inferior for the Word; but thus it is establish'd in *France*; and it is very common there, to find the Governour of the Citadel an elder Officer, than the Governour of the Town; which may proceed from the great Dependance they have on their Citadels, and therefore chuse Officers of Considerable Rank and Experience for their Governours; and as there are no ill Consequences attending it, by being no Diminution to their Rank in the Army they all submit to it.

A R T I C L E VI.

The Town-Major and the Town-Adjutants are to Visit all the Guard-Rooms, Caserns, and Barracks pretty often to see that they are kept in good Order, and that the Furniture and Utenfils belonging to them are neither lost nor damag'd more than what may be reasonably expected. They are likewise to View all the Parts of the Fortifications, the Sentry-Boxes, Platforms, Batteries of Cannon, spare Carriages, &c. and that the Palisades are not stolen or decay'd, and make a Report of the same to the Governour, that those Things, which are out of order, may be repair'd in time.

In Frontier Garrisons, those who keep publick Houses must send an Account in Writing every Night of all their Lodgers to the Town-Major, specifying their Names, Quality, and Country, when they came into the Town, and
from

from whence; that he may shew it to the Governour, in order to compare it with the Night-Report from the Captain of the Main-Guard, by which he will know whether the Officers of the Port-Guards do their Duty, in examining all Strangers who come into the Town, or the Inn-keepers conceal any of their Lodgers, or that those who came in gave a wrong Account of the Place where they were to lodge, by having some evil Design to manage, that he may take proper Measures for their being found out, and punish'd according to their Deserts. In time of War, all private Houses are oblig'd to give an Account to the Town-Major when any Stranger lodges with them.

Where the Towns are large, they have Commissaries appointed to take an Account of the Strangers from the publick and private Houses, it being impossible for a Town-Major to perform this and all other Parts of his Duty.

The following Plan is a Table for all the Duty which is done by the Officers and Serjeants in a Garrison, and which is kept by the Town-Major, and the Adjutants of the several Regiments. As each Battalion gives an equal Proportion of Men, there is no Occasion for the inserting of a Column in the said Table for them.

A Table for the several Duties in a Garrison, to be kept by the Town-Major, and the Adjutants, of the Regiments.

Regi-ments	Town-Guards.			Reserve			Detach-ments.			General Courts Martial.		Exami-nation.		Visiting of the Hospital.	
	Captains	Sabalt.	Serjeants	Captains	Subalt.	Serjeants	Captains	Subalt.	Serjeants	Captains	Sabalt.	Captains	Subalt.	Captains	Subalt.



C H A P. XV.

Consisting of Camp-Duty.

A R T I C L E I.



Y Camp-Duty, as I understand it, is meant, Guards Ordinary and Extraordinary; tho' by taking it in its full Extent, it will include every Part of the Service which is to be perform'd by the Troops during the Campaign; but as I have treated on several Branches before, I shall now proceed to that which relates to the Ordinary and Extraordinary Guards: And as a great Part of the Camp-Duty is perform'd in the same manner as that of a Garrison, I shall only give Directions for those Parts in which they differ.

Guards Ordinary, are such as are fix'd during the Campaign, and are reliev'd regularly at a certain Hour every Day; and are as follows. The Grand-Guards of the Cavalry, the Standard and Quarter-Guards, and the Picquet-Guards of each Regiment; the Guards, for the General-Officers, Train of Artillery, Bread-Waggons, Quarter-Master-General, Majors of Brigade, Judge-Advocate, and Provost-Marshal.

Every Battalion of Foot has for the Quarter-Guard, a Subaltern, 2 Serjeants, one Drummer, and 40 Men; and for the Picquet-Guard, a Captain, 2 Subalterns, 3 Serjeants, 2 Drummers, and 50 Men. As every Battalion has the same constantly, the Majors of Brigade keep no Detail of this Duty. The Complement of the other Guards are as follows.

GUARDS

G U A R D S.

The General in Chief has

General of the Foot

Each Lieutenant-General

Each Major-General

Each Brigadier

Quarter-Master-General, as such only,

Each Major of Brigade

Judge-Advocate

Provost-Marshal, as such, a Serjeant
and 12 Men, but when he has Pri-
soners, there is added a Subaltern,
Serjeant, Drummer and 30 Men.

Capt.	Subalt.	Serj.	Drum.	Private Soldiers
1	2	2	2	50
1	1	1	1	40
1	1	1	1	30
1	1	1	1	20
		1		14
		1		10
		1		7
		1		7
1	2	1	1	42

The Train of Artillery, according to the Number they shall require.

The Guard which mounts on the General in Chief, has always Colours.

A R T I C L E II.

Method of Mounting and Dismounting of the Quarter-Guards.

As soon as the Troop has done beating, which is generally about Nine in the Morning, the Men who mount the Quarter-Guard are to be form'd into a Rank entire, on the first or outermost Line of Parade, facing outwards, and directly in the Front of the Colours.

When they are form'd, the Adjutants are to deliver them to the Officers who Mount, on which they are to place themselves at the Head of their Men, with their Half-Pikes in their Hands. After this, the Officer who commands the Quarter-Guard of the Regiment on the Right of the Line orders his Drummer to beat a short Preparative, which is to be follow'd by the Drummers of all the Quarter-Guards which are to mount. This Preparative is to give them Notice that they may be ready to march all at the same time.

As soon as the Officer on the Right judges that the Drummers on the Left have answer'd his Preparative, he is to march his Guards straight forward, on which the rest are to do

do the same, keeping an equal Pace with him ; and when they come within six Paces of the Old Quarter-Guards, they are to Halt, Face their Men 'till the Serjeants have Dress'd them, then order them to Rest their Firelocks, and then Face to the other Guards ; at which the Officers advance towards one another, and the Officers of the Old Guards deliver their Orders to those of the New. Then goes on the Relief of the Sentries, Delivering of the Quarter-Guards, Tents, &c. in the same Manner as is directed in Garrison-Duty. While the Sentries are Relieving, the Officers of the New Guards are to Face their Men to the Left, and open them to a proper Distance, that the Men of the Old Guards may pass between them.

As soon as the Sentries are Reliev'd, the Officer who Dis-mounts on the Right of the Line, orders his Drummer to Beat a Preparative, which is to be answer'd by all the other Drummers who are to Dismount ; after which they are to order the Men of the Old Guards to Club their Firelocks and March, which they are all to do at the same time, taking their Motions from that on the Right of the Line. When the Old Guards Club, the New ones are to Rest.

The Officers who dismount, are to Troop their Guards to the first Line of Parade, and then Halt ; after which they are to order the Men to Rest their Firelocks, Recover their Arms, and March and Lodge them in their Bells of Arms. The Officers are then to make a Report to the Commanding Officers and Major of their own Regiments, of every Thing that happen'd during the time they were on Guard, with the Names and Crimes of the Prisoners in Writing, and by whom committed.

When the Old Quarter-Guards are march'd off, the Officers of the new Guards are to order their Men to Recover their Arms, Face to the Right, and March into the Ground where the others stood ; after which to lay down their Arms.

The same Orders which were given to the Guards in Garrison about the Officers keeping their Guards ; their not allowing above two Men to go off at a time ; the relieving of Sentries, and how they are to behave themselves by Day and by Night ; the Receiving of Rounds, and the Respect to be paid to the General Officers, must be punctually follow'd by the Guards, with this difference only, that the Quarter-Guards are to give but three Ruffles to a Lieutenant General, and no Salute.

The

The Quarter-Guards are to be placed about 74 Yards in the Front, and directly opposite to the Center of their own Regiments, Facing them. The Design of a Quarter-Guard, is rather for preserving the Peace and Tranquillity within the Regiment by quelling all Disputes that may arise, either between Officer and Officer, or amongst the Soldiers, than for a Security against the Enemy: However they are not to neglect that Part neither, but to have a watchful Eye to the Front, lest some of the Enemy's Parties should pass the Grand-Guards in the Night, and fall upon them before they have time to prepare for their Defence.

Immediately after the Tat-too, the Officer of the Quarter-Guard is to Detach a Serjeant and ten Men to the Rear of the Regiment, where they are to remain 'till the Reveille has Beat; after which they are to join their Guard. This Detachment is call'd the Rear-Guard of the Regiment. The Rear-Guard is to take care that no Disorders are committed in the Sutlers Tents or Booths; to oblige them to put out their Fire and Candle in due time, and that they entertain Nobody after the Retreat. They are likewise to take care that the Horses belonging to the Regiment are not Stole; and when any of them break loose, they are to stop them, and call those who have the care of them to catch them. When they find any Soldier or Soldiers drinking in a Sutler's Tent at an improper Time, they are to carry both the Soldiers and the Sutler Prisoners to the Quarter-Guard, where they are to remain 'till the Commanding Officer thinks proper to Release them, or to have them Try'd by a Regimental Court-Martial, in order to their being punished for their Crimes.

An Hour after the beating the Retreat, the Officer of the Quarter-Guard is to send a Patrol of a Serjeant and six Men round the Regiment, to see if the Sutlers have obey'd the above Orders; to oblige the Soldiers to put out all their Lights; and to visit all the Sentries, to see that they are Alert on their Posts; and if they find one asleep, they are to secure his Firelock, and send immediately to the Corporal of the Guard to have him reliev'd and committed a close Prisoner, 'till he can be try'd for his Crime. When the Serjeant returns with the Patrol, he is to make a Report of what happen'd, and what state he found every thing in, to his Officer.

These Patrols should be sent every two Hours, that is, an Hour after each Relief, during the Night; so that with the

Relief and the Patrol, the Sentries, and the several Parts of the Regiment, will be visited every Hour.

Upon any Noise or Disturbance in the Regiment, the Officer of the Quarter-Guard is to send a Serjeant, and a File of Men, to enquire into the Reasons of it, and to put a stop to all Disorders that may arise. If the Serjeant finds the Soldiers Quarrelling, he must bring them Prisoners to the Guard; but if it is amongst the Officers, he must send immediately to his Officer, that he may come and confine them to their Tents; and in the mean time the Serjeant must not suffer them to Fight, which if they persist in doing, he is empowered to use Force to prevent it, 'till the Officer of the Guard comes. In short, the Officer of the Quarter-Guard is to have the same Inspection over every thing that happens in the Regiment, as the Captain of the Main-Guard has over that of a Garrison.

A R T I C L E III.

All the other Guards Ordinary, except the Picquet, Mount immediately after the Beating of the Troop.

There are two Parades for the forming of all Guards or Parties, that are done by Detachments from each Regiment.

The First is called the Parade of the Brigade, and the Second, the Grand-Parade.

The Parade of the Brigade is generally at the Head of the Eldest Regiment of each Brigade, and the Grand-Parade about the Center of the First Line.

The Adjutants are to draw out the Men, who shall be ordered to Mount, at the Head of their own Regiments, first, and to examine into the Condition of their Arms, Ammunition, and Accoutrements, and to see that they are Clean and well dress'd; after which they are to conduct them to the Parade of the Brigade, and deliver them over to the Major of Brigade, and to wait there 'till he has look'd into their State and Numbers, that they may answer for what is wanting.

The Adjutants are to do the same by all Detachments that shall be order'd from their Regiments, whether by Day or by Night, and not to leave it to be done by the Serjeants-Major, as is but too frequently practis'd.

The

The Majors of Brigade must therefore be on the Parade, to receive all Detachments, that shall be order'd from the Brigade, from the Adjutants of the several Regiments, and to oblige them to attend him 'till they are sent to the Grand-Parade.

Unless the Majors of Brigade are very punctual in performing this Part of their Duty, it is almost certain that the Adjutants will be remiss in theirs, particularly in those which shall be commanded out in the Night: For when they know that the Major of Brigade won't be at the Parade to Form the Detachment, they will be apt to lie in their Beds, and order the Serjeant-Major to Draw out the Men, and March them to the Parade; the Consequence of which may prove detrimental to the Service, both in the Loss of Time, and for want of a due Inspection into the Mens Arms and Ammunition, since we may naturally suppose, that the Corporals will not be quite so Diligent in Drawing out their Men for the Serjeant-Major, as for the Adjutant, nor take so much Care about their Arms and Ammunition, by not having the Adjutant present to look into it.

'Tis from such Neglects as these, that a great many Designs miscarry; for let a Scheme be ever so well concerted, one half Hour's Neglect, or Loss of Time in the Executive Part, may be sufficient to disappoint the Whole, or occasion a much greater Difficulty in the Success. It is therefore absolutely Necessary, that the Major of Brigade see all the Detachments of their own Brigade paraded, at whatever time they shall be ordered, and oblige the Adjutants to attend them 'till they are sent to the Grand-Parade.

When a Major of Brigade is of the Day, he must appoint one of the Adjutants of his Brigade, to see all the Detachments of it form'd during the time he is on that Duty.

The Detachments are to draw up on the Parade of the Brigade in the same Manner as the Regiments are Encamp'd; thus: the eldest on the Right, the second on the Left; and so on from Right to Left, 'till the Youngest comes in the Center.

As soon as the Detachments from the several Regiments are paraded, and that the Major of Brigade has examin'd into their Condition and Numbers, he is to order the Officers, who Mount with the Men, to march them to the Grand-Parade: the particular Method for the Forming of them there, and detaching them from thence, shall be mentioned in the following Article.

ARTICLE IV.

The Major of Brigade of the Day is to be on the Grand-Parade, to receive the Detachments from the several Brigades in the same Manner as each particular Major of Brigade do those from the several Regiments of their own Brigades ; and to Examine whether each Brigade have sent the Number of Officers and Soldiers as was Order'd.

The Detachments from the several Brigades are not to be Drawn up by Seniority, but by Lot, as directed for Garrison-Duty ; Therefore, the Major of Brigade of the Day must have as many Lots ready as there are Brigades in the Foot, and order a Serjeant of a Brigade to draw for them, according to which they are to draw up on the Grand-Parade.

As soon as the Detachments are drawn up, the Serjeants are to draw up in the Front of their own Men, in the same Manner as is directed in forming the Guards in a Garrison ; after which, the Major of Brigade of the Day is to Tell off the several Guards as the Town-Major does, by beginning at the Right, appointing the Serjeants to them, and ordering the Men, as they are Told off, to Order their Arms. When all the Guards are Told off, the Officers are then to draw for their Guards ; But as this may occasion the Officers on the Right of the Line to Mount with the Men on the Left, I am of Opinion, that it would be more Proper to place the Officers, as near as possible, to those Guards to which the Men of their own Brigades are Detach'd : For as the Brigades are to draw every Day for their Posts on the Grand-Parade, it will hardly fall out, that the same Guards will come to their share two Days together ; and therefore can't fall harder on one Brigade than another. My Reason why I think this Method preferable to that of the Officers drawing for their Guards, is that when the Guards are Reliev'd, the Officers should march to the Parade of the Brigade, and dismiss them there, instead of the Grand-Parade, by which means they will be Dismiss'd near their own Encampment ; whereas by Dismissing them on the Grand-Parade, those Men who are Encamp'd on the Extremities of the First and Second Lines, will have a considerably Way to go to their Regiments, if the Army is tolerably Large, and thereby not only Fatigue them, but throw the Temptation of a Suttler's Tent in their Way, and, by getting Drunk, lose their Arms

Arms and Accoutrements, and the Fear of being punished for the same may induce them to Desert; but by the Method I propose, this Inconveniency will be, in a great measure avoided, since the Men will be dismissed near their own Brigade.

When the Officers are to Draw for their Guards, as is the general Practice, they are, when reliev'd, to March their Guards to the Grand Parade, and dismiss them there.

The General Officer's Guard, according to their Seniority are to be Told off first; then that for the Train, Prevost Marshal, &c.

As soon as the Officers are posted to their Guards, the Men may be Order'd to Shoulder their Arms by Beat of Drum. After that, the Major of Brigade of the Day is to order the Guards to March off in the same Manner as is practic'd by the Town-Major in a Garrison, and to see them all March off from the Parade, before he leaves it.

When an Army is compos'd of the Troops of different Princes, those Troops are commanded by General Officers of their own; in which case, the General Officers have Guards from their own Troops; so that those Guards don't come in to the General Detail of the Army, but are kept a part by the Majors of Brigade belonging to those Troops; therefore those Guards are not Detached from the Grand-Parade, and consequently don't come under the Cognizance of the Major of Brigade of the Day. However, the above Method will serve for each Nation, and their own Majors of Brigade must take it Day about to Parade their own Guards.

When it thus happens, the Guards Ordinary, which the Major of Brigade of the Day is to Detach from the Grand-Parade, are those of the Train, Provoc-General of the Army, and the Bread Waggon; as also any other for which the Whole Army is to give an equal Proportion of Officers and Soldiers.

A R T I C L E V.

The Picquet Guard, as it is call'd, is a Body of Men who are to be always ready to March at a Moment's Warning, either to sustain Out-Posts, Foraging Escorts, or, in case the Enemy should endeavour to Surprize you in your Camp, to March out and Attack them, in order to give the Army time to Draw up.

The Number which every Battalion gives to the Picquet, is mention'd in the first Article. When the Picquet is or-

der'd to March, another is immediately order'd to supply their Room, in case a Second should be commanded out.

The Picquet-Guard continues on Duty only 24 Hours, and is drawn out at the Head of each Battalion every Night, in the following manner :

While the Drummers are beating the Tat-too, the Men who mount the Picquet are to be drawn up, at the Head of their Street, three deep, with Shoulder'd Arms ; and when the Drummers have done Beating, the Captain of the Picquet is to order the Men to March, which they are to do very slow, and in a direct Line to the Front, casting their Eyes to the Right and Left, that they may all March even. When they have marched to a proper Distance from the Tents, he is to order them to Halt ; after that to close them to the Center, and then to order the Serjeants to compleat the Files. As soon as the Files are compleated, the Captains and the two Subalterns are to examine the Mens Arms, and to see if they are loaded (which is to be with a Running Ball) and Prim'd ; as also to look into their Ammunition. After this, the Captain is to caution the Men not to stir from the Regiment ; to keep their Arms by them in their Tents ; to lie in their Cloaths and Accoutrements, that they may be ready to Turn out at Moment's Warning, and to remember their Ranks and Files, that they are then drawn up in, that in case they should be ordered out upon Service, or for the Lieutenant-General of the Day to see them, they may fall into their own Places, that no time may be lost in compleating them again. When this is done, he orders the Men to *Rest their Firelocks ; Recover their Arms ; Face to the Right-about, and March to their Tents.* The eldest Serjeant of the Picquet is to get a List of the Mens Names immediately, and give it to the Captain, that if any one is wanting, when the Picquet is order'd out, they may know who it is, in order to his being punished for Neglect of Duty ; as also to prevent the Men being changed, or order'd out upon any other Command, while they are on the Picquet ; for should the Men be changed, how should the Officers of the Picquet know whether their Mens Arms were in order or not, or that they were provided with Ammunition ? For which Reason, they should always order those Men on the Picquet-Guard who came last off Duty, that others may not be commanded on Guards or Detachments out of their Turns, by having those Men on the Picquet who are the first on the Roll to go on Duty.

The

The Orderly Corporal of each Company is to place himself, with his Arms in his Hand, about eight Paces in the Front, and facing his own Men, during the time that the Picquet is under Arms, that, when the Officers are examining the Mens Arms and Ammunition, he may be ready to answer for every thing that shall be found out of order; it is therefore the Duty of those Corporals to take particular care that the Men have all things in proper order before they are drawn out, otherwise the Punishment will fall on them instead of the Men.

The Quarter-Guards are to Turn out, and remain with Shoulder'd Arms during the Time that the Picquet continues at the Head of the Regiments; and when the Picquet is Turned in, the Men of the Quarter Guard are to Lodge their Arms, either in their Bell of Arms, or Shed erected to keep them dry.

Most Regiments have a distinct Roll of the Picquet-Duty for the Officers, from that of Guards Ordinary and Extraordinary, which Roll begins with the Youngest, as the other does with the Eldest, that the Officers may have an equal Share of each Duty; but whenever the Picquet marches from the Head of the Line, it passes for a Duty both to the Officers and Soldiers, and is allowed them in their next Tour.

If the Picquet of one Regiment, or one Brigade, or that of one Wing, should March, and not the Rest, those Regiments whose Picquet march'd, are to be allowed it in the Grand Detail of Duty.

Besides the Officers of the Picquet already mentioned, there are General-Officers and Field-Officers appointed to command them.

The Generals so order'd, are call'd General Officers of the Day: and the Field-Officers are call'd Field-Officers of the Picquet.

The General Officers of the Day for the Infantry, are Three, a Lieutenant-General, a Major-General, and a Brigadier-General, who are to March with, and take the Command of the Picquet when it is order'd out upon any Occasion: And as the Picquet is immediately under the Command of the Lieutenant-General of the Day, it is not to March without his Orders; therefore all Orders relating to the Picquet are sent directly to him, that he may give Direction for its Marching.

In case of an Alarum, the Picquets are to draw out at the Head of their Regiments; but not to March from thence 'till they receive Orders for it from the Lieutenant-General of the Day; and tho' it should prove a false Alarum, they are not to return to their Tents 'till he orders them.

The Number of Field-Officers appointed for the Picquet, is according to the Strength of the Army. But in order to give a proper Idea of the usual Method, we will suppose a Body of Infantry consisting of 108 Battalions Incamped in two Lines; the Front Line consisting of 56 Battalions, and the Second of 52. In this case, they always divide them into two Bodies, distinguished by the Right and Left Wings. In dividing them, they do not separate the Bodies from one another, or leave a greater Interval between the Regiments than ordinary; but only place the Half on the Right of both Lines in the Right Wing, and the Half on the Left of both Lines in the Left Wing; for the clearer Understanding of which I have hereunto annex'd a Plan of the said Number of Battalions, divided into Wings and Brigades, to shew how the Field-Officers are appointed for the Picquet; the Number of whom, to command the Picquet of this Body of Foot, can't be less, in my Opinion, than four Colonels, four Lieutenant-Colonels, and four Majors, two of each Rank for each Line: by which each Colonel in the Front Line will have the Command of the Picquets of 28 Battalions, which is 1400 Men, besides Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers; and those of the Rear Line will have the Command of the Picquets of 26 Battalions, which is 1300 Men, besides Officers, &c. and tho' these Numbers are above the Ordinary Commands of Colonels, yet, on extraordinary Occasions, it is usual for Colonels to have the Command of 1500 Men; but more particularly so in relation to the Picquet.

When the Infantry is thus divided into Wings, they generally do Duty apart; so that each Wing has a distinct Roster, or Roll of Duty, kept for it. In this Case, each Wing furnishes its own Field-Officers for the Picquet, and are appointed by Name to their several Commands in Publick Orders, in the following manner:

Such a Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, are for the Picquet of the Front Line, in the Right Wing.

Such a Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, are for the Picquet of the Second Line, in the Right Wing.

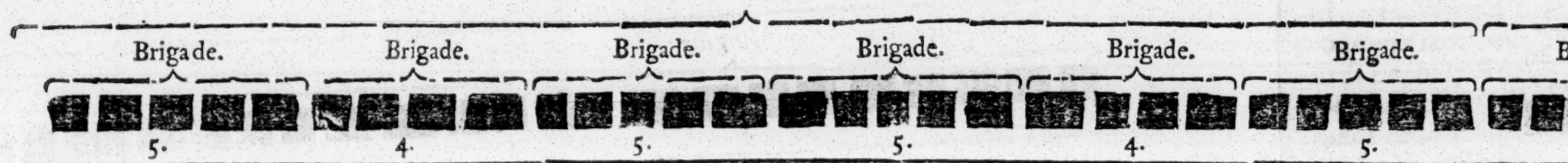
Such a Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, are for the Picquet of the Front Line, in the Left Wing.

Such

PLAN of 108 Battalions drawn up in Two Lines, divided into appointed for the

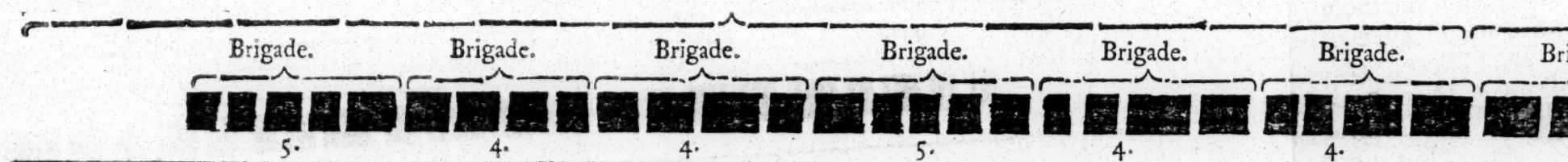
Front Line, consisting of 56 Battalions

Left Wing of the Front Line, containing 28 Battalions, Forming Six Brigades.



Second Line, consisting of 52 Battalions

Left Wing of the Second Line, containing 26 Battalions.

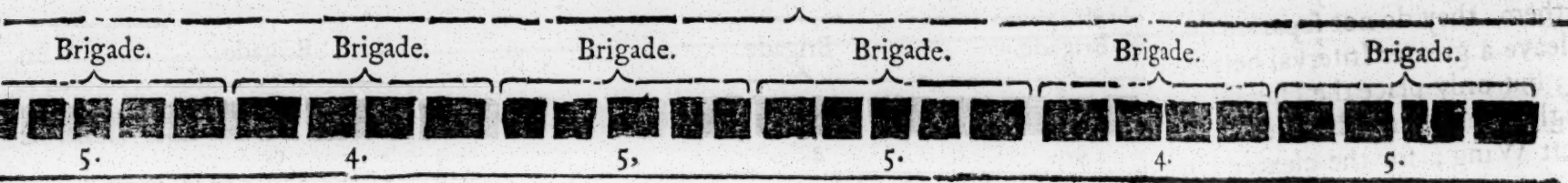


The Figures she

into Wings and Brigades, to shew how the Field Officers are
the Picquet.

lions, Form'd into 12 Brigades.

Right Wing of the Front Line, containing 28 Battalions, Form'd into Six Brigades.



Battalions, Form'd into 12 Brigades.

Right Wing of the Second Line, containing 26 Battalions.



shew the Number of Battalions in each Brigade.

Such a Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, are for the Picquet of the Second Line, in the Left Wing.

By the above Method of appointing the Field-Officers, they can immediately repair to their several Commands, and join the Picquets, over whom they are placed, into a Body, when they are order'd to march; and likewise know what Quarter-Guards they are to visit in going their Rounds.

As the Number over whom each Colonel of the Picquet is placed, would be too great to be continued in one Body, if they were order'd out upon Service; every Colonel should therefore divide his Men into two Bodies, giving the Command of the Second to the Lieutenant-Colonel of the Picquet who is under him; by which the Picquet will be divided into eight Bodies, four of which will consist of 700 Men each, and the other four of 650 Men each, besides Officers, Sergeants, and Drummers.

The dividing the Picquet in this Manner, is not with a View to lessen the Command of the Colonels, since those over whom their Lieutenant-Colonels are placed are to be still under their Direction; but only to make them more fit for Action, by reducing each Body pretty near the Complement of a Battalion; which Model is certainly the most perfect, since all the Infantry of *Europe* are divided into Battalions of about six or seven hundred Men each, and therefore sufficiently evinces the Truth of its being so.

As soon as Tat-too has beat, the Lieutenant-Colonels and Majors of the Picquet are to wait on the Colonels under whose Command they are appointed, to receive their Orders about going of the Rounds, and when they shall make their Reports to them.

I should think it would be very proper, that the Field-Officers of the Picquet should be order'd to repair to the Head of their Wings with their Scarfs on, at the beating the Tat-too, to see the Picquets drawn out. That should be the Place where the Colonels should give their Orders to the other Field-Officers, and not at their Tents or Quarters.

I own this is not the Practice; but according to my Notions of Discipline, it ought to be, since it could not fail of having a very good Effect; for when the others see the Field-Officers exact in performing their Duty, it will infuse the same Spirit into them; whereas, when they find those neglect Discipline who ought to support it, we may reasonably conclude, that they will follow their Example, in this, very punctually.

The Colonels of the Picquet go the Grand-Round, which is done about the same Time and in the same Manner as the Grand-Round in a Garrison.

When the Lieutenant-Colonels and Majors are order'd by their Colonels to go Rounds, which is generally after the Grand Round has gone, they are to be received on the Footing of Common-Rounds, and are therefore to give the Word to the Officers on Guard.

The Field Officers of the Picquet, in going their Rounds, are only to visit the Quarter-Guards of their Wing.

The Lieutenant-Colonels and Majors are to make their Report to the Colonels of the Picquet, that is, to those under whose Command they are placed, at the time which they shall appoint, which is commonly in the Morning; and the Colonels of the Picquet are to make their Report of the whole to the Lieutenant-General of the Day, at the Head Quarters, at Orderly Time.

If the General-Officers of the Day think proper to go Rounds, they are always to be received as Grand-Rounds, tho' the Grand Round should be made; and the Officers must give them the Word: Neither are they, nor the Grand-Round, oblig'd to dismount when they receive the Word.

Tho' it is positively said, that the Picquet shall not march from the Head of their Regiments 'till they receive Orders for it from the Lieutenant-General of the Day, yet it can't be supposed but that the Major-General and Brigadier of the Day, or the Colonels of the Picquet, may venture to march them upon an Emergency, without waiting for his Orders; otherwise the Intent and Design of the Picquet, that of putting a Stop to the Enemy 'till the Army can draw out, may be obstructed. For as the Lieutenant-General of the Day can't be in every Place at a time, should the Enemy appear on one Flank while he is at the other, or in the Center, his Orders might come too late for their Marching to oppose them. It can't therefore be doubted but that their Marching on such an Occasion, without waiting for his Orders, is not only excusable, but absolutely necessary: However, unless there is a real Necessity, no subordinate Officer should presume to order the Picquet to march, but by his Commands.

The Lieutenant-General of the Day may order the Picquet of any Battalion, to draw out under Arms, for him to see them, during any time of the Night; but the other General-Officers of the Day, or the Field-Officers of the Picquet, can't do it by their own Authority.

I must

I must beg leave to offer one thing of my own relating to the Picquet, which is this :

When the Picquet draws out upon any Alarum, the Colonels of the Picquet should have Directions, to join the Picquets of their Wing immediately into a Body, without waiting for the Lieutenant-General of the Day's Orders ; by which means they will be ready to march from the Head of the Line, as soon as they shall receive his Orders, which will save a great deal of Time, that will be lost if they are not to join 'till he orders them. For as the saving of an Out-post, or a Foraging Escort, when attack'd, depends on the Diligence of the Picquet, the Method I propose will contribute towards it in point of Time.

I do not mean that the Whole should join in one Body ; but that every Colonel should join those into a Body over whom he is appointed, the Place for which should be in the Front of the Center-Battalion of his Wing ; so that the Picquet should be form'd into as many Bodies as there are Colonels order'd for the Picquet : And if it should prove a false Alarum, they will have but a short way to march back to their Regiments, and therefore it can't be look'd on as a Fatigue ; but if it should prove a real one, the Advantage of their being join'd, is, in my Opinion, so plain, that it will not admit of an Objection : For when the General of the Day sends them Orders to march, his Aid-de-Camps will have an Occasion to deliver them only to the Colonels of the Picquet, which may be done in a very short time ; whereas, by the other way, they must stop at every Battalion, to give the Captain of the Picquet Orders where he is to march to ; and even after that, they must make a Halt, in order to be form'd into distinct Bodies under the Command of the Field Officers ; before they enter upon Action : So that by the Aid-de-Camp's stopping at every Battalion to deliver his Orders, and their halting afterwards to form them into distinct Bodies, a considerable Time must be lost ; whereas by the Method propos'd, they will be ready to march and enter upon Action upon the first Order.

As the *Germans* and *French* don't only differ from us, but also from one another, in some Particulars relating to their Picquet-Guard, I believe the inserting them here will not be thought improper ; since the knowing the Method of different Nations, may be of Service to an Officer on several Occasions.

ARTICLE IV.

The Picquet of the Imperialists and *French* consists of the same Number of Officers and Soldiers from each Battalion as is order'd for ours, and design'd for the same Use, that of having a Body of Men always ready, &c. But what we differ in from the *Germans*, is this, that our Picquets remain in their Tents all Night, and theirs serve as an Advanced Guard to the Army.

As soon as Tat-too has beat, and that the Officers have examin'd the Soldiers Arms and Ammunition, they march their Picquets about 80 or 100 Yards in the Front of their own Quarter-Guards, where they are to continue all Night, placing Sentries in their Front and on their Flanks; but those of the Front Line post a Serjeant's Guard about 30 or 40 Yards advanced, when they are near the Enemy, otherwise not, to which they send frequent Patrols.

If the Rear of their Army lies open, or that they are under any Apprehension of the Enemy's attempting to surprize them there, the Picquet of the second Line is then posted about the same Distance in the Rear of their Sutler Tents, Facing outwards, and taking the same Precautions as those of the Front Line, in posting of Sentries, and Serjeants Guards, &c.

By this means, they say, both the Front and Rear of their Army is secur'd, during the Night, from being insulted by an inconsiderable Number of the Enemy's Troops; and tho' they should Advance with a large Body, the Picquet would stop them so long, 'till the Army would have time to get to their Arms.

This is the Reason which they give for their Picquet-Guards lying out every Night, in the manner above-mention'd; and if they did it only when there was a real Occasion, the Reason would be good; but as it is their constant Practice, from the Opening of the Campaign to the End of it, it proceeds rather from Custom than Necessity; since their Situation can't be always such, as to be liable to a Surprize; and when they are not under those Circumstances, Acts of Supererogation, in my Opinion, ought to be avoided, that the Men may not be Fatigu'd to no Purpose.

I do not from hence condemn the Method, but the wrong Application. When the Armies are near one another; or that you are inferior to the Enemy, or particularly so in Horse,

Horse, whose Motions are quick, or that you are expos'd to their Insults by the Situation of your Camp, the drawing out of the Picquet, in the *German* manner, will be not only proper, but absolutely necessary: But when they are not under these Circumstances, it is very imprudent to act as if they were. It shews that the Commander in Chief has only attain'd to the Mechanical Part of the Service, but wants Judgment to apply it in the proper Season.

A General should be Careful, but not Diffident, lest it make a bad Impression on those under his Command: Neither should he despise the Enemy too much, lest, by fancying himself in a State of Security, he should give them an Advantage over him; So that the true Medium lies between Presumption and Diffidence; that is, Bold, but not Rash; Circumspect, but not Diffident. No Man can attain to this merely by Art. It must be implanted by Nature, and brought to Maturity by Experience. Thus was our late Victorious General, the Duke of *Marlborough*, form'd, whose Conduct in War may be Imitated, but hardly Equall'd.

The Field Officers of the Picquet don't go their Rounds to the Quarter-Guards, but to the Picquet-Guards; and not only the Grand-Round is obliged to give the Officer of each Picquet-Guard the Word; but the General Officers of the Day must do it also, if they come to visit the Picquet.

All the Field-Officers of the Picquet go their Rounds. The Major begins his about half an Hour after it is dark. His chief Business is like that of a Town-Major, to see if the Sentries are properly posted, and if not, to give Directions for the doing it; as also to examine into their Numbers, &c.

The Colonel goes the Grand-Round about twelve a-Clock; and the Lieutenant-Colonel about an hour before Day.

One of the General Officers of the Day seldom fails of going to the Picquet of the Front Line just at or after the beating of the Reveille; not on the Footing of a Round; since no Round is made after Reveille; but only to ask how all things pass'd in the Night, and whether they discover'd any thing or not; after which he goes to visit the Grand-Guards of Horse, and Out-posts.

About half an Hour after the Reveille, the Picquet-Guards return to their Regiment. This is the Method of the Picquet-Guards of Foot of the Imperialists; and I presume it is the same amongst the Troops of all the *German* Princes.

The Horse and Dragoon Picquets are formed also at the Head of their respective Wings; but don't advance above 30 Paces from the Standard-Guards.

At the setting of the Watch, they are drawn out at the Head of their Regiments, as the Foot are; afterwards those of each Wing are join'd; and then form'd into Squadrons, with proper Officers to command them; and as soon as they have posted their Videts, or Sentries, the Men are order'd to dismount and lie at their Horses Heads.

As they are allow'd to bring Forage with them to feed their Horses, they have liberty to unbridle.

When they are under any Apprehensions of the Enemy's Attempts, they don't only post Subaltern Guards in their Front and Flanks, but keep one entire Rank of the Whole mounted, which they relieve every Hour, by making the three Ranks take it in their Turn; and send frequent Patrols round their Videts and advanc'd Guards.

The Field Officers of the Horse-Picquet assemble with the Men, and remain with them all Night.

A little before Day, the Men are order'd to bridle their Horses, and mount, that they may be ready to sustain the Grand Guards, in case they are attack'd; and a little after Day-break they send out Patrols to reconnoitre as far as the Grand Guards of their own Wing, with Orders for them not to return 'till they are marched to their Day-Posts. They send out Patrols likewise to reconnoitre on their Flanks; that is, those of the Right Wing reconnoitre the Right Flank of the Army, and the Left Wing the Left Flank; which Patrols seldom reconnoitre above a Mile, unless on some extraordinary Occasion. As soon as their Patrols are return'd, and their Guards and Videts drawn in, the Horse-Picquets return to their Regiments.

The Number of Horse which mount the Picquet, is not fix'd, as it is in the Foot, but are more or less according as there is occasion, both with them and us: however, there are never less than two of a Troop, and seldom more than eight; so that according to the Number of Men, Officers are commanded in Proportion.

The common Method is to appoint a Captain, Lieutenant and Cornet to 80 or 100 Horse; but sometimes they order the same Number of Officers to 50, 60, or 70, according to the Service on which they are commanded. It is a standing Rule in the Cavalry, that when a Captain of Horse is order'd on Duty, he has a Quarter-Master and a Trumpet

Trumpet from his own Regiment, so that they are never mention'd in the Orders ; but the Lieutenants and Cornets have neither, unless on very particular Occasions ; such as a Guard of Horse on the General in Chief.

The Manner of joining the Picquet of each Wing of Horse into a Body, and then forming them into Squadrons, is preferable to the Method of their Foot-Picquet, that of posting the Picquet of each Battalion single : For should the Enemy make an Attempt upon the Incampment of the Foot in the Night, they could not be oppos'd at any one Place of it with more than a Captain and 50 Men, besides the Quarter-Guard, which could not make any considerable Resistance, at least not sufficient to give the Regiments time to Form as they ought. 'Tis true that the Foot are not very liable to Surprizes of this Nature, from their being incamp'd in the Center : However, I am of Opinion, that when the Picquet is to continue out all Night, they should be form'd in Colonel's Commands ; that is, into as many Bodies as there are Colonels appointed for the Picquet, and the Field-Officers to remain with their several Commands. After they are thus form'd, the General of the Day should post them in such Places along the Front, Flanks, or Rear, by which the Enemy can have access to the Camp ; so that by having so considerable a Body, as a Colonel's Command, posted at each Avenue leading to your Camp, the Army can be in no Danger from a Surprise, since they will be able to make such a Resistance as will give the Army time to Form, which is all that is required from the Picquet, that being the End for which they are then design'd.

When the Rear is so secured that it is in no Danger from the Enemy, the Picquet of that Line may be posted likewise in the Front of the first Line, or on the Flanks, if requisite.

From each of these Bodies, the Colonels should post Officers Guards at a proper Distance in their Front, and small ones on their Flanks, and send frequent Patrols round them to keep them alert.

The Officers of these advanced Guards must be extream vigilant and watchful, that they may not be surpriz'd ; for which end they should post two Sentries at each Post in their Front, that one may come to the Guard, upon the Appearance of any Number of Men, or the hearing of a Noise like the March of Troops, to acquaint the Officer with it ; upon which they should put their Men under Arms, and endeavour

deavour to inform themselves thoroughly of the Truth of that Report, by reconnoitring the Place where the Men were seen, or from whence the Noise was heard, before they send an Account of it to the Colonel of the Picquet.

When the Officers find the Report of the Sentries to be true, they are to send an Account of it immediately to the Colonel of the Picquet, and so from time to time as they discover any thing further.

If the Number of Men which were discover'd, or the Noise which was heard, is considerable, the Colonel of the Picquet is to send an Account of it to the General of the Day, as also to those Bodies which are posted near him, with Directions for them to communicate it to those next them, and so from one to another 'till the several Bodies of the Picquet are acquainted with it, that they may be all prepar'd for their Defence, or ready to march upon the first Order they shall receive from the Lieutenant-General of the Day.

On such Notice, the Colonels of the Picquet are to put their Men under Arms, and to send Patrols round their advanced Guards and Sentries, to see that they are Alert, and to acquaint the Officers who command those Guards, with the Report which was sent them from the other Bodies, that they may be ready to oppose any Attempt that shall be made on them; as also to Reconnoitre beyond their advanced Sentries, and to send him a Report of what they discover.

As the Colonels of the Picquet can't quit their Posts to Sustain one another, without they have Orders for it from the General of the Day, it can't therefore be doubted, but that he will immediately repair to the Place from whence he received the Report, in order to give such Directions as the Service may require: For which end the General Officers of the Day should have a Tent pitch'd in the Rear of that Body, which is posted opposite to the Center of the first Line, where they should remain all Night, that the Colonels of the Picquet may send their Reports when any thing is Discover'd or Heard, and Receive their Commands, without Loss of Time.

Having given full Directions in the 6th Article, Chap. II. how Sentries are to behave on their Posts, there is no occasion for its being further mention'd; but lest the Enemy should advance upon the Advanced Guards, before the General of the Day can arrive at that Post to give the necessary

Orders, they are not to quit their Posts till they are forced to it by superior Numbers; and even in that Case they are to maintain it as long as they can by firing upon them, after which they are to Retire slowly to the Body from which they were Detach'd.

Upon the Fire of the Advanc'd Guards of Foot, the Horse Picquet should immediately Mount, and the General Officer who Commands them should send a sufficient Detachment towards the Place from whence the Fire was heard, in order to sustain the Post that is Attack'd, and be ready to follow with the Whole, in case those should not be sufficient: However, all the Horse Picquet should not march from their Posts 'till Part of the Cavalry are Mounted and Form'd, lest the Enemy should have done it with a Design to Draw them from thence, and then attack the Flanks of the Army before they are prepared to Receive them. But I must not proceed further on this Head, for fear of incurring the just Censure of my Superiors, by presuming to lay down Rules to those who are thoroughly versed in all Things relating to the Service. I hope they will therefore excuse the Liberty I have taken in entring, perhaps, a little too freely into the Grand Detail, which I was necessitated to do now and then, or leave the Parts treated on not clearly understood by those for whom it is design'd, young Officers. Besides, as there is great Reason to believe, that several of them will arrive to the Rank of General Officers, before they have an Opportunity of acquiring the Knowledge of their Duty by Service, those things relating to it, which are here inserted, I believe, upon second Thoughts, will not be judg'd altogether improper, in order to give them a small Idea of those Important Posts.

When the Horse and Foot Picquet is dispos'd of according to the above Method, the Army can be under no Apprehension of a Surprise. Besides, Enterprizes of that Nature are seldom successful, from the Difficulties that attend Night Expeditions, and therefore very seldom undertaken; but if they should attempt it, and pass the Grand-Guards of Horse without being discover'd, which is not very easy if they perform their Duty, the Opposition which they will meet with from the Picquet, both of Horse and Foot, will, in all probability, make them conclude that their Design is discover'd, and consequently give it over, and return from whence they came; but if it has not that Effect, it will

Q

however

however give the Army the Time requisite to Draw out and Oppose them.

I shall now proceed to the Method of the Foot Picquet of the *French*.

The Picquet Guard of each Battalion consists of the same Number of Officers and Soldiers, and are design'd for the same End as ours, with this Difference; that they furnish Sentries to their Colours and Bells of Arms, their Quarter-Guard being compos'd of a Serjeant and twelve Men only.

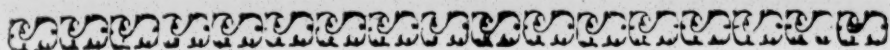
The Picquet is drawn up in the Interval on the Right of the Grenadiers, where they continue 'till they are reliev'd at Tat-too; for which Reason, they always erect a Shed there, made with Boughs and Straw, to keep their Arms and Ammunition from the Rain.

When the Commander in Chief of the Army, or the General Officers of the Day, Pass by, they only draw up in their Ranks with Arms; and if the King should Pass by, they pay him no other Compliment.

The Day the Army is to March, at the Beating of the General, the Officers of the Picquet are to get on Horseback, and to take care that the Soldiers don't take their Arms out of the Bells and go before, or stir from the Battalion, which the *French* Soldiers would frequently do, were it not for this Precaution.

When the Regiment is drawn out, either to March, or to Mount the Trenches, the Picquet is always Form'd on the Right of the Battalion, and Marches immediately after the Grenadiers.

If a Captain and fifty Men of a Regiment are Commanded out, while they are on the March, or in the Trenches, the Picquet is to perform that Service; that is, they are to March first; but if a second Detachment of the same Number is wanted, it is taken from the Battalion, the first having finish'd their Duty; otherwise the first Picquet would pass their Time extremely ill in the Trenches, were they to be commanded out before the others have taken their Tour. This is all in which the *German* and *French* Picquet differ from ours.



C H A P. XVI.

Consisting of the Guards Ordinary of the Horse and Dragoons; and also Extraordinary Guards of the Foot.

A R T I C L E I.

FORMERLY the Horse and Dragoons were look'd upon as two Distinct Bodies, and therefore had separate Duties: For the Horse did all the Duty of the Grand Guard, and the Dragoons that of Convoys or Escorts, and guarding of Passes and Fords, as being rather Expeditious Foot, than Horse; for which Service they were more useful than for Field Action, their Horses being too small to stand a Charge: But in the late War they were so well Mounted, that they Roll'd in all Duties with the Horse, and therefore compos'd but one Body, under the Denomination of Cavalry.

The Guards Ordinary of the Cavalry, are the Standard-Guards, and Grand-Guards.

Each Regiment has a Standard-Guard, which is of the same Nature with the Quarter-Guards of the Infantry, that of a Guard to the Regiment, and to pay the Compliment due to the General Officers.

The Standard-Guard for a Regiment of Horse commonly consists of a Corporal and 12 Troopers; but at the Setting of the Watch, they have six Men added to them, they having more Sentries by Night than in the Day-time, which Additional Men go off soon after Reveille.

The Standard-Guard of a Regiment of Dragoons, consists of the same Number, with the Addition of a Serjeant.

The Standard-Guards are reliev'd every Morning at the Beating of the Troop, and the Men Mount on Foot, and are Drawn up on each Side of the Standards, in a single Rank, facing outward. They have neither Trumpet nor Drum; so that they can pay no other Compliment to the Generals, than that of the Horse Resting their Carbines on their Left Arms, and the Dragoons Resting their Firelocks as the Foot do.

In the Day-time, the Men of the Standard-Guard are obliged to appear in Boots; but at Night they throw them off. Which Custom of Mounting in Boots on the Standard-Guard is certainly ridiculous, since there is no End propos'd by it: For as the Men of the Standard-Guard are not to leave the Camp, unless the Regiment is order'd to March, to what Purpose are they to have their Boots on? Neither are their Horses saddled at the Picquet; therefore there can be no Reason given for it, that I could hear of, but Custom; which is but a poor Support for what in itself is both Inconvenient and Absurd. Besides, to order them to mount a Guard on Foot in their Boots, and their Horses unsaddled at the Picquet, appears so inconsistent, that I am surpriz'd it has not been abolish'd long since. Where a Custom is of a long standing, though there can be no great Use made of it, yet if it is not attended with any Inconveniency, it may be continued as a Thing indifferent, but not otherwise; therefore, I presume, as the Gentlemen of the Cavalry have enter'd a little further into the Spirit of Discipline than formerly, they will lay aside the Custom of making the Men of the Standard-Guard mount in Boots.

A R T I C L E II.

The Grand-Guards are done by Detachment, and are Reliev'd every Morning at the same time that the Standard-Guards are.

When the Army is large, each Wing of Horse does Duty by itself, without intermixing with one another, and therefore have distinct Grand-Guards allotted them; for which Reason they have separate Parades. That for both Lines of the Right-Wing, is generally about the Center of the Front Line of Horse on the Right; and that for both Lines of the Left-Wing, opposite to the Center of the Front Line on the Left; on which Parades those who are order'd for the Grand-Guards are to Assemble, and to be Detach'd from thence by the Majors of Brigade.

The Grand-Guards are divided into Captains Commands, in each of which there are seldom less than fifty Men, or more than a hundred, and each Captain has a Lieutenant and Cornet along with him.

The Number that Mount daily is not fix'd; but depends on the Number of your Troops, the Situation of your Camp, or the Neighbourhood of the Enemy; according to which
there.

there are more or less order'd: However, the common Rule is to post a Captain's Command at, or near, each Avenue in the Front of the Army, by which the Enemy can approach the Camp, unless they should lie in low Grounds or Bottoms, the Eminences being the properest Places to post them on, that they may discover the March of Troops a good way off, and give Notice to the Camp of the Approach of the Enemy; as also to keep off small Parties from Plundering or Molesting it.

When each of these Guards consists of 80 or 100 Men, they generally Post a Lieutenant and 30 Troopers, or a Cornet and 20, at a proper Distance in their Front, but not out of View, to give them Notice when any Party appears; but when they only consist of 50 or 60 Men, they seldom Detach to these Advanc'd Guards above a Quarter-Master and 16 Troopers, or a Corporal and 12.

The Grand-Guards should never be posted in a narrow Pass or Road, or too near a Wood, but at some Distance from them, lest they should be Surpris'd by a Party of Foot, or Partizan Parties, which generally lie lurking there; but when such Places lie near their Posts, they should place Videts or Sentries pretty near those Roads or Woods, to give the Guard Notice to Mount when any Number of arm'd Men appears; they should likewise send small Patrols to Reconnoitre those Places frequently, otherwise they may be Surpris'd and carried off, when they least think of it, by an inconsiderable Number of Men.

The Videts which are posted in the Front, or near those suspected Places, should be placed double, that one may come and acquaint the Officer of the Guard when they discover any Body of Men, and the other remain at his Post 'till the Enemy Advance upon him, and force him from thence, or endeavour to cut off his Retreat, by getting betwixt him and his Guard; on either of which, he is to fire his Carbine, (which all Videts are to keep Advanced upon their Right Thighs for that purpose) and return to his Guard; but unless for the Reasons just mention'd, no Videt is to leave his Post 'till he is regularly Reliev'd by the Corporal of the Guard.

The Grand-Guards keep their Front always towards the Enemy; neither do they change it when the Generals come to Visit them: However, when any of them come, the Grand-Guards are to Mount, and Receive them with drawn Swords and Sound of Trumpet; for which Reason, they

should always have a Videt betwixt them and the Camp, to give them Notice of the Approach of the Generals, that they may have time to Mount, and pay the Compliment due to them.

When the Grand-Guards are Reliev'd, they don't Draw up opposite to one another, as the Foot do; but the new Guard draws up on the Left of the old one, if the Ground will allow of it, otherwise in the Rear of it; and as soon as the old Guard is march'd off, the new Guard draws up on their Ground.

The Grand-Guards have two Posts, one by Day, and another by Night.

The Day-Post is sometimes a Mile from the Camp, or more or less, according to the Situation of the Ground, or the Vicinity of the Enemy; it being necessary to Post them in such Places as will admit of a View, that they may discover a good way into the Country.

The Night-Post is generally within half a Mile of the Camp, to which they retire at the Setting of the Watch, to prevent their being carried off in the Night by the Enemy, the Day-Post being at too great a Distance to remain there with any Safety, since the Picquet could not come time enough to their Assistance, should they be Attack'd; but by their drawing near the Camp at Night, the Enemy can't so easily insult them; or if they attempt it, they can be immediately sustain'd by the Horse and Foot Picquet.

In order to put it more out of the Power of the Enemy, the Night-Posts are frequently chang'd, and new ones assign'd them every third or fourth Night, or oftner if there is Occasion; by which means the Enemy can't be sure of the Place they are posted at, which will therefore render their Attempt very uncertain.

Immediately after the Reveille has Beat, the Grand-Guards March to their Day-Posts, and send small Parties a little before them to Reconnoitre all suspected Places, to avoid falling into an Ambuscade; which they might easily do without this Precaution, since they seldom march to their Day-Posts, but that they discover a Party of the Enemy's Horse, or Hussars, at or near the said Posts.

The Lieutenant-Generals of the Day are the proper Officers to whom the posting of the Grand-Guards belong; and after they are posted by them, none but the Commander in Chief of the Army, and the Generals of Horse and Foot, have a Power of altering them.

The

The Men of the Grand-Guard always carry Forage with them to feed their Horses: However, I presume they are never allow'd to unbridle the Whole at the same time; but that one Rank is always kept ready to mount, unless they are so advantageously Posted, that they command the View of the whole Country.

During the Night, they always keep one Rank mounted, which they Relieve time-about, and send frequent Patrols round their Advanced Guards and Videts, to keep them Alert.

A little before Day they all Mount, and continue so 'till they March to their Day-Posts.

When any of the Grand-Guard discover any Number of Men, whether Horse or Foot, they are to Mount immediately, and to send out a Corporal and four or six Troopers, who are well Mounted, to Reconnoitre them near, in order to discover whether they are Friends or Foes, and their Numbers; and when it proves to be the Enemy, and that their Numbers are considerable, they are to send an Account of it immediately to the General of the Day, that he may order the Picquet to draw out, that they may be ready to oppose them, in case they should Attack the Grand-Guard.

The Officer who commands that Part of the Grand-Guard from which the Enemy was discover'd, should likewise send an Account of it to those Detachments which are posted near him, who are to send the same Account to the next, and so from one to another, that they may all prepare for their Defence.

The Grand-Guards are not to quit their Posts 'till obliged to it by superior Numbers; and even in that Case, they are not to go off with Precipitation, but to retire in a slow and regular Manner before them, and to dispute every Spot of Ground that will admit of it, in order to put a Stop to them 'till the Picquet can be brought to oppose them.

Where there are several Captains order'd for the Grand-Guard of each Wing, Field-Officers, in proportion to the Number who Mount, are appointed to command them; in which case all Reports, from the several Detachments of the Grand-Guard, relating to the Discovery of the Enemy, &c. are to be made to them, and by them to the General of the Day; and according to the Disposition of the Enemy, the Field-Officer who commands the Grand-Guard may join the Whole into one or more Bodies, as he shall judge proper

for the Service; without which Power, the Detachments may be Attack'd and Beat one after another, who when join'd may be sufficient to Repulse the Enemy, or put a Stop to their Progress 'till the Picquet can come to their Assistance.

As soon as the Grand-Guard is reliev'd, the Officer who commands it is to make his Report to the Lieutenant-General of the Day.

ARTICLE III. *Guards Extraordinary.*

By these are meant those Guards, or Detachments, which are only commanded on particular Occasions; either for the further Security of the Camp, which are call'd Out-Posts, or to cover the Foragers of the Army, for Convoys or Escorts, or for Expeditions; so that the proper Term is rather Extraordinary Commands, or Detachments.

These Commands, by what Denomination soever call'd, are done by Detachment; and each Battalion, whether strong or weak, furnishes an equal Proportion of private Men to them.

O U T - P O S T S.

When a Body of Men are posted beyond the Grand-Guard, they are called Out-Posts, as being without the Rounds, or Limits of the Camp.

The Occasion of their being commanded, is generally to prevent the Army from being Surpriz'd, or disturb'd in the Night by the Enemy, or to secure a Pass or Ford on a River or Village, or Villages, that may lie between the two Armies; as also to keep a Communication open with your own Garrisons, or cover your Convoys of Provisions, to prevent their being annoy'd by the Enemy.

All the Out-Posts which lie near the Camp are Reliev'd every Morning with the Guards Ordinary; but those which are at any great Distance, such as three, four, or five Miles, are generally reliev'd but once in four or eight Days.

The same Directions which are given for Parading the Men for the Guards Ordinary, must be observed in Parading of those for the Out-Posts, with this Addition, that the Adjutants must see that the Men who are to continue any time on Duty, are sufficiently provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Pay.

When

When the Out-Guards are posted in Villages, they should strengthen themselves in them as much as possible, by throwing of Barricades cross each Street, or Entrance into them; but when the Entrances are too many to be Defended any time, they should likewise strengthen the Church-yard, or any other Part of the Village, which they find more proper for their purpose, to retire to when they are forced from the others, that they may be able to defend themselves 'till Reliev'd by their Army; but when an Out-Post has not the Conveniency of a Village, Church-yard, or House, a Fort, compos'd of Fascines and Earth, should be thrown up to secure them, which may be done in a very short time; otherwise the Detachment may be carried off any Night by the Enemy.

When the Out-Posts which lie near the Camp have been Reliev'd, they are to send an Orderly Man from each to Attend at the Major of Brigade's Tent of the Day, in order to conduct the Guards which are sent to Relieve them; as also to carry what Orders the Major of Brigade of the Day shall receive for those Posts, from their time of Mounting 'till they are Reliev'd; after the Delivery of which, the Orderly Men are to return to the Major of Brigade's Tent, and acquaint him of their having deliver'd them. These Orders should always be sent in Writing, and seal'd up, lest any Mistake should happen through the Negligence or wrong Construction of the Orderly Men; as also that the Officers, who Command those Posts, may be able to justify their Conduct, by producing the said Orders, in case the obeying them should be attended with any ill Consequence.

The Officers should take particular Care to send such Orderly Men, whose Fidelity and Sobriety they can rely on most.

The Out-Posts are to Turn out, and receive the Generals who come to Visit them, under Arms; but not to Beat a Drum, tho' the Commander in Chief of the Army should come to Visit their Posts.

The Out-Posts which are near the Camp are to have the Parole which is given to the Army, sent them in Writing by their Orderly Men; but those who are at a Distance should have a Parole and Counter-sign of their own sent by an Orderly Trooper; the Care of which belongs properly to the Adjutant-General of the Army, as those which lie near the Camp do to the Major of Brigade of the Day.

The Commanding Officer at each Out-Post is to see his Night Sentries posted before it is dark, and at the Advance-
Posts

Posts he is to place them double, for the Reasons already premised.

During the Night, the Sentries at the Out-Posts should be Reliev'd every Hour; and between every Relief a Patrole should be sent round them to keep them Alert; so that by the Relief and the Patrole all the Posts will be Visited every half Hour. My Reason for this, is not only to keep them very watchful, but likewise to prevent the ill Consequences that may attend their Deserting to the Enemy, or quitting their Posts, since they can't be gone long before it is found out; and as often as a Sentry is missing, the Officer who Commands the Out-Post is immediately to change his Counter-Sign, and to send it to all his Sentries: For should the Sentry who is missing Desert to the Enemy, and discover the Counter-sign, they might impose on your Sentries, and surprize the Guard; but by their being Visited so often, it will be found out before they can possibly have time enough to execute the Design, unless your Post lies very near the Enemy, in which case it is requisite for the Whole to be as Alert as the Sentries. It is therefore incumbent on the Officers who Command Out-Posts to be very exact in this Part of their Duty, or they and their Parties may be easily destroyed by the Treachery of a Sentry.

When they are obliged to change their Counter-Sign for the above Reason, they should send an Account of it immediately to all Guards, or Out-Posts, with whom they have a Communication, that they may do the same, lest the Enemy should attempt to surprize them.

As the Safety of an Army may often depend on the Out-Posts, the Officers who Command them can't be too exact in the Discharge of their Duty; they ought therefore to be very Vigilant, and not think giving the necessary Orders sufficient, but see them executed also; otherwise they may be deceiv'd by trusting entirely to Reports. 'Tis on those Commands where Officers have frequent Opportunities of distinguishing themselves: It is therefore to be presum'd, that whoever has a Regard to his Reputation or Fortune, will not be so much wanting to himself, as to neglect the common Rules which are here laid down for his Conduct.

The Officers who command Out-Posts, should order their Men to stand to their Arms a little before Break of Day, and to continue so 'till it is so light that they can see a Mile or two from them, it being usual for Troops to advance near a Post in the Night, but defer attacking it 'till they can distin-

guish

guish one Man from another, for fear of destroying their own instead of the others. Besides, as the Morning is the time that every Man is most sleepy, it is therefore the more necessary to use this Precaution, in order to have them thoroughly awake, that they may be the better prepared for Action, in case of an Attempt.

How far an Officer who commands an Out-Post should persevere in the maintaining of it against a superior Body of Troops, can't be declared, without knowing both his Orders and Situation; but tho' they should be general, he ought not to quit it, if there is a Probability of his maintaining it, 'till he can be reliev'd by his own Army, unless he has Orders to retire upon the Approach of a superior Force: But if his Orders are Positive, and directs him to defend it to the last Man; he must obey them, even against a whole Army, without reflecting on the Consequences. But such Orders as these are never given, unless the Preservation of your Army, or the Country, depends on it: For as the Custom of War is otherwise, it would be deem'd Madness, and not Bravery, for a Party of Men to pretend to defend themselves in a Village, House, Church, or any Place that is not tolerably well fortified, against an Army, when they can't be supported by their own Troops, but must be taken when attack'd: But when an Officer is posted in a Place that can't be taken without Cannon, he is not to surrender it 'till he is regularly attack'd and a Breach made, or the Place so batter'd that it is no longer tenable, let them send ever so many threatening Summons of Hanging, or putting all to the Sword if they don't, since the Rules of War don't authorize such Pieces of Cruelty. Besides, a generous Enemy will be so far from committing it, that they will esteem and value him for his Behaviour, if he does not persevere beyond what a prudent and brave Man ought; whereas, should he surrender before he is reduced to a Necessity of yielding, they will look upon him as a Man void of Courage and Conduct, and despise him as one whose Fear had betray'd him into an unworthy Action; and if an Officer is despis'd by the Enemy for his ill Conduct, as he certainly will, he surely deserves the highest Punishment from his Friends for it.

ARTICLE IV. *Foraging-Parties.*

These Parties are to secure the Foragers from being taken by the Enemy, or disturb'd while they are Foraging.

According

According to the Danger which your Foragers may run, by the Place they are to forage in being near to, or remote from the Enemy, the Covering Parties are stronger or weaker.

In enclosed Countries, the Covering Parties consist for the most part of Foot; but in a champaign Country, they are generally compos'd both of Horse and Foot. These Detachments march generally from the Camp the Night before the Army is to Forage, in order to possess themselves of the Posts which they are to guard, before the Foragers leave the Camp; and as soon as all the Foragers have got their Forage, and return'd with it to the Camp, the Covering Party does the same.

When the Army is large, or that they lie near the Enemy, they seldom suffer the whole Army to Forage the same Day; but order one Wing to Forage one Day, and the other Wing another Day; in which case, the Wing which Forages sends Detachments to cover their own Foragers; neither should they be allowed to send above three Men of a Tent from the Cavalry to Forage at a time, that they may have a sufficient Number to defend the Camp 'till the Foragers return: But lest the Enemy should take the Advantage of your Foraging, and endeavour to attack your Camp in their Absence, upon the first Notice of their March the General orders the Signal to be made for the Foragers to return, which is generally the Firing of three Pieces of Cannon; on the hearing of which, the Foragers are to leave their Forage and repair immediately to their Regiments, and the Covering Parties are to return likewise to the Camp.

As these Detachments are posted between the Enemy and the Foragers, they are not to suffer any of the Foragers to pass beyond them, in search of Forage, lest they should be taken; which Danger they would always run, without reflecting on the Consequence, were they not detain'd from it by the Covering Parties: It is therefore the Duty of the Officers on these Commands to prevent their doing of it, and to compel them by Force to keep within the Bounds prescribed them.

ARTICLE V. *Convoys or Escorts.*

These are to conduct the Bread-Waggons and other Provisions; Dry Forage, at the Opening or Closing of the Campaign; Ammunition, heavy Cannon or Field-Pieces; as also
Persons

Persons of Distinction who are coming to or going from the Camp.

The Convoys are generally done by Detachment; but when they are to pass near the Enemy's Garisons, or liable to be intercepted by a considerable Body of their Troops, it is usual to command entire Brigades both of Horse and Foot on that Service; or in lieu of Regiments of Foot, a sufficient Number of Companies of Grenadiers, for the greater Expedition.

ARTICLE VI. *Expeditions.*

These Parties are sent into the Territories belonging to, or under the Protection of the Enemy, to destroy the Country, or lay it under Contribution; as also to intercept their Convoys, and streighten them in their Camp: But as these Parties can't remain long in a Place, lest the Enemy should fall upon them, they are generally compos'd of Cavalry, the Infantry not being Expeditious enough for that sort of Service.

They are likewise sent to fall upon the Enemy's Foragers even in the Rear of their Camp; but as this is attended with a great deal of Danger and Difficulty, it is very seldom undertaken.

Formerly these sort of Exploits were very much in vogue, particularly with the *French*, who call it, *La Petite Guerre*; but of late they are much less off, since they only serve to render the poor Inhabitants more miserable, or particular Officers, whose Horses or Baggages they take, uneasy in their Affairs, without contributing any thing to the Service, or the bringing of the War the sooner to a Conclusion. Besides, by the great Fatigue which it brings on your own Troops, a great many Horses will not only be render'd unfit for immediate Service, but entirely lost; which Reason is sufficient, in my Opinion, to discontinue the Practice, at least not to use it, but on particular Occasions.



C H A P. XVII.

*General Rules for the Incamping of an Army
with the Particulars for the Incamping of a
Regiment of Horse, and a Battalion of Foot;
and two Plans of the same.*

A R T I C L E I.

F ROM the Colours of the first Line to the	} 400
Colours of the second Line,	
Allow'd in Front to each Squadron of Horse	} 30
and Dragoons	
Interval between each Squadron	20
To each Battalion of Foot	100
Interval between each Battalion	40

These are the true Proportions when the Ground, on which the Army is to encamp, will allow it; but when it won't, they then contract the Whole, by taking 20 Paces from each Battalion, and five or six from each Squadron, and so in proportion from every Interval.

The 100 Paces given to a Battalion of Foot, tho' it consisted of 13 Companies, is sufficient; and 30 Paces allow'd to a Squadron compos'd of two Troops, is so too; but to those Squadrons consisting of three Troops, as all the *English* were during the late War, the 30 Paces are not sufficient: For tho' a Squadron of two Troops should consist of as many Private Men as a Squadron of three Troops, yet the Manner of Incamping is not the same; because a Squadron of two Troops form only one double Street, but a Squadron of three Troops form one double and one single Street: So that, according to the Rule of Proportion, when 30 Paces are given to a Squadron of two Troops, 45 Paces should be given to a Squadron of three Troops, otherwise these Squadrons will be very much straiten'd in their Incampment, if they keep within the Bounds prescribed.

As the foreign Troops of Horse and Dragoons have a greater Number of private Men in each than ours, so their Squadrons seldom consist of more than two Troops; and as most of our Rules in War are taken from them, I suppose this was the Reason for the establishing of the above Proportion of Ground to each Squadron, without considering the Difference between the Incampment of a Squadron composed of three Troops, and those consisting only of two: And since the Custom of giving no more Ground to every Squadron without Distinction than 30 Paces, has so far prevail'd, as to become almost an establish'd Rule all over *Europe*; it would be Presumption in me to imagine, that the few Remarks here made, will have sufficient Weight to procure the Addition of 15 Paces to those Squadrons consisting of three Troops; for which Reason I have annex'd a Plan of the Incampment of a Regiment of Horse or Dragoons of nine Troops consisting of three Squadrons, in a different Manner from the usual Method, in order to remedy the Inconveniency here complain'd of in the want of Ground.

As the usual Method is to incamp the Squadrons separately from one another, by leaving an Interval between each of 20 Paces; I have, in this Plan, incamp'd the three Squadrons together (much in the Form of a Battalion of Foot) and divided the two Intervals on the Right and Left of the Center Squadron, consisting of 40 Paces, amongst the nine Troops, leaving only the Intervals on the Flanks of the Regiment open for those of the first or second Line to pass through.

By the taking in of the said two Intervals (which were of no manner of Use but to divide the Squadrons, and give Rogues a greater Opportunity of robbing the Officers Tents in the Night-time, by having those Passages to the Front between them, since those on the Flanks of the Regiment are sufficient to answer the whole Design and Intent of Intervals, that of a Passage for the marching of Troops from one Line to another) the Regiment will then have 130 Paces in Front to incamp on; that is, the 90 Paces allow'd for the three Squadrons, and the 40 Paces for the two Intervals; by the Addition of which, the Incampment of the Regiment will not be only much more commodious, but also, in my Opinion, much more regular than by the usual Method, as I am persuaded will plainly appear, when the Inconveniency of the One, and the Conveniency of the Other, is set in a true Light, the which I shall endeavour to do in as concise a Manner as possible.

By

By the usual Method of incamping the Squadrons separately, the *English* one, which always consisted of three Troops, formed one double, and one single Street, which makes three Lines of Tents, and three Lines of Horses; so that in a Regiment of 9 Troops, they had 3 double Streets, and 3 single ones.

The Inconveniency of single Streets is very great; for when the Horses in those Streets break loose from the Picquets, (which but too often happens, notwithstanding all the Care that can possibly be taken to prevent it) they frequently run among the Tents of the Troops in the Rear of them, (there being nothing to stop them from doing it) and do considerable Damage both to the Tents, and the Arms and Accoutrements in them; as also frequently tread upon, and hurt the Men who are asleep in the Tents; but the least Evil that can happen by it, is that of Treading down, and Eating the Forage of the other Troops, and thereby occasioning Disputes and Quarrels amongst the Men.

The double Streets are not attended with these Inconveniencies; for, by drawing a Cord a-crofs the Front and Rear of each Street, when the Horses break loose, they can't get to the Tents or Forage, for the Mangers, which are on both Sides of the Street, nor out of the Line, for the Cords which are fasten'd a-crofs both Ends of the Street; by which means the Tents and Forage are not only secure, but the Horses likewise; for by their getting out of the Line they are sometimes entirely lost, or not found again in a Day or two, when they happen to break loose in the Night.

By Incamping according to the Method of the annex'd Plan, the above Inconveniencies of single Streets, will be, in a great measure, avoided, since the Whole will consist but of four double Streets, and only one single one, even in a Regiment of 9 Troops; but to those Regiments which consist of 6, 8, 10, or 12 Troops, their Incampment will all be form'd of double Streets; whereas by the other Method a Regiment of 6 Troops had 2 double and 2 single Streets; but by this, they will only have 3 double Streets, as will appear by the manner of incamping the 6 Troops on the Right of this Plan; and the former Method of incamping the Squadrons separately, will be seen by the 3 Troops on the Left of it, which consists of one double, and one single Street; so that this Plan will shew the Form of both Methods in so plain a Manner, that every one may comprehend with the greatest Ease, what is here treated of, and thereby see the Advantage which this way of incamping has over the

the former, without giving the Reader any further Trouble; for if the Reasons here made use of, and the Regularity of the one compared with the other, are not sufficient to convince him of the Truth of it, the endeavouring at it, by producing other Arguments, might tire his Patience, but not gain upon his Reason, and consequently render the Attempt fruitless.

Tho' the Incampment of a Regiment of Horse or Dragoons, by this Plan, appears like that of a Battalion of Foot, yet it is not so in Effect; for the Troops which compose the several Squadrons are continu'd in their former Stations. The 3 Troops on the Right being those of the first Squadron; the 3 on the Left, those of the second Squadron; and the 3 in the Center, those of the third Squadron; so that the Squadrons are kept entire as before, and therefore can't be objected to on that Score: and tho' the Officers are incamp'd regularly in the Rear of the Regiment, yet their Tents may be pitch'd in the Rear of the Squadrons to which they belong; so that the Alteration here made, does not touch any one essential Point, in my Opinion, but only reduce the whole to a more convenient and regular Form than the common Method of incamping the Squadrons of a Regiment separate from one another: and tho' it is necessary that there should be Intervals left between every Squadron when they are drawn out in Line of Battle, yet I can't see any reason for their being incamp'd so, since they take up the same Space of Ground as before, and that the Intervals on the Right and Left of every Regiment are left open and free, which are sufficient for the Service required by them.

A R T I C L E II.

The Troopers Tents must be larger than those for the Foot, that they may hold the Horse Accoutrements, to preserve them from the Weather; for which reason they are generally about 7 Foot broad, and 9 Foot deep, tho' sometimes they are larger: however, the Size here mention'd is sufficient to contain 5 Men, and all their Accoutrements.

The Quarter-Masters Tents are pitch'd at the Head of each Troop, with the Door opening to the Front, as those of the Serjeants of Foot do.

The Troopers Tents face the Streets, as the Foot do, and their Horses stand with their Heads towards the Tent-Doors.

R

They

They generally allow 4 Foot for the Breadth of every Horſe, and 10 Foot for his Length.

As 4 Foot is allow'd for the Breadth of every Horſe, when there are 5 Men in a Tent, the Diſtance from the Front-Pole of one Troop-Tent to another muſt be 20 Foot; and when there are but 4 Men in a Tent, the Diſtance between Pole and Pole muſt be 16 Foot; and ſo in Proportion, according to the Number of Men in each Tent: therefore a Troop conſiſting of 50 Horſes muſt have a Street 200 Foot long; according to which Number in each Troop, the following Plan is calculated.

The 130 Yards or Paces in Front are divided amongſt the 9 Troops as follows.

	Paces
For the Tents of 9 Troops, allowing 9 Foot or 3 Paces to each	27
Four Double Streets, at 18 Paces each	72
One Single Street	13
Three back Streets, for the laying of the Forage, at 6 Paces each	18
	<hr/> 130

The 18 Paces for the Double Street is divided to the two Troops as follows:

	Paces
From the Tent-Doors to the Mangers, 3 Foot each Troop	2
For the pitching of each Manger in Breadth, 3 Foot	2
Standing for the Length of a Horſe, 10 Foot, which to two Troops is	6 2
Remaining in the Center of the Street, between the Standing of the Horſes of both Troops	7 1
	<hr/> 18

Division of the ſingle Street of 13 Paces

	Paces
Between the Tents and the Manger	1
Space for the Breadth of the Manger	1
From the Manger, for the Length of the Horſes, 10 Foot	3 1
Street in the Rear of the Horſes	4 2
For the laying of the Forage of the Center Troop of the Second or Left Squadron	3
	<hr/> 13
	The

The Depth of the Regiment, from the Front to the Rear, is as follows.

	Paces
From the Standards and Kettle-Drums to the Front of the Quarter-Master's Tents	6
From the Front of the Quarter-Master's Tents to the Side next the Rear of the Troopers 10th or last Tent	71
From the foresaid Side of the last Troop Tent to the Front Pole of the Subalterns Tents	20
From the Front Pole of the Subalterns Tents to the Front Pole of the Captain's	20
From the Front Pole of the Captain's Tents to the Front Pole of the Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's	24
From the Front Pole of the Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's Tents to the Front Pole of the Colonel's	16
From the Front Pole of the Colonel's Tent to the Front Pole of the Staff-Officers Tents	18
From the Front Pole of the Staff-Officers Tents to the Front Pole of the Grand-Sutlers	30
From the Front of the Grand-Sutlers to the Front of the Petit-Sutlers and Butchers	50
Depth of the Regiment from the Standards to the Petit-Sutlers and Butchers	255

The Standards and Kettle-drums are to be placed opposite to the Back-Street of the Third or Center Squadron, as mark'd in the Plan. The Standard-Guard Tents are to be pitch'd betwixt the Standards and the Head of the said Back Street.

As it is usual for the Subalterns of Horse to have a Tent each, I have therefore plac'd two in the Rear of each Troop; and tho' by the former Method of encamping they were generally pitch'd in a Line with the Troopers Tents, and faced towards the Streets as they did, yet in this Plan I have placed them according to the Manner of the Foot, by facing them towards the Captains Tents with a Street of 20 Paces between them: and as the Officers of the Cavalry have their Horses stand in the Rear of their Tents, I have therefore mark'd the Places where they are to stand; and tho' the Subalterns Horses are plac'd in the Rear of their Tents, yet they may be incamp'd in a Line with the Troop-Horses, if the commanding Officer thinks proper; the doing of which will

have this Advantage in it, that if they break loose they can neither get out of the Line, nor amongst the Tents or Forge; whereas by standing in the Rear of their own Tents, as mark'd in the Plan, they can do both.

The Quarter-Masters Horses always stand in a Line with those of the Troop, but the Field-Officers, Captains and Staff-Officers Horses, in the Rear of their own Tents.

The Size of the Officers Tents are not fix'd, some Regiments having them of one Size, and some of another: however every Regiment is regular in this Particular, that all the Officers of the same Rank are oblig'd to have their Tents of the same Dimensions, and made in the same Form.

The Size of the Troop-Tents is sufficient for those of the Quarter-Masters, only that they are allow'd to have them a little higher, with a small Marqui to throw off the Rain.

As the Subalterns of the Horse have each a Tent, theirs needs not be above a Foot larger than the Quarter-Master's; that is 8 Foot broad, and 9 Foot deep; and the Captain's 9 Foot broad, and 10 deep. The Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's Tents, about a Foot larger than the Captain's. A Colonel has generally 2 Tents, as mark'd in the Plan, a Dining-Tent, and Bedchamber-Tent. The Bedchamber-Tent about the Size of the Captain's; and that to dine in, is commonly 12 Foot broad, and 14 deep.

As the Subalterns of the Foot lie two in a Tent, theirs should be as large as the Captain's.

The Dimensions here given for the Officers Tents may be thought by some too small, and if they were only to incamp in *Hide-Park* I should be of the same Opinion; but let those Gentlemen who think so, only make one real Campaign, and I am convinc'd they will wish them rather of a less Size than a greater.

The Circles which are drawn in the Plan between the Grand and Petit-Sutlers, are mark'd for the Kitchens, or Places where the private Men are to dress their Victuals: They are made in the following Manner:

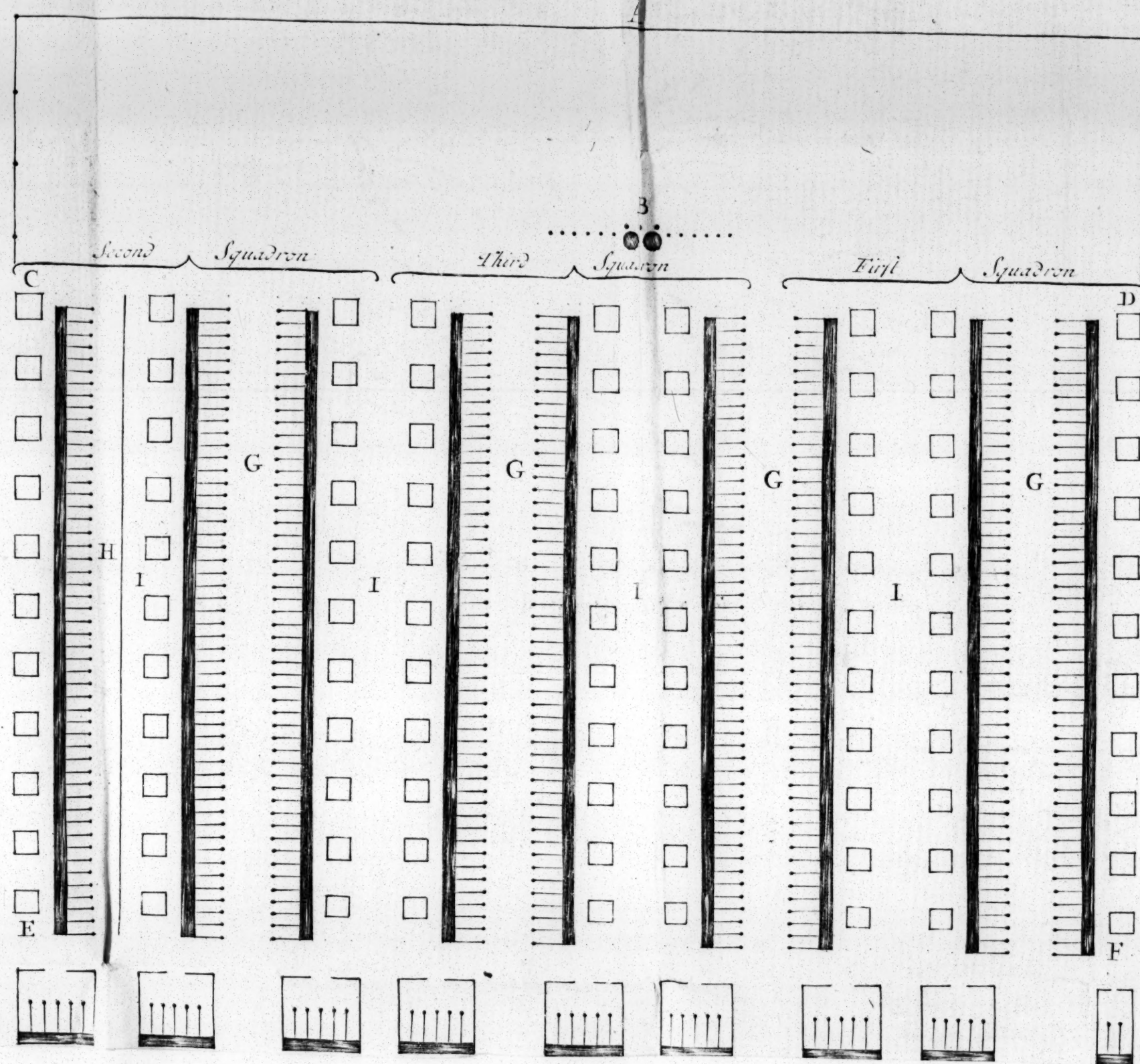
First, you draw a Circle or Square on the Ground of what Dimension you please, after that you dig a Trench or Ditch round it of about 3 or 4 Foot broad, and 2 deep, by which it will resemble the Bottom of a Cock-pit. When this is done, you are then to cut Holes or Niches in the Side of the Circle or Square of Earth which is left standing within the Ditch. These Holes may be about a Foot square,

The Ichnography of the Incampment of 9 Troops forming 3 Squadrons consisting of 50 Men and Horse in each Troop.

Page 244.

Explanation

- A. the first Line of Parade.
- B. the Standards and Kettle Drums.
- C. D. E. F. the whole Incampment of the Quarter Masters and the Private Men with their Horses.
- G. the 4 double Streets of Horses.
- H. the single Street of Horses.
- I. Back Streets to secure the Forrage.
- K. Line of Subalterns Tents.
- L. Street between the Subalterns and Captains Tents.
- M. Line of Captains Tents.
- N. the Lieut. Colonels Tent.
- O. the Majors Tent.
- P. the Colonels Tent.
- Q. the Staff Officers Tents.
- R. the Line of Grand Suters.
- S. the Kitchens for the Troopers.
- T. the Petit Suters and Butchers.



C
sq
In
H
w
in
pl
m
C
(b
o
ta
T
o
th
e

M

f
a
f
h
M

M

square, the upper Part of which should be within 3 or 4 Inches of the Surface, from whence they are to cut small Holes of 4 Inches Diameter, down to the great ones, in which the Fire is to be made and the Heat conveyed thro' the small Holes to the Bottom of the Kettles which are placed on the Top of them. These Fire-places may be made within 3 or 4 Foot of one another, quite round the said Circle or Square; and if you erect one of these Kitchens, (by which I mean an entire Circle or Square) for each Troop or Company, they need not be larger than what will contain as many Fire-places as you have Tents pitched for your Troop or Company; for as all the Men who lie in a Tent are of one Mess, every Mess must therefore have a Fire-place, that they may have no Excuse for their not boiling the Pot every Day.

There are several Advantages by making of the Kitchens as here directed.

First, A very little Fuel will serve to dress their Victuals; for as the Fire-places are open at the Side, like the Mouth of an Oven, the Air which enters there forces all the Heat up the small Hole to the Bottom of the Kettle, and consequently boils it very soon; and as the Kettle covers the said Hole, the Rain can't come to extinguish it, or create the Men any Trouble in keeping of it in.

Secondly, They are not in great Danger of Accidents by the Fire's being blown amongst the Tents or Forage: For if the Men only lay a Sod or Turf on the Top of the Hole when they take off the Kettle, it can't be dispers'd by the Wind, which, without this Consideration, they ought to do, in order to keep the Fire-places dry.

Thirdly, The cutting of a Ditch round the Kitchens, does not only enable them to make the Fire-places, but likewise prevents the Fire from catching hold of the Stubble or Grass, which, in very Dry or Hot Weather, it is apt to do, and endanger the Burning of your Camp, which I have often seen for the want of this Precaution. Besides, the opposite Bank of the Ditch serves as a Seat for the Men who are employ'd in Dressing the Victuals.

Fourthly, and *Lastly*, By having of Kitchens made in this Manner, the Officers can with a great deal of Ease look into the Conduct and Economy of their Men, and oblige the several Messes to boil the Pot every Day, for the Reasons already mentioned in the 3d Article of the 13th Chapter.

I shall, in the following Article, proceed to the Particulars for the Incamping of a Battalion of Foot of 13 Companies, with a Plan of the same.

A R T I C L E III.

The 100 Paces in Front allowed to a Battalion of Foot must be divided amongst the 13 Companies as follows.

	Paces
For the Tents of 13 Companies, allowing 2 Yards Square for each Tent, which is the usual Size of those for the Foot, is	26
For the Single Street belonging to the Company of Grenadiers,	8
Six Double Streets at 10 Paces each,	60
Five Back Streets at one Pace each,	5
	<hr/> 99

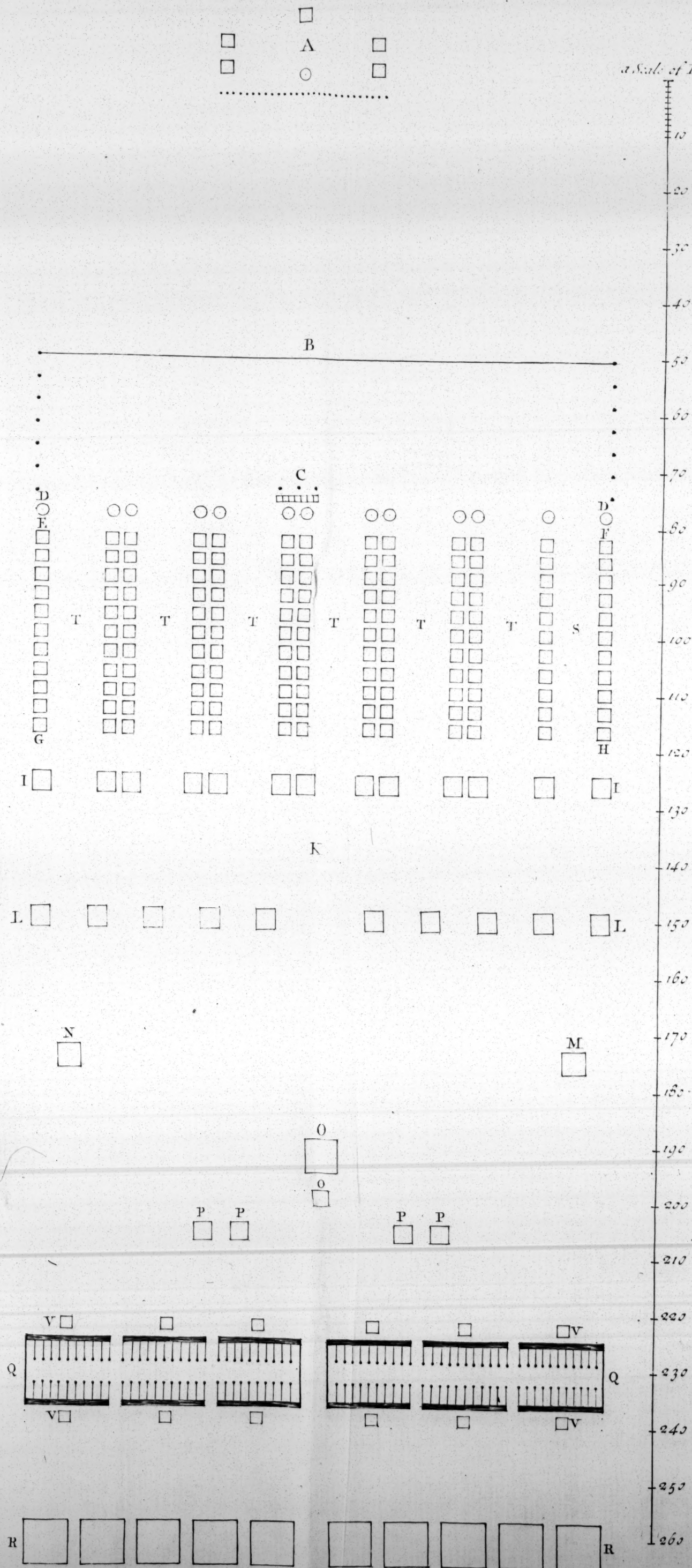
Depth of the Regiment from the Quarter-Guard to the Petitsutlers is as follows.

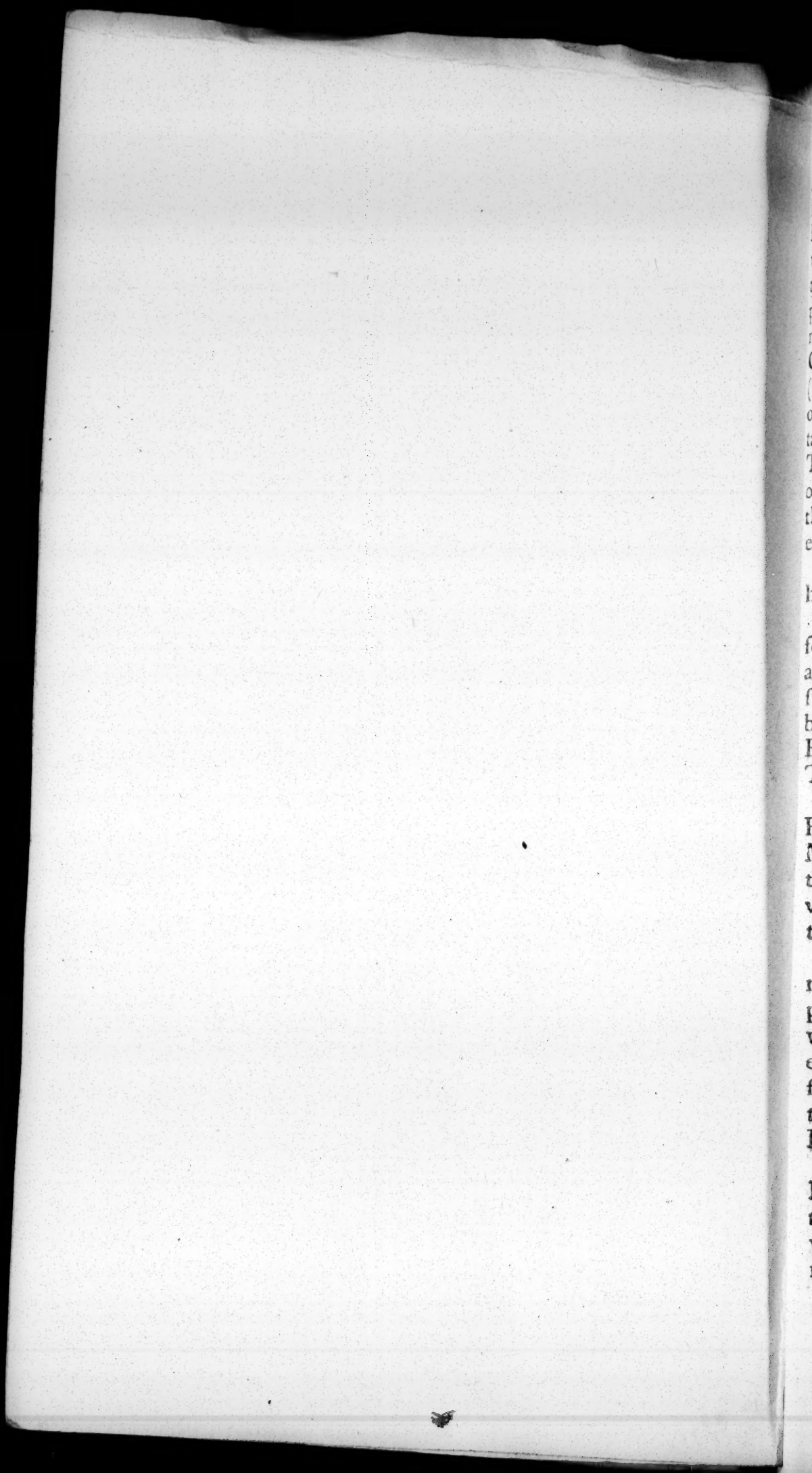
	Paces
From the Bell of Arms of the Quarter-Guard to the Front of the Colours and Drums,	74
From the Front of the Colours and Drums to the Bell of Arms of the Regiment,	3
From the Bell of Arms to the Front-Pole of the Serjeants Tents,	4
For the Pitching of 11 Tents, including the Serjeants, at 2 Paces each,	22
For 10 Cross Streets between the said Tents, that they may go round to fasten the Pins, at a Pace each,	10
From the Soldiers last Tent to the Front-Pole of the Subalterns,	10
From the Front-Pole of the Subalterns Tents, to the Front Pole of the Captains,	20
From the Front-Pole of the Captains Tents, to the Front-Pole of the Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's,	24
From the Front-Pole of the Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's Tents, to the Front-Pole of the Colonel's,	16
From the Front-Pole of the Colonel's Tent, to the Front-Pole of the Staff-Officer's,	15
	From

The Ichthyography of the Incampment of a Battalion of Foot consisting of 13 Companies.

Explanation.

- A. the Incampment of the Quarter Guard.
- B. the first Line of Parade.
- C. the Colours and Drums.
- D. the Bells of Arms.
- E.F.G.H. the whole Incampment of the Sergeants and Private Men.
- I. the Line of Subalterns Tents.
- K. the Street between the Subalterns and Captains Tents.
- L. the Line of Captains Tents.
- M. the Line of Colonels Tent.
- N. the Majors Tent.
- O. the Colonels Tent.
- P. the Staff Officers Tents.
- Q. the Incampment of the Officers Horses.
- R. the Line of Grand Sentries.
- S. the single Street of the Grenadiers.
- T. the 6 double Streets of the Battalion.
- V. Tents for the Sergeants who look after the Horses.





square, the upper Part of which should be within 3 or 4 Inches of the Surface, from whence they are to cut small Holes of 4 Inches Diameter, down to the great ones, in which the Fire is to be made and the Heat conveyed thro' the small Holes to the Bottom of the Kettles which are placed on the Top of them. These Fire-places may be made within 3 or 4 Foot of one another, quite round the said Circle or Square; and if you erect one of these Kitchens, (by which I mean an entire Circle or Square) for each Troop or Company, they need not be larger than what will contain as many Fire-places as you have Tents pitched for your Troop or Company; for as all the Men who lie in a Tent are of one Mess, every Mess must therefore have a Fire-place, that they may have no Excuse for their not boiling the Pot every Day.

There are several Advantages by making of the Kitchens as here directed.

First, A very little Fuel will serve to dress their Victuals; for as the Fire-places are open at the Side, like the Mouth of an Oven, the Air which enters there forces all the Heat up the small Hole to the Bottom of the Kettle, and consequently boils it very soon; and as the Kettle covers the said Hole, the Rain can't come to extinguish it, or create the Men any Trouble in keeping of it in.

Secondly, They are not in great Danger of Accidents by the Fire's being blown amongst the Tents or Forage: For if the Men only lay a Sod or Turf on the Top of the Hole when they take off the Kettle, it can't be dispers'd by the Wind, which, without this Consideration, they ought to do, in order to keep the Fire-places dry.

Thirdly, The cutting of a Ditch round the Kitchens, does not only enable them to make the Fire-places, but likewise prevents the Fire from catching hold of the Stubble or Grass, which, in very Dry or Hot Weather, it is apt to do, and endanger the Burning of your Camp, which I have often seen for the want of this Precaution. Besides, the opposite Bank of the Ditch serves as a Seat for the Men who are employ'd in Dressing the Victuals.

Fourthly, and *Lastly*, By having of Kitchens made in this Manner, the Officers can with a great deal of Ease look into the Conduct and Economy of their Men, and oblige the several Messes to boil the Pot every Day, for the Reasons already mentioned in the 3d Article of the 13th Chapter.

I shall, in the following Article, proceed to the Particulars for the Incamping of a Battalion of Foot of 13 Companies, with a Plan of the same.

A R T I C L E III.

The 100 Paces in Front allowed to a Battalion of Foot must be divided amongst the 13 Companies as follows.

	Paces
For the Tents of 13 Companies, allowing 2 Yards Square for each Tent, which is the usual Size of those for the Foot, is	26
For the Single Street belonging to the Company of Grenadiers,	8
Six Double Streets at 10 Paces each,	60
Five Back Streets at one Pace each,	5
	<hr/> 99 <hr/>

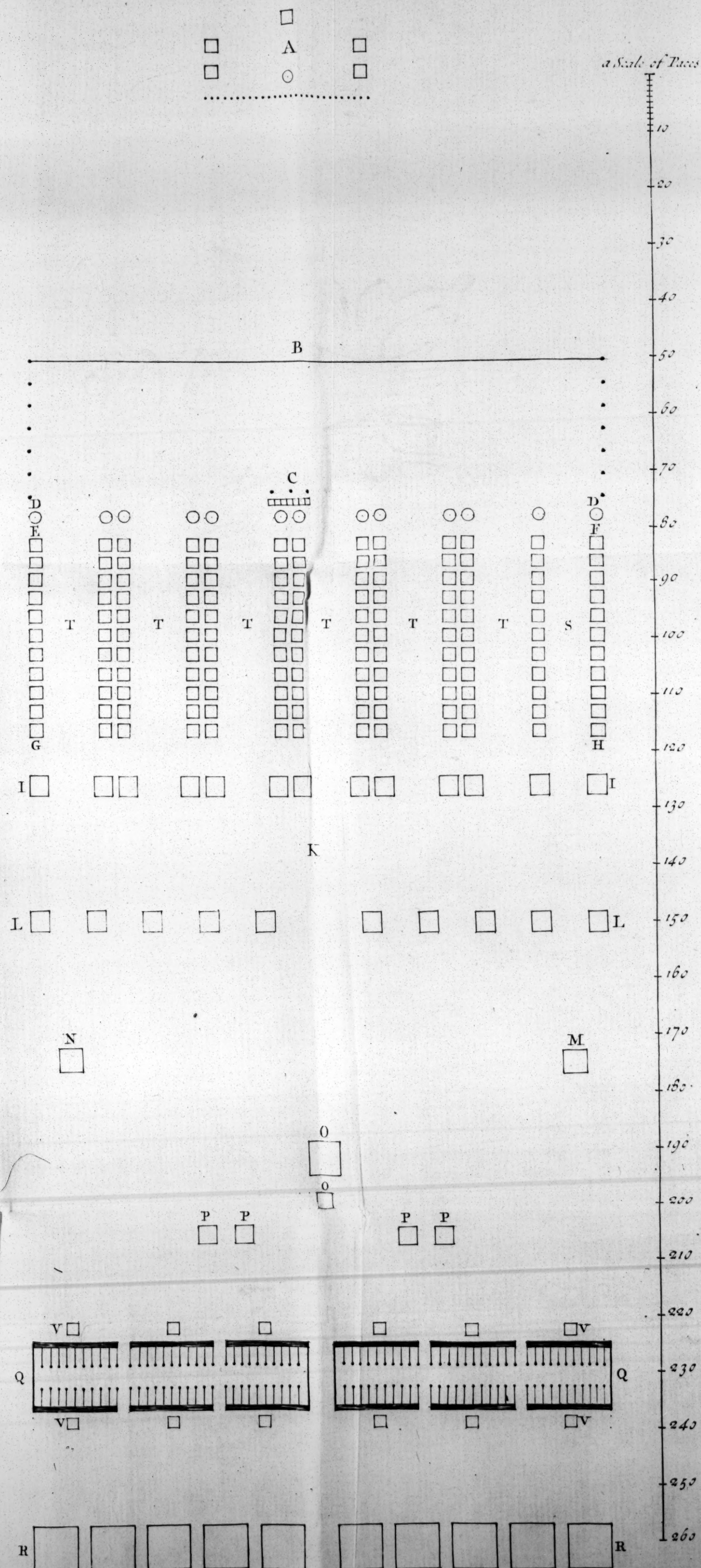
Depth of the Regiment from the Quarter-Guard to the Petit-Sutlers is as follows.

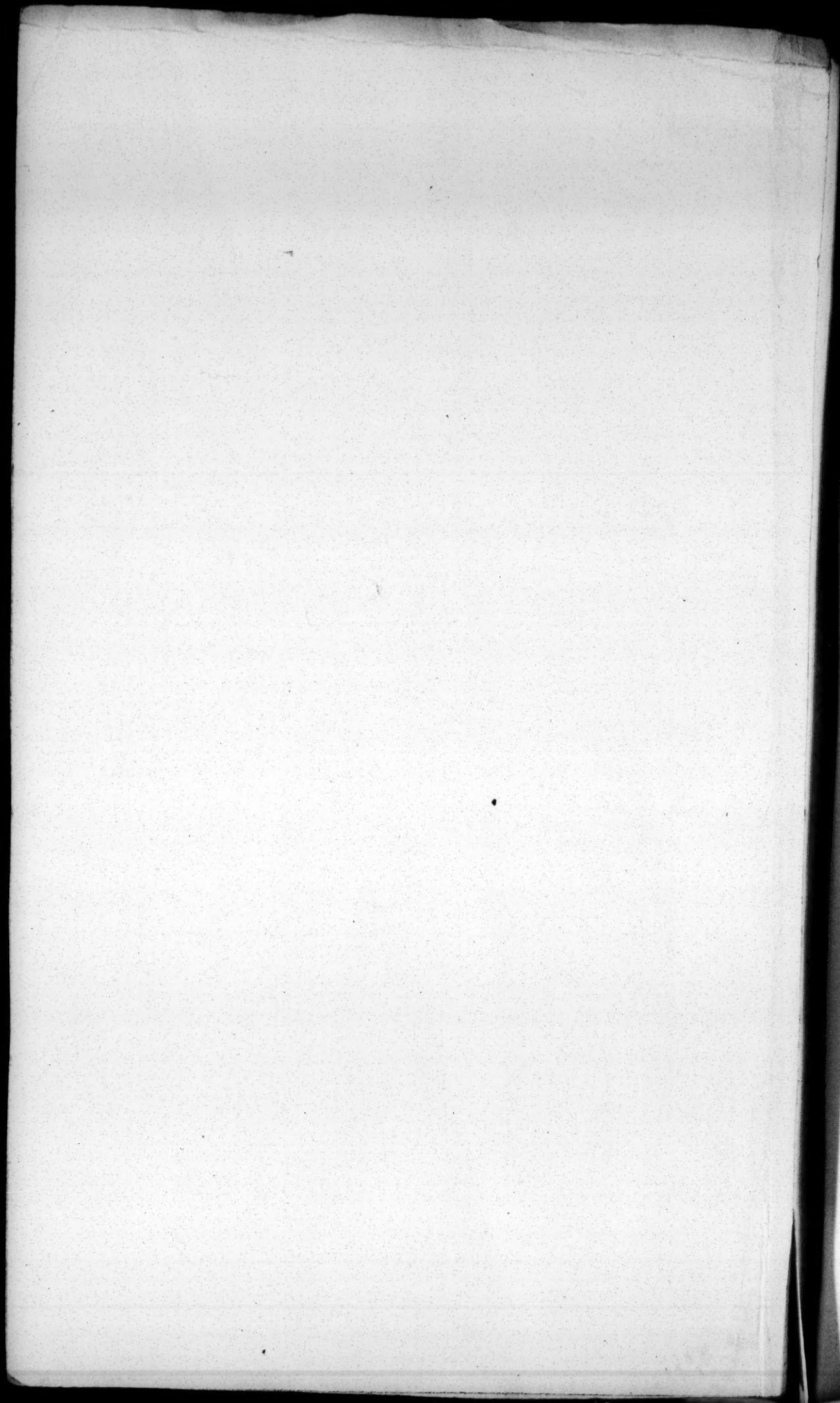
	Paces
From the Bell of Arms of the Quarter-Guard to the Front of the Colours and Drums,	74
From the Front of the Colours and Drums to the Bell of Arms of the Regiment,	3
From the Bell of Arms to the Front-Pole of the Serjeants Tents,	4
For the Pitching of 11 Tents, including the Serjeants, at 2 Paces each,	22
For 10 Cross Streets between the said Tents, that they may go round to fasten the Pins, at a Pace each,	10
From the Soldiers last Tent to the Front-Pole of the Subalterns,	10
From the Front-Pole of the Subalterns Tents, to the Front Pole of the Captains,	20
From the Front-Pole of the Captains Tents, to the Front-Pole of the Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's,	24
From the Front-Pole of the Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's Tents, to the Front-Pole of the Colonel's,	16
From the Front-Pole of the Colonel's Tent, to the Front-Pole of the Staff-Officer's,	15
	From

The Ichneography of the Incampment of a Battalion of Foot consisting of 13 Companies.

Explanation

- A. the Incampment of the Quarter Guard.
- B. the first Line of Parade.
- C. the Colours and Drums.
- D. the Bells of Arms.
- E.F.G.H. the whole Incampment of the Sergeants and Private Men.
- I. the Line of Subalterns Tents.
- K. the Street between the Subalterns and Captains Tents.
- L. the Line of Captains Tents.
- M. the Lieut. Colonels Tent.
- N. the Majors Tent.
- O. the Colonels Tent.
- P. the Staff Officers Tents.
- Q. the Incampment of the Officers Horses.
- R. the Line of Grand Suttlers.
- S. the single Street of the Grenadiers.
- T. the 6 double Streets of the Battalion.
- V. Tents for the Servants who look after the Horses.





From the Front-Pole of the Staff-Officers Tent to the First-Line of the Officers Horses,	} 20
Allowed for two Lines of Horses, which are to Incamp after the manner of the Cavalry,	} 12
From the Incampment of the Horses to the Front of the Grand-Sutlers,	} 20
From the Front of the Grand-Sutlers to the Petit-Sutlers and Butchers,	} 50
	<hr/> 300 <hr/>

The Colours and Drums are to be placed before the two Center Companies of the Battalion, as Mark'd in the Plan.

The Quarter-Guard is to be drawn up directly opposite to the Colours, and to Front towards the Regiment, and not to extend from Right to Left above 30 Paces.

The Officer's Tent of the Quarter-Guard (which is made of the Size and Form of those for the Serjeants) is to Face towards the Battalion, and those for the Men towards one another: that is, those Pitch'd on the Right are to Face to the Left, and those Pitch'd on the Left are to Face to the Right. The Quarter-Guard Bell of Arms is to be Pitch'd directly opposite to the Officer's Tent-Door; and when the Men stand to their Arms, they are to draw up in a Single Rank before the Bell of Arms, as describ'd by the Line mark'd with Points or Dots in the Plan.

If the Officers Horses are Incamp'd in a double Line in the Rear, as describ'd by the Plan, they will be in no Danger of losing them when they break loose from the Pickets; for by the Servants fastening of Cords cross the several Doors, it will effectually prevent their getting out of the Line in which they Stand.

The Kitchens for the Private Soldiers and the Incampment of the Petit-Sutlers and Butchers could not be inserted in the Plan, the Sheet not being large enough to contain the Whole; but as they are mark'd in that of the Horse, I presume it will be sufficient.

The Houses-of-Offices for the Front-Line must be advanced beyond the Quarter-Guard at least 50 Paces; and those for the Rear-Line about the same Distance in the Rear of the Petit-Sutlers and Butchers.

There is a Serjeant of a Regiment and a Man of a Company appointed to assist the Quarter-Master, during the Campaign,

paign, in marking out and keeping the Camp clean; as also for the Performing of all other things which appertain to their Duty, such as the Receiving of Ammunition-Bread, or any other Provisions which shall be distributed to their Regiments; all Ammunition, Working-Tools, Carriages, Cloaths and Accoutrements; for which Reason they do no other Duty during the Campaign, except on such where the Regiments mount Entire.

The Serjeant is call'd the Quarter-Master's-Serjeant, and the Soldiers the Camp-Colour-Men. Each Camp-Colour-Man carries either a Spade or a Hatchet, which are deliver'd to them from the Train.

When the Army marches, the Quarter-Masters and the Camp-Colour-Men are order'd before to take up the Ground on which they are to encamp; and as soon as the Quarter-Master-General, or his Deputies have given them their Ground, they are to mark out the Incampment of their Regiment, and when that is done, they are to make their Necessary Houses, and to get them finish'd, if possible, by the time the Regiments arrive, that the Camp may be kept sweet and clean; for which Reason the Centries must have strict Orders not to suffer any one to ease himself any where else; and when any Soldier, Servant or Sutler, is found offending therein, the Commanding Officer should order him to be severely Punished.

When the Army continues any time in Camp, new Houses-of-Offices are to be made every sixth or seventh Day, and the old ones carefully stopp'd up. The Camp-Colour-Men are likewise to open a Communication betwixt Regiment and Regiment, of a sufficient Breadth for a Grand-Division to march in Front, tho' they should Remain but one Night in a Camp; but when that Work proves too much for them to perform, the Majors must order them to be relieved by other Men, and see the Communications made.

The Quarter-Masters and their Serjeants are to see that the Streets are swept clean every Morning, and that the Butchers and Sutlers bury their Garbidge and Filth every Day; and that all dead Horses are immediately Buried, that the Air may be kept from Infection. They are likewise to examine the Meat and Drink which is sold by the Butchers and Sutlers, that they may not vend unwholsome Provisions; and whenever they find any bad Provision, or any one attempting to sell it, they are immediately to seize both the Provision and the Owner, and to acquaint the Commanding Officer

Officer with it, that he may give Directions for their being Try'd by a Court-Martial, in order to their being severely punished for the same.

The Major of every Regiment is to inspect nicely into all these Particulars, and not rely wholly on Reports, but to see that they are punctually executed.

They are likewise to look into, and regulate the Prices of all the Provisions which are sold by the Sutlers and Butchers attending their Regiments, that the Soldiers may not be imposed upon. Neither are they to admit of any Tents, Huts or Kitchens in the Front, or any thing but the Quarter-Guard, and the Necessary-Houses.

The Quarter-Masters are to be very exact in entering regularly in their Books, all the Ammunition-Bread, or Provisions, and all manner of Stores which they shall receive for and distribute to their Regiments, that they may give an Account of the several Particulars when required.

A R T I C L E IV.

The Reveille is never Beat the Day the Army Marches, unless particularly ordered, but the General instead of it.

At the Beating of the General, the Officers and Soldiers are to dress and prepare themselves for the March.

At the Beating of the Assembly or Troop, they are to strike all their Tents, pack up and load the Baggage, and send it with a proper Guard, to the Place where the Whole is appointed to assemble. After this, the Quarter and Standard-Guards, and the Rear-Guards are to be drawn in, the Troops and Companies to Draw up in their Streets, and to be Told off, that they may be ready to Form into Squadron and Battalion at the next Signal.

At the Hour appointed for the Army to March, the Drummers are to Beat a March at the Head of the Line; and as soon as they cease Beating, the Squadrons and Battalions March out and Form at the Head of their Incampment, compleat their Files, and tell off the Battalions by Grand or Sub-Divisions, as it shall be ordered: And when the March is beat a second time on the Right or Left of the Line, all the Squadrons and Battalions are to Wheel towards the Flank, where the March was beat, and begin the March as soon as wheeled.

The Horse have different Terms for the two first Signals for the March of an Army. The Beating the General is
called

called by the Horse, Sounding to Boot and Saddle; and the Assembly is Sounding to Horse: However in the General Order given out to the Army, they are called by the Terms which are used by the Foot.

The usual Time for the Regimental Quarter-Masters, the Camp-Colour-Men, and the Escort to Assemble, is, at the Beating of the General.

When the Army is to March towards the Right, they then Parade at the Head of the Right Wing of Horse; and if they March to the Left, they are to Parade at the Head of the Left Wing; but when the Army is to March directly towards the Front, the Camp-Colour-Men, &c. Parade then at the Head of the first Line of Foot. These are the General Rules laid down for the Assembling of the Camp-Colour Men, and as soon as they are Paraded, they are to March with their Quarter-Master-General to the Place where the Army is to encamp.

A R T I C L E V.

A little before the Opening of the Campaign, it is the Duty of the Quarter-Master-General to Draw out on Paper the Incampments of the Army; in the doing of which he is to have a due Regard to the Seniority of the several Corps; as also in placing the General Officers to their Commands according to their Rank: After which he is to present it to the General in Chief for his Approbation.

This Plan, or Draught of the Incampment, is likewise called the Line of Battle; since the Troops always Incamp in the same Order in which they draw up in the Line, that, if the Enemy, by a sudden March, should endeavour to Surprise you in your Camp, you may be ready to enter upon Action as soon as you are formed at the Head of your Incampment: And though the General may think it necessary to alter the Disposition of his Troops when he is going to attack the Enemy, yet the Incampment of the Army is not changed on that Account, but remains as at first fixed, unless other Reasons induce him to it.

In Forming the Incampment, the Troops are divided into Brigades, and the Brigades into two Lines, which are distinguished by the First and Second, or Front and Rear Lines.

A Brigade of Foot generally consists of 4 Battalions, and that of Horse or Dragoons of 6 Squadrons; but as the Term
of

of Battalion and Squadron is frequently used, tho' the Number each consists of is not mentioned, it is to be understood, that, in the general way of speaking, a Battalion of Foot is computed at 500 Men in Rank and File; and a Squadron of Horse and Dragoons at 150.

The Method of forming the Foot into Brigades, is as follows: The several Battalions are divided, according to Seniority, into four equal Parts or Divisions.

The first Part is to consist of the eldest Battalions; the second Part of the next eldest; the third Part of those next to the second; and the fourth Part of the youngest Battalions.

The Battalions being thus divided into four Classes, the first Brigade is composed of the eldest Battalion of each Class; the second Brigade of the second Battalion of each Class; the third Brigade of the third Battalion of each; and so on in this manner till the Whole are formed into Brigades; by which Method, there will be a Battalion of every Class in each Brigade, and thereby intermix the old and young Battalions: For, as entire Brigades are frequently Detached, unless they were mixed in this Manner, One composed of four young Battalions might be commanded on an Affair of Importance, and, for want of Experience, fail of Success; but by intermixing the experienced and unexperienced Battalions together, that Danger is in a great Measure avoided; which, in my Opinion, shews the Method not only Right but Necessary.

The Battalions draw up in Brigades, thus: The eldest Battalion is placed on the Right of the Brigade, the second Battalion on the left of it, and the two youngest in the Center, the third Battalion being on the Right of the fourth. This Rule, of placing the eldest Battalion on the Right of the Brigade, is only observed by the Brigades which are posted in the Right Wing; but those in the Left draw up the Reverse, the eldest Battalion being posted on the Left of the Brigade, and the second Battalion on the Right of it, and so from Left to Right.

When the Brigades are formed, they are divided into two Lines, as follows:

The first and second Brigades are posted on the Flanks of the Front Line; and the third and fourth Brigades on the Flanks of the Rear Line.

The fifth and sixth Brigades are placed in the Front Line, on the Inside of the first and second; and the seventh and eighth Brigades are placed in the Rear Line, on the Inside of
the

the third and fourth; and so on in this manner till they are all formed in both Lines, the youngest Brigades drawing up in the Center: For as the Flanks of the Lines are more liable to the Attacks of an Enemy than the Center, by their lying open, they are esteemed the Posts of Honour, and therefore belong to the eldest Brigades; but as the Front Line is more exposed than the Rear, since it begins the Attack, while the other only sustains it, the Left Flank of the Front Line is, undoubtedly, the second Post of Honour, and therefore belongs to the second Brigade; so that the Right Flank of the Rear Line can only be looked upon as the third Post of Honour, and the Left Flank of the said Line as the fourth.

This is the Method when the Troops which compose the Army belong to one Prince; but as the Army in *Flanders* consisted of Troops of several Nations, every Nation had a distinct Post in the Line; so that the first or eldest Nation had all their Troops on the Right; the second Nation had all theirs on the Left; the third had theirs on the Left of the first; the fourth on the Right of the second, and the fifth (if they consisted of so many Nations) had all theirs in the Center. And tho' this may seem, at first View, contrary to the foregoing Rule, yet, by looking on every Nation only as a Brigade, (which must be done in this Case,) it will be found, in every Respect, conformable to it.

The Troops of each Nation are generally divided in both Lines, that those in the first may be sustained by their own Troops; as also that each Nation may share equally of the Danger: For as the Front Line is more exposed, in Battles, than the Rear, the placing the Troops of any one Nation entirely in the Front Line is never done, but on extraordinary Occasions; it being reasonable to conclude that their Loss will be greater than those in the Rear Line, whenever they engage.

The first Nation posts their eldest Brigade on the Right of the Front Line, and their second Brigade on the Right of the Rear Line. Their third and fourth Brigades are placed on the Left of the first and second Brigades, and so on by Seniority till the two youngest Brigades are drawn up on the Left of their own Troops in both Lines, the youngest Post being those which lie nearest the Center.

The second Nation draws up their two eldest Brigades on the Left Flank of both Lines, and their two next Brigades on the Right of the first and second Brigades, the Left being with them the Post of Honour; so that their youngest Brigades close the Right of their own Troops.

The

The other Nations observe the same Rule, according as they are posted in the Right or Left Wing.

Tho' the Horse and Dragoons now Roll with one another upon every Command, and go all under the Denomination of Cavalry, yet in the Line of Battle they are kept in distinct Bodies, and placed in separate Brigades; it being a Rule never to mix the Horse and Dragoons in the same Brigade.

The Regiments of Horse are formed into Brigades in the same manner as the Battalions of Foot; and tho' a Regiment of Horse consists of several Squadrons, yet they are kept together in the same Brigade, and never divided, unless a Regiment should contain more Squadrons than a Brigade is generally composed of, as most of the *Imperial* Regiments do.

The same Rule is observed by the Regiments of Dragoons, in forming them into Brigades, as the Horse are.

The Horse are Divided and Incamp'd on the Flanks of the Foot of both Lines, and posted according to Seniority of Brigades, or Nations, on the Right and Left, as above directed for the Foot.

The Dragoons are Divided and Incamp'd on the Flanks of the Horse of both Lines, and posted according to Seniority, as the Horse are; so that the Dragoons are placed on the Extremity of the Lines, and have thereby the Post of the Horse; but this was not given them by way of Pre-eminence, but Conveniency: For as the Dragoons, by their first Institution, were only mounted upon little light Horses, and designed for Expeditious Foot, they were therefore posted on the Flanks of the Army, that they might be ready to march on every Occasion, such as Convoys, covering Parties, securing of Passes or Fords, or Expeditions of the like Nature, in order to save the Horse for the most Important Acts of War, Battles; in which the Cavalry have so great a Share, that they are generally either gained or lost by them; there being very few Instances of the Foot having gained a Battle after their Cavalry were beat.

These are the General Rules for the forming an Incampment, or Line of Battle.

In the Incamping of an Army, the first Point which the Quarter-Master-General is to consider of, is the Security of the Camp, that it may not be liable to any sudden Surprise, by leaving the Flanks open and exposed to the Enemy; for which End, it is usual to cover them with Towns, Villages, Woods, Morasses, or Rivers, when such can be met with where the Army is to Incamp, that the Enemy may not be
able

able to approach the Flanks without Difficulty, or march a considerable Body of Men to attack them there.

The second Consideration, is to have Wood, Water and Forage near the Camp, for the Conveniency of the Men and Horses.

In the Incamping an Army, the Front is to be always towards the Enemy; but the Troops which Besiege a Town, Incamp with their Front from the Town, that they may be ready to draw out and oppose any Succours which the Enemy may endeavour to throw into it. Besides, as the Guard of the Trenches is always in Proportion to the Strength of the Garison, the Rear of the Camp is in no Danger of Sorties from the Town. This is the general Rule; but when a Town is Besieged, where the Besiegers have nothing to apprehend from without, by having only the Garison to Encounter, (as is now the Case of those before *Gibraltar*) I presume they will then Incamp with their Front towards the Town.

As the General Officers claim a Right to have Houses assigned them for their Quarters, when Towns or Villages lie near the Camp; one of the Quarter-Master-General's Deputies is always appointed to take up Quarters for them; in the doing of which, he is to have a particular Regard to the Rank of each; and as soon as he has fixed upon the Houses, he writes their Names on the Doors, and puts their Respective Quarter-Masters in Possession of them, every General Officer being to send one with him for that Purpose.

The Train is generally Incamp'd in the Rear of the second Line, and upon an Eminence, that, if an Accident should happen to the Powder, the Army may receive no Damage by it.

Most Nations have a Regiment belonging to the Train composed of Gunners and Matrosses, and Commanded by Artillery-Officers; which Regiment never Draws up in the Line, or Rolls with the Army, but does only Duty on the Train, and always Incamps and Marches with it, and at Sieges they assist in erecting the Batteries.

Though the Train attends on the Army, yet it is a separate and distinct Body, under the Direction of their own Officers, and Independent of every General in the Army, but the Commander in Chief, (always understanding by Commander in Chief, the Officer commanding in Chief a Body of Men with whom they shall be detached) whose Orders they receive from his Adjutant-General, and not from the General Officers of the Day, as the rest of the Army does.

There

There is always an Escort, which generally consists of Horse, Commanded with the Camp-Colour-Men, to secure them from the Enemy while they are Marking out the Ground, and till the Army arrives.

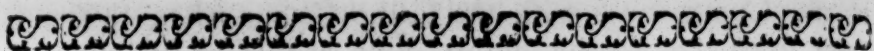
If it is only a common Escort, commanded by an Officer Inferior to the Quarter-Master-General, the Escort is then under the Direction of the Quarter-Master-General, and posted by him as he shall think proper: But as considerable Bodies of Troops, Commanded by General Officers, are Detached with the Camp-Colour-Men when they apprehend any Opposition from the Enemy, the General who Commands the Escort has the sole Direction and Posting of it.

When the Quarter-Master-General has taken a thorough View of the Ground, and fixed the Right and Left of both Lines, he generally leaves the rest to be performed by his Deputies, and goes with a Party of Horse to Reconnoitre the Country which lies towards the Enemy, in order to see by what Roads they can approach the Camp, that he may acquaint the General with the several Particulars as soon as he Arrives, for his giving the necessary Directions to the Generals of the Day, to post a sufficient Number of Men on the Grand-Guard and Out-Posts, for the Security of the Camp, and the Places where they are to be posted, which the Generals of the Day are to see done.

The Quarter-Master-General is to Reconnoitre the Country to find out Forage for the Army, and to fix the Places where they are to Forage from time to time; as also to Regulate the Escorts, and the Places to post them in, to secure the Foragers: And when either of the Wings, or the Whole is order'd to Forage, the Quarter-Master-General, or one of his Deputies, is always to go along with the Officer who Commands the Escort, in order to Conduct him to his Post, and to inform him of the Situation of the Country, that he may make a proper Disposition of his Men, both for keeping the Foragers within due Bounds, and to prevent their being fallen upon by the Enemy.

The Quarter-Master-General is to provide Guides to Conduct the Lines, Artillery and Baggage, when the Army Marches; as also for the Foragers, and all Detachments and Out-Posts that may require them.

In great Armies there is always a Company of Guides Established for that Purpose; which Company is under the Care and Direction of the Quarter-Master-General.



C H A P. XVIII.

Duty of the Troops at a Siege.

IN this Chapter I shall only treat of those Things which relate to the Workmen and the Guard of the Trenches, with some other Particulars necessary to be known by those Officers who have not been on such important Commands, in order to give them an Idea of their Duty.

As the Method of carrying on the Approaches is the Duty of the Engineers, whoever would be informed of those Particulars, must consult the Works of Mr. *Vauban*, Mr. *Cohorne*, and others who have excelled in that Art.

A R T I C L E I.

The Foot are not only commanded as a Guard to the Trenches, but are likewise employed in the Raising of the Works, and the making of the several Materials required, such as Gabions, Hurdles, Saucissons, Fascines and Pickets: For the doing of which the Men are regularly paid every Day, or every two Days at farthest, according to the following Prices.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Each Workman in the Trenches had <i>per</i> Night,	0	0	8
Those who were employed on the Batteries } had each in the 24 Hours,	0	1	4
The Volunteers who were retained during the Siege, for to fill up the Ditch of the Town, lay- ing of a Bridge over it, or such dangerous Enter- prizes, had each every 24 Hours, whether em- ployed or not, }	0	2	6
Wool-pack Volunteers, when employed, had each	0	5	0
For the Planting of a Gabion, and filling it with Earth, when the Approaches were carried on by Demi-sapp }	0	0	6
For making of a Fascine and Picket,	0	0	3
For a Saucisson,	0	0	6½
For a Hurdle,	0	0	8
For a Gabion,	0	1	4
			Besides

Besides the Charges above-mention'd, there are a great many more which cannot be regularly stated; such as Miners; others employed in sinking of Wells or Pits to find out the Mines of the Enemy, for which they are sometimes paid half a Pistole an Hour; others hired to reconnoitre the Breach, and fathom the Ditch, if it is wet. When some desperate Attack is to be made on a little Out-work where a few Men are only required, they generally do it by such who will go voluntarily, offering a Reward to each Man. Those who work in the Sap have likewise extraordinary Wages; with several others of the like nature, of which this Nation is very little acquainted, because the *Dutch* were at the whole Expences of the Sieges during the late War; and as they were exceeding chargeable, the Towns, when taken, were deliver'd into their Hands, in order to reimburse them; for which reason the Field-Deputies of the *States* appointed a Treasurer at every Siege for the paying of the Workmen, &c. from whom the Majors of Brigade receiv'd the Money for those of their own Nation, and gave it to the Majors of the Regiments, that they might clear their Men.

A Copy of the daily Orders (in which is inserted the Number of Workmen of all Kinds, as also the Number of Fascines, &c. to be made by every Regiment) was deliver'd to the Treasurer, that he might know what was to be paid; which Orders, together with the Receipts of the Majors of Brigade, were to him sufficient Vouchers for the Payment of the Money. These Payments were made every Day, or every two Days at farthest, without which the Works would go but slowly on; for tho' the Men so employ'd run a great deal of Danger, as well as undergo a great deal of Fatigue, yet the Desire of getting Money does not only soften the Labour, but makes the Danger also appear less; but unless the Men are punctually paid, it will be impossible for the Officers to keep them to their Duty.

The Men who are employ'd in the making the Trenches begin to work as soon as it is dark, and leave off at break of Day; but when a Work is not finish'd, and that the going on with it in the Day-time may be done without exposing the Men to too much Danger, fresh Detachments are ordered on when the others leave off, and go off at Night when the others come on; so that they are only to work 12 Hours, or the Length of the Night or the Day. It is the same with those who work on the Batteries; but as the Cannon of the Besieged fire constantly at the Batteries, in order

to dismount the Guns planted on them, and thereby often damage both the Parapet and Platforms, they are therefore obliged to keep a sufficient Number of Workmen in a constant Readiness to repair them, at whatever time it shall happen; which Men are generally continu'd on that Command 24 Hours, and are therefore paid double Wages, which is one Shilling and four Pence each.

The working Parties are always done by Detachment, every Battalion at the Siege, except those which mount the Guard of the Trenches, giving an equal Number of Men to the Works, with the same Number of Officers and Serjeants to command them as is usually ordered for other Duties. Drummers are never commanded with these Detachments.

The Workmen march without Arms, and carry only such Tools as are proper for the Works on which they are to be employ'd, such as Pick-Axes and Spades; and the Officers who command them have only their Swords and Scarfs; and notwithstanding these Commands are both painful and dangerous, yet they do not pass for Duties of Honour, but only those of Fatigue; and therefore begins with the Youngest, as the others do with the Eldest. But before we proceed further, it will be proper to mention the necessary Preparation of Materials, which are to be made by the Foot, before the Trenches are opened.

As soon as the Town is invested, Bills and Hatchets are deliver'd, by the Train, to the several Regiments for the making of Fascines, &c. on the receiving of which, the Quarter-Masters are to give Receipts, that those which are not returned to the Train at the End of the Siege may be charged to the Regiments which do not.

Orders are then given for each Regiment to make such a Number of Fascines, Pickets, Saucissons, Gabions and Hurdles, in which the proper Dimensions of each is particularly specified, for the Information of those who are to make them; the common Proportions of which I shall here insert, and are as follows.

A Fascine, is only a Faggot made of the green Branches of Trees, about six Foot long, with four or five Bindings, and of the Thickness of a common Faggot. They are not only used in the Parapet of the Trenches and Batteries, but likewise in the filling up of Ditches for the passing of them.

Pickets, are Stakes about four Foot long, and made sharp at one End, by which the Fascines are fastened to the Ground.

A Sau-

A Saucisson, is a Fascine of about 16 Foot long, made of very small Branches, and no thicker than an ordinary Fascine, having the Bindings within 16 or 18 Inches of one another. They are used in the Platforms of Batteries, and for the making of Blinds, when any of the Works are enfiladed.

Hurdles are so well known, from their being constantly used in Sheep-folds, that there is no Occasion for an Explanation. When the Trenches are very wet or dirty they are laid at the Bottom of them, for the Conveniency of walking. They are also used for the passing of Morasses.

Gabions are round wattled Baskets, open both at the Top and Bottom. They are of Different Sizes; but those which are generally made use of, are about four Foot Diameter, and five or six Foot high. They place them frequently on the Platforms of the Batteries, and fill them with Earth, which makes the Parapet, or, as it is called in the Terms of Fortification, the Merlons of the Battery. The Merlons, are only the Pieces of the Parapet or Wall which rise up between the Embrasures to secure the Gunners from the Fire of the Besieged. Gabions are always used when the Approaches are carried on by a Demi-sap; or when they cannot sink a Trench, by meeting with wet or marshy Ground, they make use of Gabions to carry on the Approaches above Ground. Wool-Packs and Sand-Bags are also proper in such Places, as well as for the making of Lodgments.

When the Orders are given for making Fascines, &c. every Regiment is to send out proper Detachments to the adjacent Woods, or Places appointed for that Purpose; and when the Men have made the Number ordered, the Officers are to return with their Detachments to their Regiments; after this fresh Detachments are to be sent every Day, till the whole Number directed are made; and so on during the Siege, for whatever Number shall be wanting.

The Officers who command these Detachments are to give in a List of the Men to their Majors, with the Number of Fascines, Saucissons, Hurdles and Gabions, placed opposite to the Names of the Men who made them, that they may be paid for the Number they have made, as soon as he receives the Money. The same Rule must be observed, in giving in a List to the Major, by the Officers who command the Workmen in the Trenches, &c. or by the Adjutant when they are detach'd from the Head of the Regiment; by doing which no Dispute can happen in paying them, nor give

them the least room to think they are wronged; a Circumstance of no small Importance to the Service, since a contrary Proceeding is often attended either with Mutiny or Desertion; and therefore every Cause that can incite them to it ought to be carefully avoided.

Detachments of Horse and Dragoons are order'd at the same time with the Foot, to carry the Fascines from the Places where they are made to the general Magazine of the Trenches, which is commonly at or near the Place where they intend to open them.

These Detachments are likewise commanded by Officers; but the Troopers and Dragoons carry neither Swords, Carbines nor Pistols. Every one carries a Fascine and a Picket, (which they lay before them on the Pommel of their Saddles) and march in File to the Place where they are order'd to lay them down; after which they return for more, and so on, 'till they bring the Number order'd. But when this proves too fatiguing to the Cavalry, the Peasants are summoned in with their Waggon, as also those belonging to the Train and Bread, in order to be employed in carrying them; and, on extraordinary Occasions, all the Waggon, belonging to the Sutlers are likewise sent, and the General Officers are desired to send theirs.

As the Gabions and Saucissons cannot be carried on Horses, Waggon from the Train are always sent for them.

When the Woods or Places where the Fascines are made lie near the Camp, the Men who make them are frequently ordered to bring them to the Head of their own Regiments; from whence they are carried, as above-mentioned, to the general Magazine of the Trenches; to which Place the working Tools are likewise to be sent from the Train, where Commissaries or Store-keepers are constantly to attend for delivering of them to the Workmen, and receiving them back when they leave off: For which Reason, the Officers who command the Workmen are, when they leave off work, to march their Detachments to the said Magazine, and deliver the working Tools to the Store-keepers.

A Guard of Foot is always placed over the said Magazine, to prevent any of the Tools or other Materials being taken from thence, but by the Direction of the proper Officers.

A R T I C L E II.

When the Trenches are to be opened (which is always made a very great Secret, that the Besieged may not know the

the certain time of doing it) a sufficient Number of Battalions and Squadrons, with General Officers in Proportion to command them, are ordered for the Covering-Party, to secure the Workmen from the Sorties of the Besieged.

A little after Sun-set, the said Battalions and Squadrons draw out at the Head of their Incampment, and march from thence so as to arrive at the General Rendezvous just as it grows dark, where they are join'd by the General Officers who are to command them; as also by the Engineers who are to trace out the Works.

The Rendezvous so appointed, is generally at or near the Place where the Trenches are to be opened, and is therefore called afterwards the Parade of the Trenches.

When the Covering-Party is arriv'd at the Parade, the chief Engineer who has the conducting of the Siege, acquaints the General who commands the Troops with the Place where he intends to open the Trenches, and how far he proposes to carry them on, with the Situation of the Ground betwixt that and the Town, that he may Post his Troops accordingly: For as the Engineers are obliged to reconnoitre the Ground thoroughly Day after Day before they can determine where to make the Attack, they can therefore inform the General of the Places where the Regiments may be posted to the best Advantage, both for their own Security as well as that of the Workmen.

The Men are to keep a profound Silence both in the Marching to take Possession of their Posts, and during the time they continue there, to prevent their being discover'd by the Enemy; and as soon as the Foot have placed a sufficient Number of Sentries, to give notice when a Sortie is made from the Town, they are to lie flat on the Ground with their Arms in their Hands, unless their Situation is such as to cover them from the Fire of the Enemy, by being posted behind some rising Ground, Hedge, Ditch, Wall or old Ruins; but when those are not to be met with, their lying flat on the Ground will be a Means of saving a great many of them, since they cannot be easily discovered in that Position; and if they are not, only the dropping or spent Ball will then touch them; but supposing they knew where they were posted, they will receive much less Damage by lying down than if they stood up, as every Man's Reason must immediately suggest to him; and therefore I shall not trouble the Reader with farther Arguments to prove it. The Horse cannot pursue this Method; for they must continue mounted all Night,
S 3 that,

that, when a Sortie is made, one Part may be ready to sustain the Foot, while the other endeavours to get between the Enemy and the Town, to cut off their Retreat.

The Workmen are order'd at the same time with the Covering-Party; for which Service every Battalion then off Duty is to furnish an equal Number, such as 100, 150, or 200 Men each, according to the Works which they propose to throw up that Night; which Detachments are to be on the Parade of the Trenches, just as the Covering-Party marches from thence to their Posts, and to draw up (either six or three deep) according to Seniority of Regiments, which the Major of Brigade of the Day is to see done, and to examine their Numbers, to know if they have complied with the Orders, in sending the proper Complement.

As soon as the Workmen are Paraded, Pick-Axes and Spades are deliver'd to them, in the doing of which a Regard is had to the Nature of the Ground, that if it is hard or rocky they may give a greater Proportion of Pick-Axes; but when of a soft and loose Mould, the Number of Spades exceeds the other. In the distributing of the Tools to the Men, the Officers should take care to intermix them in such a manner, that as fast as one Man loosens the Earth with a Pick-Ax, the one next him may have a Spade to throw it up with; and as this Rule must be observed in the drawing up of the Men to work, the intermixing of the Tools on the Parade will save the Trouble and Time of doing it afterwards; after this, a Fascine and Picket is deliver'd to each Man.

As soon as the Covering-Party is posted, the Engineers trace out the Approaches; but as the doing of it with common Lines would be of little use in the Night, from their not being easily seen, they trace them out with Straw Lines, that is, Ropes made of Straw. After this they return to the Parade, and acquaint the Major of Brigade of the Day what Number of Men with Tools they must have to the several Parts, and what Number without Tools, for the carrying of Fascines, &c. and when the Disposition of the Workmen is made, the Engineers conduct them to the several Parts traced out (each Man carrying a Fascine and a Picket with him, besides his working-Tool) where the Officers are to draw up their Detachments in a single Rank behind the Line and facing it, leaving an Interval of three Foot betwixt each Man.

Note, The Meaning of the Expression, *behind the Line or Trenches*, is the Side from the Town, or next the Camp; and

and when the Word *Before* is used, is understood the Side next the Town.

When the Men are drawn up, as above directed, they are to place the Fascines along the Straw Line, and fasten them to the Ground with the Pickets. After this is done, the Men with the Pick-Axes are to dig Holes behind them about four Foot from the Line on which the Fascines were laid; and as fast as they loosen the Earth, the Men with the Spades are to throw it on the Fascines; and as soon as the Holes are about a Foot, or a Foot and half deep, the Men with the Pick-Axes are to stand in them, and dig the Ground which lies between the Holes, till they are all opened into one another; which being done, forms a Trench or Ditch running parallel to the Line on which the Fascines were placed; and the Earth which comes out of the said Trench being thrown on the Fascines, raises the Parapet or Breast-work betwixt them and the Town; but as the Men will be vastly exposed, if they are discover'd, 'till the Depth of the Trench and the Height of the Parapet is sufficient to cover them from the Fire of the Besieged, the Officers must therefore oblige them to keep a profound Silence, and apply themselves thoroughly to the Work, 'till that is done; after which, they may allow them to go on more moderately in the finishing of it, though without suffering them to be idle, which, after they are covered from the Fire of the Enemy, is generally the Case, unless they are well looked to. It is therefore the Duty of the Officers on these Commands, to walk constantly from Place to Place, in order to view every Part of the Work on which their Detachments are employed, since on their Diligence, that of their Men will depend.

The Men who are appointed to carry Fascines only, are to bring them from the general Magazine to the Places where the others are at Work; in the doing of which, the Officers who Command them, are to take care that they are Diligent, lest those who are at work should be forced to stop for want of Fascines to raise the Parapet; the Consequence of which may occasion you the Loss of a great many Men, by being longer exposed to the Fire of the Town than they would be when they are duly supplied.

As soon as the Fascines, which were laid down first, are covered with Earth; another Row or Line of Fascines must be placed on the Top of them, and fastened down with Pickets; and when these are covered with Earth, a third Row of Fascines must be placed on them; and so on in this

manner, by intermixing of Earth and Fascines, 'till the Parapet is raised to its proper Height, which is Breast-high from the Foundation; which, if Fascines are not wanting, and that the Ground is not excessively hard or rocky, may be done in a very short time, at least so high as to cover them from the Fire.

The Reason for their using Fascines in the Parapet, is not only for the raising of it quicker, but likewise to Strengthen and Support the Earth, which, being loose, could not stand without them. Besides, as the Inside of the Parapet must only have a little Slope, like the Escarpe of a Rampart, Fascines are absolutely Necessary, since the Earth would be continually falling down without them.

From the Top of the Parapet, the Earth must run with a gentle Slope, like those commonly made in Gardens, towards the Town. The Reason for this is, that when the Enemy come to attack the Trenches, they may find nothing to cover them from your Fire; whereas if the Parapet had no greater a Slope on the Outside than that on the Inside, it would serve as a Breast-work to the Enemy when they came to attack you.

The Banquet, or Foot-bank, is the Space of Ground which is left standing betwixt the Parapet and the Brink of the Trench, and it should be at least three Foot broad after the Parapet is finished. It serves as a Basis to the Parapet, and for the Sentries to stand on, to discover what passes betwixt the Trenches and the Town.

The Trench should not be above three Foot deep in the solid Ground, or rather less, if you can raise the Parapet high enough without going so low, since the sinking of a deep Trench seldom fails of making it exceeding dirty. It should be at least four Foot broad at the Bottom, that the Soldiers may march in it two a-breast, or pass by one another with ease.

These are the common Proportions of the several Parts, the whole of which is called the Trenches: And though it is not only the Duty of the Engineers to instruct the Officers, that they may direct their Men in the making of the Works; but likewise to visit them from time to time, to see that each Part has its true Proportion; yet as those Gentlemen are liable to Accidents, from the Danger they are often exposed to, that may render them incapable of performing their Duty, by which the Works may be retarded, or ill-executed, unless the Officers, from their own Experience, can supply
the

the Defect; I thought the inserting of the above Particulars would be of Use to young Officers, by giving them some Notion what Trenches are, and in what Manner they are made, that when they shall be order'd on those Commands, they may not be entirely at a loss how they are to proceed, in case they should fail of the necessary Direction and Assistance of the Engineers, which proves too often the Case at most Sieges; nor is it to be much wonder'd at, for if the Engineers do their Duty, they are so often disabled, that their Want must be supplied by the Diligence and Skill of the Officers.

At Break of Day the Workmen leave off, and the Officers march their Detachments back to the Camp, making a Report first to the General who commands in the Trenches what Number of their Men are killed and wounded, and the same to their own Colonels, as soon as they dismiss their Men.

At the same time that the Workmen leave off, the Battalions which covered them, take Possession of the Trenches, at least such a Number as shall be thought sufficient, which are always the eldest, and the rest return to the Camp. The Squadrons are likewise drawn off, leaving a proper Detachment, if thought necessary.

When the Trenches are open'd, the Workmen are to be on the Parade of the Trenches always at Sun-set. The Major of Brigade of the Day is to be there at the same time, to look into their Numbers, and to Detach them from thence to the several Works, as the Engineers shall direct; to which they are conducted by old experienc'd Serjeants, who are employed by the Major of the Trenches to look after the Works, and to assist him in the performing of the several Parts of his Duty, and are therefore call'd the Adjutants of the Trenches, for which they have extraordinary Pay.

The common Method of detaching the Workmen from the Parade of the Trenches, is, by beginning on the Right, and so on to the Left, 'till the whole are disposed of; but as this Method proves very prejudicial to some Regiments, by having their entire Detachment sent to those Works which are vastly expos'd to the Fire of the Besieged, and thereby lose a considerable Number of their Men, while others receive little or no Damage; I should therefore think it highly reasonable, when this is the Case, that an equal Number of Men should be taken from the Detachment of each Regiment, and sent to the Works which are most exposed,

posed, by which means the Loss will fall more equally on the whole; otherwise the Regiments which are drawn up on the Right will be great Sufferers, particularly when the Approaches are carried near the *Glacis*, since those who are first detach'd, are generally employed on those Works, and the others on things of less Moment, such as the finishing of Works already begun, or the carrying of Fascines, &c.

I own, that the detaching of the Workmen according to the Method proposed, will create the Major of Brigade a little more Trouble; but surely that cannot be given as a good Reason for its not being done; for while the Lives of Men are in question, impartial Justice should be done them, whatever Pains it may cost.

The posting of Battalions betwixt the Workmen and the Town, is only done on the first breaking of Ground, they being afterwards to remain constantly in the Trenches; however they sometimes make Detachments from the Regiments, of Lieutenant's and Captain's Commands, to support the Workmen, and post them at the Head of the Trenches, that they may be ready to march out and attack those who sally from the Town, in order to put a Stop to their Progress 'till the Battalions can be brought up, to facilitate the Retreat of the Workmen, and to prevent their being pursued.

When a Sortie is made which obliges the Workmen to quit their Posts (which a very small Matter will do) the Officers who command them, are to endeavour all they can to prevent their dispersing; for which end, every Officer is to draw his Detachment into a Body, and retire with them either into the next Trench, or at a proper Distance from the Works; where they are to remain 'till the Enemy are repulsed, and then return with them to their former Stations, in order to finish what they had begun. But as Orders, on these Occasions, are not of sufficient Force to oblige the Men to keep with their Officers, or return with them to their Work, after the Enemy retire, unless proper Punishments are annexed to the Breach of them, and, when found out, strictly executed; and when neglected, proves a great Detriment to the Service by prolonging of the Siege: to prevent this, some other Expedient, than what has been hitherto found out, should be thought of to keep the Workmen within moderate Bounds; and though it is a difficult Task, yet, I believe, it may, in some Degree be effected, by inflicting some corporal Punishment on those who shall
do

do it (unless they are wounded) and stopping of their working Money, and dividing it amongst those who remain with their Officers, as a Reward for their complying with their Duty, and likewise to induce them to detect those who shall quit their Commands; for without the Money is divided in this manner, they will not detect one another, but rather endeavour to conceal it from their Officers. As this Method was never practised that I know of, I therefore only offer it as a Notion of my own, in order to put those who shall command, on these Occasions, upon finding out a proper Remedy against an Evil which is constantly complained of, tho' still suffered to go on.

A R T I C L E III.

The Guard of the Trenches is never form'd by Detachment, but is always compos'd of entire Battalions; the Number of which must depend on the Strength of the Besieged, it being necessary to have a sufficient Force to repulse any Sortie they shall be able to make, either for the levelling of the Trenches already made, to interrupt the Progress of those carrying on, or nailing up of the Cannon on the Batteries.

As the mounting of the Guard of the Trenches is a Duty of Honour, it always begins with the eldest Regiments.

The Guard of the Trenches is only a Duty of 24 Hours, but the time of relieving is not fixed, since it is sometimes done in the Morning, and sometimes in the Evening; though formerly the Relief was always made in the Dusk of the Evening, to avoid, as they said, the Danger which they must run from the Fire of the Besieged, if they made it when it was light; but as they did not observe that Rule at the Sieges in *Flanders*, we must conclude, that doing it always in the Dusk of the Evening proceeded rather from Custom than Reason: For when the Relief can be made with Safety in the Day-time, it is much properer than when it is dark, since they cannot then make so good a Judgment of their Post, or know by what Communication they can march to sustain one another, in case of a Sortie, as when they mount in the Morning, or some time before it is dark. It's true, when they mounted in the Dusk of the Evening, the Majors of those Regiments took a View of the Trenches in the Morning, to inform themselves thoroughly of all the Particulars relating to their Posts; as also those belonging to the other Regiments, that, by knowing the Situation of the whole,

whole, they might the more readily march to sustain one another, on the first Order they should receive from the General who commands in the Trenches: After this they returned to the Camp, and made a Report of the same to their respective Colonels.

After the Trenches are opened, the Regiments which mount, are always named the Day before in publick Orders, that they may be prepared for it: Neither do they furnish any Men to the ordinary nor extraordinary Guards (their own Quarter-Guards excepted) nor working Parties, after such Orders are given, till they are relieved, that they may march into the Trenches as strong as possible, leaving no more Men on their Quarter-Guards, than what are absolutely necessary for the Security of their Tents and Baggage.

General Officers are appointed at the same time to command the Troops in the Trenches, who mount and dismount with them. The Number of General Officers are in Proportion to the Number of Battalions which mount; and when the Attack is very considerable, there is then a Lieutenant-General, a Major-General, and a Brigadier order'd for the Command, with whom a Major of Brigade frequently mounts, for the receiving and delivering of the General's Orders to the Troops in the Trenches, otherwise the eldest Major commonly performs that Duty, unless the General appoints another.

When there are more Attacks than one carried on at the same time, a proper Number of General-Officers are appointed for the Command of each.

The Regiments which mount the Trenches, are to march from their own Incampment, so as to be on the Parade an Hour before the Time appointed for the Relief, where they are joined by the Generals who are to command them.

When the Parade of the Trenches is not naturally covered from the Cannon of the Besieged, by having a rising Ground before it (which they always pitch upon for the opening of the Trenches, when such a Place can be found near the Attack) a large Epaulement is then thrown up to secure those who come to relieve, and that they may march from thence into the Trenches without being exposed to the Fire of the Town.

The Regiments are to draw up by Seniority on the Parade of the Trenches; and as soon as they are all formed, whatever Detachments are to be then made from them, either for Guards to the Batteries, Magazines, or particular
advanced

advanced Posts, are to be immediately Drawn out, with proper Officers to Command them, and formed by the Major of Brigade who mounts the Trenches, or the Officer who is appointed to do that Duty ; after which the Regiments are to be told off into Platoons, and the Officers divided equally to them, with which they are constantly to remain till they are relieved.

The Regiments in the Trenches are to send each a Sergeant to the Parade, to conduct those who come to Relieve them to their several Posts, the Trenches being sometimes of so great an Extent, and so Intricate, that without this Precaution, it will be difficult for them to find their Way, particularly when the Approaches are advanced up to the *Glacis*.

When the Time of Relieving is come, the General orders the Regiments to March and Relieve the Guard of the Trenches.

They March in by Seniority, the Eldest Relieving that which is Posted at the Head of the Trenches, or most Advanced Parallel. The rest are to follow the same Rule, the Posts of Honour being those which lie nearest the Town.

When they come to the *Queue*, or Tail of the Trenches, the Grenadiers, led by their Officers, are to Rank off singly from the Right, or March Two a-breast, if the Trench is wide enough to allow of it ; at the Bottom of which they are to March, to avoid being exposed to the Fire of the Besieged : For though they are not to be afraid of the Fire, yet the Soldiers are never suffered to expose themselves, but when the Service requires it ; and then they are not to decline it, though they should be sure of meeting with certain Death.

The Battalions are to march into the Trenches in the same Manner, the Officers keeping with their respective Platoons : And when they come opposite to the Regiments which they are to Relieve, they are to Halt and Face them. After this, the Sentries posted on the Banquet, to Discover what passes betwixt the Trenches and the Town, are Relieved ; and the Colonels who are to be Relieved, acquaint those who come to Relieve them with all things relating to the Posts, what additional Night-Sentries are necessary for their further Security, &c. during which time the Majors and Adjutants, accompanied by the others, take an exact View of the Works where their Regiments are Posted, that if any Part of them are damaged or broke down, or that the Parapet is not thick

thick enough to resist the Cannon of the Besieged, they may apply to the General of the Trenches for Workmen to Repair them, or obtain his Leave for the doing it by a Detachment of their own Men, since none of those, who belong to the Guard of the Trenches, can quit their Arms, or leave their Posts without his Directions. They are likewise to Reconnoitre the several Communications leading to the other Regiments, that if any of them should be Attacked, they may know when Ordered, how to sustain them without Loss of Time. When the Majors have looked into all these Particulars, (which ought by no means to be omitted, since several of their Men may be lost for want of a due Inspection into the Works) they are to make a Report of the same to their Colonels; after which, the Regiments that are Relieved march out of the Trenches, and return to the Camp.

As soon as the Old Guard is marched off, those of the New are ordered to sit down on the Banquet, holding their Arms between their Legs, which they are not to quit, or stir from their Posts, but on occasions of Necessity; and even then not without Leave of their Officers: Nor must they be suffered to Sleep, that they may be always ready to oppose every Attempt which the Enemy shall make on the Works: And on the first Noise, or Notice given of a Sortie, the Soldiers are to stand up in the Trench; and if the Noise increases, or that the Sentries confirm the Report, the Battalions are to Form on the Reverse of the Trench (which is the Side of the Trench opposite to the Banquet) and Remain there till the General of the Trenches shall send them such Orders as he shall think proper.

The Relief of the Trenches is always made without Beat of Drum, and with as little Noise as possible, that the Besieged may not know the exact Parts you are in, by which means their Fire can be given only at Random; whereas, if the Drum was to Beat, or a considerable Noise made, they could direct it with more Certainty, and thereby make your Loss greater.

Tho' it was the constant Practice formerly, for the Regiments to march into the Trenches with Flying Colours, and Planting them on the Top of the Parapet, as soon as they had taken Possession of their Posts; yet towards the latter End of the Late War in *Flanders*, that Ceremony was laid aside, and the Colours left in Camp under the Care of their own Quarter-Guard, or sent to the Regiment which In-

camp

camp next them ; having found by Experience, that it did not only shew plainly where the Regiments were Posted, but proved likewise a Temptation to the Gunners of the Town to point their Cannon at them, by which they lost a considerable Number of their Men, particularly the Sentries who were posted on the Banquet : And as the Carrying them to the Trenches was not in the least Essential, but rather Destructive to the Service, by exposing their Men without any Real or Probable Advantage, nothing could be more Just and Reasonable than the quitting of that Ceremony, since the *English* do not want such Shews to Animate or Spur them on to their Duty. The *French*, however, keep up the old Custom of carrying their Colours with them, from a Notion, perhaps, that it looks more Daring.

Tho' it is reasonable to suppose, that the Care which lies on the Generals who Command in the Trenches will oblige them to move frequently about the several Posts, in order to keep the Troops Alert, and by their Presence to Animate the Workmen who are carrying on the Approaches ; yet there is a fixed Place where they are to be sent to on every Occasion, which is generally at or near the Battalion which is posted in the Center, as being the most convenient in the sending of Orders to, or the receiving of Reports from the Whole, and where one of them (when there are several on that Command) should always remain for that Purpose.

Whatever Intelligence the Colonels shall receive of the Motions of the Besieged, they are to send an Account of it immediately, by an Officer, to the General of the Trenches, that he may give the necessary Directions to the Whole.

When the Besieged intend to make a vigorous Sally for the Levelling of your Works, or the Nailing of the Cannon on the Batteries, it is frequently preceded by some Sham ones ; their Design in which, being to amuse or draw off your Attention so far, that when they make the Real one, you may imagine it such as the Former, and by that means neglect the necessary Precautions for your Defence ; therefore an Officer must not suffer himself to be imposed upon by that or any Stratagem of the like Nature. Besides, they may just act the contrary, by making the Real one first ; so that there is no knowing when they will make it, or judging of their Future Actions by their Past : For tho' Sorties are generally undertaken in the Night, yet there are Instances of some being made at Noon, which (from their not being expected at such a Time) have proved more successful
than

than the others. I only mention this, to shew how necessary it is for the Troops in Trenches to be always on their Guard, and not to imagine themselves in a State of Security from the Enterprizes of the Besieged, while they are on that Duty.

At some of the great Sieges in *Flanders* in the Late War, besides the General Officers already named for the Trenches, a General of the Foot was appointed for the Command of each Attack, who had the Care and Direction of it during the whole Siege; but as this is quite out of the common Rule of the Service, by its never having been practised before, that I know of, I shall not pretend to determine on its being Right or Wrong, or trouble the Reader with a particular Detail of their Duty.

When the Attacks were commanded by Generals of the Foot in this manner, the Attacks were called after their Names; otherwise they were distinguished by the Right, Left, or Center Attack; or by the Names of the Engineers who had the Conducting of them; or by the Names of the Bastions where the Breaches were made.

A little before the Trenches are Relieved, every Regiment in them is to send a Return to the General, of what Men have been kill'd or wounded during the time they have been on Duty. The Officers who command the several Detachments of Workmen, are to do the same when they leave off Work; as also the Artillery-Officers who command in the Batteries; that he may acquaint the General who commands the Siege, with the several Particulars when he makes his Report to him, which is always done as soon as they are Relieved.

When a *French* Battalion is to Mount the Guard of the Trenches, it is always formed into Picquets, or 48 or 50 Men each, instead of Platoons.

These Picquets are composed of an equal Number of Men from each Company, in the same manner as the Ordinary Picquets are formed.

The Picquet which is drawn up on the Right of the Battalion, is composed of the Officers and Soldiers who are to go first on Duty. The second Picquet, which is drawn up on the Left of the First, consists of those who are the next on Command. All the other Picquets are Formed in the same Manner, and are drawn up in Battalions according to their Tour of Duty, those who are to go on last being on the Left.

The

The Reasons which they give for it are these: When Detachments are wanted in the Trenches, no Time is lost in making them, they being Formed and ready to march on the first Order. Besides, should an Accident happen to any Part of the Regiment by a Sortie, the Loss will not fall on particular Companies, but equally on the Whole.

These are the Reasons which they give for forming the Battalions that mount the Trenches in this Manner; and which in my Opinion seem to carry a good deal of Weight; But as no other Troops but the *French* follow the same Rule, I shall be Silent on that Head, leaving every one to judge of it as they shall think proper.

ARTICLE IV.

Besides the Foot which are ordered for a Guard to the Trenches, there is also a Body of Horse commanded to each Attack, who are relieved every 24 Hours, as the Foot are, and are under the Direction of the General who commands in the Trenches.

They are always posted at or near the *Queue* of the Trenches, so as not to be exposed to the Cannon of the Besieged.

As soon as they Mount, the Officer who commands them sends a Cornet on Foot into the Trenches to attend on the General, that when he has any Orders for the Horse, he may send them by the Cornet.

The Number of Horse which Mount, are more or less according as it shall be judg'd necessary, they being designed, when the Enemy attack the Trenches, to cut off their Retreat to the Town; or if the Sortie is composed of Horse and Foot, you may have Horse to oppose theirs; so that a Regard must be had to the Quality of the Troops in Garrison, and the Nature of the Ground which lies near the Approaches; for if it is not plain and open, neither their Horse nor yours can act, and therefore a small Number will be sufficient: But when the Garrison is strong in Horse, and the Ground proper for them to act in, a great Body of Horse is required on the Trench-Guard. But as the *French*, during the late War, depended more on the Strength and Regularity of their Fortifications than on a numerous Garrison for the prolonging of a Siege, they seldom threw more Troops into a Town than what were sufficient to man the Works; so that they very rarely made a considerable Sally, knowing that if

an Attempt of that kind should miscarry (which more frequently happens than not, if the Troops in the Trenches do their Duty) the Loss of the Town would soon follow, by reducing the Garison too low to make a proper Defence; and as this was the Case at most of the Sieges in *Flanders*, the Horse-Guards seldom consisted of above 200 at each Attack (after the Trenches were opened) but oftner much less, there being very few Instances, if any, where the Service, for which they mounted, was required; and when it is not, the mounting of a great Number proves detrimental to the Service, by putting them on unnecessary Fatigue, since a great many Horses are thereby entirely lost, and others reduced to so low a State as to render them unfit for present Service. However, neither this, nor any other Consideration ought to prevail, or be allowed as an Excuse for their not mounting a sufficient Number on the Trench-Guard, whenever there is reason to apprehend they may be wanted. But notwithstanding the old Custom of making great Sorties, for levelling the Works and nailing the Cannon, was in a manner laid aside, yet the *French* Governors fell upon another Method to retard the Progress of the Works, without much Danger to the Garison; which was, by making of frequent Sorties in the Night of an Officer and 20 Men, or a Serjeant and 12, who march'd up to the Workmen, cried out *Tué, Tué*, with a loud Voice, then fired amongst them, and immediately ran back into the Covert-way; and as they were only sent to disturb the Workmen, they had generally the desired Effect; for upon those Sorties only, the Workmen could not be kept to their Duty by their Officers, but threw down the Tools and dispersed; after which, few or none could be found again that Night to go on with the Works; so that without any Danger to the Garison the Progress of the Siege was as effectually retarded as it could be by great Sallies, unless they could make themselves Masters of the Batteries.

These small Sorties were sometimes made three or four times a-night; and to encourage the Men to undertake them, the Governors always gave a Crown or ten Shillings a Man to those who would go voluntarily; and though they suffer'd for it now and then by the Troops in the Trenches, yet that never-failing Argument, Money, procured them always a sufficient Number of the most bold and intrepid to offer themselves; by which Method the Workmen were so often interrupted and alarmed, that some Nights they did not
finish

finish one Quarter of the Works which were begun; and notwithstanding this was repeated Night after Night, yet I never heard of any Expedient fallen upon to stop it; from whence I conclude it was found impracticable; for as it could only be done by posting of small Guards, commanded by Sergeants, betwixt the Workmen and the Town, in order to intercept those who sally, yet as it was not done, I suppose it proceeded from the too great Danger which those Guards must be exposed to from the Fire of the Besieged, otherwise it was impossible that so clear a Point could be overlook'd.

There being frequent occasion at a Siege to make small Attacks to dislodge the Enemy from their advanc'd Posts of little detach'd Works, which interrupt the Besiegers in the carrying on of their Approaches; as often as Attacks of this kind are necessary, they are always perform'd by the Guard of the Trenches; for which End, every Battalion then on Duty must give their Proportion of Granadiers and others, according to the Number which shall be order'd, that the Loss may fall equally on the whole; and not by particular Regiments, on account of Seniority, as was formerly practised, that Custom being entirely laid aside, and making them by Detachment instituted in their room, as a more just and reasonable way of Proceeding; otherwise the oldest Regiments must be tore to pieces, while the young ones were safe in the Trenches looking on as Spectators. Besides, unless this Method had been alter'd, the *English* must have been constantly destroy'd at the Sieges in *Flanders*: For as the Guard of the Trenches was composed of the Troops of different Nations, of whom the *English* took Post, as belonging to the oldest crown'd Head, or eldest Nation, as they called it, all those Attacks must have been made by them; which sufficiently evinces the Absurdity of the old Method, and the Equity of the new, in making every Battalion then on Duty share equally of the Danger.

On particular Occasions, when the Affair was very dangerous, and that a small Number of Men was only required, it was done by Volunteers (that is, such who would go voluntarily) offering a Reward to each Man; but even in this Case those who command Regiments should not suffer any more Volunteers to go than their Proportion; otherwise they may lose a considerable Number of their bravest Men, by the Temptation of Money, while the Officers who act with more Caution and Prudence, save theirs, by not allowing them to offer themselves till they are called upon, in hopes

that their Places will be supplied by those of other Regiments; several Instances of which could be easily given, were there an occasion.

The same Rule should be observ'd in relation to those who are employed in the Sapp, Demi-sapp, carrying of Wool-Packs, and the Half-Crown Volunteers (as they are called) since every Regiment can supply their Proportion of Men duly qualified for such Undertakings; but as some may have neither Artificers nor Miners, they are always taken where they can be found, without any regard to the said Rule.

The Number of Half-Crown Volunteers are more or less, according to the Business which may be required of them, which is, to fill the Ditch with Fascines when the Breach is made, in order to attack it; as also to lay Bridges over it for the same Purpose: and tho' these Men have nothing to do till towards the End of the Siege, yet they are retained and paid from the opening of the Trenches, and are excused from all other Duty whatever till the Town is taken, or the Siege raised; but they pay dearly for it whenever they are employ'd, it being hardly possible for them to escape.

My Reason for inserting the above Particulars, is principally design'd to inform those who have not been on such Commands, of the proper Method of proceeding, that when they shall be engag'd on the like Occasions, they may know how to conduct themselves accordingly; without which they may be easily caught by the specious Pretences or Compliments of designing Men (in putting the old Puncto of Seniority upon them) to the no small Detriment of those under their Care. The same may likewise happen in case of Volunteers, by allowing a greater Number than your Proportion: For the Hope of Reward is so strongly implanted by Nature, that it creates in Mankind even a Contempt of Death when the Prospect is in view, as was frequently seen by the surprizing Actions which were perform'd at the Sieges in *Flanders*, by the giving of Money; which, when duly regulated, is exceeding proper, and proved of great Service, in taking the Town much sooner than they otherwise could have done; therefore it is not the Method of giving Money which is wrong, but the ill Use that may be made of it, by imposing on particular Regiments, unless the Officers who command them are aware of the Bait.

ARTICLE V.

The Preparations which are generally made for an Assault on a considerable Out-work, or the Body of the Place, are as follows.

The Number of Troops which are commanded on these Occasions, must depend on the Strength of the Place to be attack'd, and the Number of Men who can be brought to defend it.

A Detachment from every Company of Granadiers at the Siege, with a proper Number of Battalions, are ordered to join the Guard of the Trenches; but to prevent any Dispute about Precedency or Right in making the Attack, the Battalions thus order'd should be those who are next on Command for the Trenches.

A Detachment of Hatchet-Men, with their large Axes, are likewise ordered, that if the Passage of the Granadiers is obstructed, by meeting with large Pallisades, either in the Covert-way, or in the Intrenchments behind the Breach, they may be ready to cut them down: For tho' the Bombs and Cannon from the Batteries break them generally down, yet they can't always reach them; for which reason there should be Hatchet-Men order'd, for fear they should be wanted.

There are likewise a sufficient Number of Workmen order'd with Tools, and others to carry the proper Materials, such as Wool-Packs, Sand-Bags, Gabions, Fascines, and Pickets, for the making of a Lodgment on the Breach if so order'd, or an Intrenchment in the Body of the Outwork, to cover you from the Fire of the Town, and to secure you against any Attempt which the Besieged shall make to regain it.

Engineers are commanded with the Workmen, to direct them in making the proper Lodgments, that no Time may be lost in the doing them.

There are always more Battalions order'd than are necessary for the Attack, that some may remain as a Reserve in the Trenches, which, in my Opinion, should be those of the additional Number order'd, whose Tour of mounting the Trenches is furthest off.

The Battalions which compose the Guard of the Trenches always march after and sustain the Granadiers, and the additional Battalions only sustain them.

The General Officers then on Duty in the Trenches command the Attack, unless the Number of Troops so order'd may require a greater Number of Generals than are then on Duty, or one of a superior Rank ; in which Case the Command always falls to the eldest ; but unless for the Reason just mentioned, the Command is never taken from the Generals of the Trenches.

The Disposition of the Troops for the Attack is generally made as follows :

The Granadiers design'd for the Attack are to be posted at the Head of the Trenches, or that Part of them which lies nearest to the Work to be attack'd ; the particular Disposition of whom is as follows :

I. A Serjeant and 12 or 16 Granadiers are drawn out for the Forlorn Hope ; they are not taken from one Company, but one from each of the 12 or 16 eldest Companies ; or if they consist of the Troops of different Nations, they are then taken in Proportion to the Number of Battalions of each Nation.

II. A Lieutenant and 30 or 40 Granadiers form'd by Detachment in the same manner, to sustain the Forlorn Hope.

III. A Captain, 2 or 3 Lieutenants, with 80 or 100 Granadiers, form'd also by Detachment, to sustain the Lieutenant.

IV. A Detachment of 200 Granadiers, commanded by a Major, to sustain the Captain.

V. The whole Body of Granadiers according to Seniority of Companies, or Nations, under the Command of Field-Officers, in Proportion to their Numbers. They should march as many in Front as the Ground they are to pass over will admit of, or the Breach contain.

VI. The Hatchet-Men are to be posted next to the Granadiers, and to march immediately after them.

VII. The Battalions which compose the Guard of the Trenches, are posted, according to Seniority, next to the Hatchet-Men, to sustain the Granadiers.

VIII. The additional Battalions that are to go upon the Attack, are posted next to the Guard of the Trenches, in order to sustain them.

IX. After the Troops design'd for the Attack, the Detachments or Workmen, commanded by their Officers, are posted, that they may be ready to march when order'd to make the Lodgments, with whom the Engineers are to march to instruct them.

X. The

X. The Battalions appointed for the Reserve, are posted next to the Workmen; and when the others march out to the Attack, they are to move up to the Head of the Trenches, that, if the Troops which make the Attack require any Assistance, they may be ready to march out and sustain them, when they shall be so order'd by the General who commands the Attack.

That those who make the Attack may be as little exposed to the Fire of the Besieged as possible, all the Cannon on the Batteries are pointed against the several Works of the Town which defend the Breach; on which they are to Fire incessantly, during the Attack, to keep the Enemy from the Walls.

The Signal commonly given for an Attack, is the throwing of a certain Number of Bombs into the Town at the same time; but if they are thrown into the Work which is to be attacked, or towards the Gorge of the Bastion in which the Breach is made, (that being the Place where the Besieged Intrench themselves for the Defence of it) it will be of great Service to those who make the Attack. For as the Enemy will be obliged either to quit their Posts, or lie flat on the Ground 'till the Bombs have broke, it will give the Grenadiers (if they have not far to march) sufficient time to mount the Breach, and attack the Intrenchment without meeting with much Opposition, 'till they come there, provided the Batteries fire at the same time on the Defences of the Town.

When there are more Attacks than one to be made at the same time, (which, if the Breaches are ready, would be exceeding proper, in order to divide the Force of the Garison) each must have the same Proportion and Disposition made for it, unless a greater Opposition is expected from the one than the other; in which Case, the Difference then lies in the Numbers order'd for each, but not in the Disposition or Order of the Attack.

Sham Attacks are sometimes made at the same time with the Real ones; but as they are intended to amuse the Besieged, to oblige them to divide their Troops, that those who make the real Attack may meet with the less Opposition, the Workmen are generally omitted.

When an Attack is to be made on the Covert-way, the Troops which are appointed for that Service are generally divided into several Bodies, in order to attack it at different Parts at the same time. The Number of Workmen, with

the several Materials before-mentioned, particularly Wool-Packs, are greater on these Occasions; because an Attack on the Covert-Way is generally designed to force the Enemy from thence till a Lodgment is made on the Glacis, or as it is commonly, tho' Erroneously, called the Counterscrap; for as the Counterscrap is the Wall of the Ditch which supports the Covert-way, to be lodged on the Counterscrap, properly speaking, it is to be lodged on the Brink of the Ditch; but, at present, that Term is generally abus'd, by saying that they are on the Counterscrap, when they are only at the Beginning of the Glacis.

The most favourable time for the making of an Attack, is in the Day. For as the Actions of every Man will appear in full View, the Brave, through a laudable Emulation, will endeavour, at the Expence of their Lives, to out-do one another; and even the Fearful will exert themselves, by performing their Duty, rather than bear the infamous Name of Coward; the Fear of Shame being generally more powerful than the Fear of Death. The Batteries will be likewise of greater Service, by their Firing with more Certainty on the Defences of the Town, and the Top of the Breach, to keep the Enemy from opposing the Granadiers in Mounting it. Besides, in the Night, those who go on first will run great Danger from the Fire of those who Sustain them; therefore an Attack on an Out-work, or the Covert-way, is generally a little after Sun-set, that Night may come on by the time the Attack is finished, to favour them in making the necessary Lodgments: But this Rule will not hold good in an Attack on the Body of the Place; for if Night should come on before the Town is entirely reduced to your Obedience, great Inconveniences would attend both your own Troops, and the poor Inhabitants; to avoid which, it is generally made in the Forenoon.

I do not pretend, by what is mention'd in this Article, to lay down certain Rules; but only to give a general Idea of Attacks, with the usual Preparation of Workmen, &c. Disposition of the Troops, with the Time of making them.



C H A P. XIX.

Of the Method in Flanders for the Receiving and Distributing of the Daily Orders; General Detail of the Army, (by which is meant the General Duty to be performed by the Officers and Soldiers) with the Form of Roster, or Table, by which the Duty of Entire Battalions, and the Officers, is regulated; and a Table of Proportion for the Detaching of Private Men from the Whole.

A R T I C L E I.

AS the Horse and Foot don't interfere with one another in the Detail, but have a separate one of their own, I shall therefore mention some Particulars relating to the General Officers, Majors of Brigade, and the Adjutant General, before I proceed to the Orders.

Tho' the General Officers have not particular Commissions to the Horse or Foot, yet their Commands are distinct, as they are placed over the one or the other; for the Generals who are appointed to the Horse, have the Care and Direction of them, and are only commanded on Duty with the Horse. The same Rule is observed by the Generals who are appointed to the Foot; so that the Horse and Foot don't Roll together, but have each their Duty apart: However, when a Detachment from each join, the eldest Officer, whether of Horse or Foot, commands both.

General Officers of the Day are appointed for the Horse and Foot, each having a Lieutenant-General, Major-General, and Brigadier, who continue on that Duty 24 Hours; during which time they receive the Orders from the General

ral in Chief, and deliver them to the Generals of the Horse and Foot, and Majors of Brigade of the Day, as shall be more particularly mentioned in its proper Place.

The Picquet is under the immediate Direction of the General Officers of the Day; and when it is order'd to March upon any Service, they have the Command of it: And as the Picquet is not to March from the Head of their several Regiments, but by the Direction of the Lieutenant-Generals of the Day, all Orders relating to it should be immediately sent to them; for which reason they are to be in a constant Readiness, and not to leave the Camp, but when they Visit the Grand-Guards and Out-Posts which lie near the Army; which they generally do every Morning, to know what State they are in, that they may acquaint the General in Chief with it at orderly time, or sooner if requisite.

All the Majors of Brigade of the Foot, Roll for the Day to the whole Body of Foot, each taking it in his Turn to act as such.

The Majors of Brigade of the Horse do the same for the whole Body of Horse.

The Majors of Brigade of the Day remain on that Duty 24 Hours, during which time they keep the General Detail of the Whole, and regulate what each Nation in Particular is to furnish to the several Duties then order'd, and receive the Orders at the Head Quarters from the Brigadiers of the Day.

They are to see all Detachments paraded, as is explained at large in Art. 4. Chap. xv. And if any Dispute happens on the Parade amongst the Officers about their Duty, the Generals then on the Spot are to decide it according to the Rules of War, or Customs of the Army; but if none are present, it is then to be done by the Major of Brigade of the Day, to which they are to submit; which however is not to be attended with any ill Consequence in debarring any Officer of his Right, if he can make it appear afterwards that he was wrong'd by the Decision.

The Majors of Brigade of each Nation roll amongst themselves for the Day to their own Troops, each Nation being to have one at the Head-Quarters at orderly Time to receive the Orders from the Major of Brigade of the Day for the Whole; at which time they compared and settled their Books of Detail with his, that they might be prepared to act for the whole in their Turn; as also to see that their Troops had no Injustice done them in the Numbers which they were to furnish. When the other Majors of Brigade received the Orders from

from these, they compared and settled their Books in the same manner, by which means they all knew the General Detail; and when any of their own General Officers were to go next on Duty, they sent them an Account of it by their Aid-de-Camps when they came for Orders that they might be prepared for it.

The Duty which was done by the Majors of Brigade of the Day for the whole, in keeping of the Detail, and giving of the Particulars to those of each Nation, was formerly perform'd by the Adjutant-General; which Method is still continued by the Imperialists, their Majors of Brigade of the Day, or Majors of the Regiments who act as such, being only to see the Guards and other Detachments paraded: But the Detail of the *Flanders* Army being found too great for any one Person, the Majors of Brigade were order'd to execute that Part Day-about, from whence the Major of Brigade who kept the General Detail, and distributed the Orders to the others, was call'd Major of the Day, to distinguish him from the rest: And tho' this took off a great deal of Trouble from the Adjutant-General, yet, if he performed the other Parts of his Duty, he found sufficient Employment.

For he is obliged to receive, and write down in his Book, all Orders which are given at Orderly Time, or afterwards; to keep the Detail both of the Horse and Foot, and be present at the settling of it with the Brigadiers and Majors of Brigade of the Day, that, when the General in Chief (with whom he always remains) wants to know any thing relating to the Detail of the Army, he may be able to inform him.

When any Orders are to be given out in the Absence of the General Officers of the Day, the Adjutant-General receives them from the General in Chief, and sends them to the Majors of Brigade of the Day for the Horse and Foot, if it relates to both, for their being immediately executed.

At the Opening of the Campaign, he is to settle with the Majors of Brigade the Rosters for the several Duties, as also at any other time that an Alteration is requir'd.

It is likewise his Duty to inspect into the Discipline of the Troops, to see that each Regiment keeps strictly to the Exercise order'd.

In short, the Adjutant-General is to keep an Account of every thing which passes in the Army, and attend on the General in Chief when he goes abroad, if he is not employ'd about some other Part of his Duty; but in the Day of Action he is to be always near his Person, to carry his Orders to the Generals of the Horse and Foot, which is likewise the Duty
of

of his Aid-de Camps; but when the Adjutant-General is present, and that there are any Orders of Consequence to be deliver'd to those who command the Lines, he is generally sent, to avoid Mistakes in the giving of them; since we may reasonably suppose, that length of Service, and a thorough Knowledge of Military Affairs, were the chief Motives which promoted him to that Employment. The same Qualifications are required in Aid-de Camps.

Lest the Out-Posts should be forgot upon any sudden or unexpected March of the Army, the Adjutant General is to take care that they are drawn in in due time, without which Precaution the Men on those Commands may be taken or destroyed by the Enemy. He is likewise to see that all the Out-Posts are relieved regularly, lest the Major of Brigade of the Day should neglect or omit it,

A R T I C L E II.

The Orders are always given out at the Head-Quarters, and generally in the Forenoon; at which time it is usual for most of the General Officers of the Army to repair thither; and as the General Officers of the Day are to receive the Orders from the General in Chief, they are obliged to wait upon him at that time.

The Majors of Brigade of the Day for the whole, and those for each Nation, are to be at the Head-Quarters at the same time.

The General Officers of the Day, both of the Horse and Foot, receive the Orders from the General in Chief, which should be taken in writing by the Major-Generals and Brigadiers.

As soon as the Orders are received, the Major-General of the Day for the Horse is to wait upon the General of the Horse, and the Major-General of the Day for the Foot is to wait upon the General of the Foot, to whom they are to deliver the Orders, and to know what particular Commands they have for the Troops over which they are placed; but as nothing of Moment can be done but by the Direction of the General in Chief, we may therefore suppose that the Orders which are given by the General of the Horse or Foot relate only to the keeping up of Discipline and Order in the several Corps: and what Orders they receive from them, they are to acquaint the Lieutenant-Generals of the Day with, and then deliver them to the Brigadiers of the Day, to be given out with the rest.

During

During the time that the Major-Generals are gone to wait upon the Generals of the Horse and Foot, the Brigadiers of the Day are to deliver the Orders to the Majors of Brigade of the Day for the whole, and to settle with them the Detail; in the doing of which they are to be very exact, that none may be order'd on Duty out of their Turn, or that the Troops of any Nation furnish more than their due Proportion of Officers and Private Soldiers to the several Commands then order'd.

When the Majors of Brigade of the Day for the Whole have received the Orders from, and fixed the Detail with the Brigadiers of the Day, they are to deliver them to the Majors of Brigade of the Day of the several Nations, with the Particulars of what Officers and Private Men each are to furnish.

The National Majors of Brigade of the Day (if I may be allow'd the Expression, for Distinction's sake) return immediately to their Incampment, deliver the Orders to the Majors of Brigade of their own Troops, and settle amongst themselves what their Brigades, or Regiments, are to furnish for Duties then order'd; after which, the Majors of Brigade wait upon their Brigadiers, deliver them the Orders, receive their particular Commands for the Brigades, and then give out the whole to the Majors of the Regiments of their respective Brigades.

The Majors wait upon their own Colonels, deliver them the Orders, receive their Commands for their Regiments, and then give them to the Adjutants; who wait upon their Lieutenant-Colonels, acquaint them with the Orders, afterwards give them out to the Orderly Serjeant of each Company, and name the Officers of the Regiment, who are to go on Duty, with the Number of Private Men from each Company; after which the Serjeants deliver the Orders to their own Officers, and the Corporal (one of each Company being always present when the Serjeants receive Orders, as also the Drum-Major) warn the Private Men, and the Drum-Major does the same by the Drummers who are to go on Duty.

The Lieutenant-Generals and Major-Generals who were not at the Head-Quarters at Orderly-time, send their Aid-de-Camps to the Major of Brigade of the Day of their own Troops for the Orders.

The Provost-Marshal of each Nation is to receive the Orders in the same Manner.

The

The Major of the Train, and the Provost-General of the Army, receive Orders from the Adjutant-General at the Head-Quarters.

All Orders, subsequent to those at Orderly-time, which the Generals of the Day shall receive from the General in Chief, they are to send by their Aid de-Camps to the Majors of Brigade of the Day for the Whole, that they may be immediately executed. Upon their receiving such Orders, they are to send them in Writing to the National Majors of Brigade of the Day by their Orderly Serjeants, who communicate them to the rest, and they to the Regiments of their respective Brigades by the Orderly Serjeants.

When any Detachment is made which is to continue out any time, it must be particularly specified in the Order, that the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread and Pay accordingly.

Thus far I have shewn how Orders are received and distributed to the Army; and in the following Article I shall treat of the General Detail, according to the Military Acceptation of the Word.

A R T I C L E III.

All the General Officers of the Foot of the same Rank Roll with one another, and are order'd on Duty according to Seniority. The same Rule is observed amongst the General Officers of the Horse; and at the Opening of the Campaign, a List of the General Officers in the Army, with the Dates of their Commissions, is taken by the Adjutant-General, and given by him to the Majors of Brigade of the Horse and Foot.

When the General Officers are to go on Duty, they are always mentioned by Name in Publick Orders.

The General of the Horse, or the General of the Foot have not any fix'd Duty; but when a considerable Body of Troops is order'd out upon any Service, they are generally appointed to Command them; in which case they have always one or more Lieutenant-Generals, several Major-Generals and Brigadiers under them, the Number of whom are generally proportion'd to the Number of Troops, or as the Service on which they are to be employ'd may require; the particular Number of Men which the General Officers are to have under their Command being no where fix'd: For it has frequently happen'd that a Marshal of *France* has had under his Command only ten or fifteen thousand Men, and at another time, an hundred thousand.

The

The Lieutenant-Generals, Major-Generals, and Brigadiers, have a constant and fix'd Duty, as that of the Day, which is explain'd in the foregoing Articles. Besides which, they have that of Commands, which is when they are order'd out with Entire Battalions, or Detachments from the whole: so that they have two distinct Duties in the Army, that of the Day, and Commands, which is kept by the Majors of Brigade; but when the General Officers of the Day March with the Picquet beyond the Limits of the Camp, which is the Grand-Guard, it pass'es for a Command both for them and those of the Picquet, and is allow'd as such in the General Detail.

Entire Battalions are frequently detach'd from the Army, either for the forming of a Siege, blocking up of the Enemy's Garisons, securing, or covering, some Part of your own Country from the Inroads of the Enemy, or for Convoys, in bringing of Ammunition and Provisions to the Army; all of which pass for Duties; but when Battalions are detach'd for the covering of the General's Quarters, it only goes for a Tour of Fatigue.

As each Nation had a different Number of Battalions in *Flanders*, their Duty was regulated by a Roster; (which Name, I suppose, was given it by the Person who invented it) but as that of Sieges was very severe Service, it was made a Duty a-part, that every Battalion might take their Tour in process of time; so that, properly speaking, there were three distinct Duties for Entire Battalions. The first was Sieges; the second Blockades, covering of your own Territories, or Convoys, or Commands of the like Nature; and the third, covering of Quarters, the Detail of which was kept by the Majors of Brigade. I presume the Generals had a particular Tour to Sieges, as well as Battalions.

Field-Officers are not order'd on Duty by Name in the General Orders, but by Nation; each being to give as many Colonels, Lieutenant-Colonels, and Majors, as they had Battalions in the Field; so that when any were Sick, Wounded, or absent by leave, those of the Nation who remain'd, did the Duty for the full Complement.

They have two distinct Duties in the general Detail, Picquet and Commands, which is regulated by a Roster; the Form of which is exactly the same as that which is made for the detaching of Entire Battalions, since they are always to give an equal Number with them.

In the general Orders it is always said that such a Nation is to give a Colonel, such a Nation a Lieutenant-Colonel, and such a Major for the Picquet for such or such a Wing; and when Field-Officers are order'd for Commands, they are mention'd in the same Manner in the general Orders.

In the particular Detail of each Nation, the Majors of Brigade kept a List of the Field-Officers of their own Troops who were present, and when it came to their turn to furnish any for the Picquet or Commands, they order'd them on Duty by Seniority, and mention'd them by Name in the Orders which they deliver'd to their own Troops.

What particular Duty each Nation might have for their own Field-Officers, I can't say; but that of the *British*, was general Courts-Martial, a Detail of which was kept by their own Majors of Brigade.

As every Nation had a different Establishment of Officers to their Regiments, each Nation gave therefore Captains and Subalterns only in Proportion to their Establishment; which Duty was regulated by a Roster, by taking an Eighth or Tenth of the Captains of each Nation, and the Sixteenth or Twentieth of the Subalterns, and formed Rosters by those Numbers for the general Detail of Captains and Subalterns, for whom there was only that of Commands, the Number which each Battalion furnished to the Picquet, being equal, and constantly the same; therefore the Majors of Brigade kept only that of Commands.

As the Battalions of *Great-Britain* were all upon the same Establishment, as to their Number of Officers, they all gave equally with one another, without any regard to those which had more Captains and Subalterns sick or absent than another, every Battalion being to do Duty for its full Complement; and I suppose the Troops of every other Nation observed the same Rule amongst themselves.

When any *British* Captains and Subalterns were appointed for Commands by the general Orders, their own Majors of Brigade regulated amongst themselves what Battalions were to furnish them; and in the giving of the Orders to their own Troops they mentioned the Regiments by Name who were to furnish Captains and who Subalterns.

The particular Duty for the Captains of the *English* Battalions was that of Courts-Martial, which Detail was kept by their own Majors of Brigade.

Every Battalion in the Army, whether strong or weak, gives an equal Number of Private Men to all Detachments; for

Chap. XIX. *Military Discipline.* 289

for the Use of which, I have hereunto annexed a Table of Proportion, that no Time may be lost, or a Mistake made by a wrong Calculation.

These were the established Rules for the Detail in *Flanders*, both as it regarded the whole, and that of each Nation in Particular; and in the next Place I shall endeavour to shew, in as clear a Manner as I can, the Form and Use of a Roster, or Table, for regulating the Duty of an Army which is composed of the Troops of different Princes, whose Number of Regiments, or Officers, are unequal.

The Roster is used by the Horse as well as the Foot, for the regulating of the Duty of entire Squadrons, which are more frequently detach'd than Battalions.

Explanation of the following Roster.

In the first Column are the Names of the several Nations; and in the Second, the Number of Battalions which each had; and as the highest Number was 50 which belong'd to the *Dutch*, 50 Columns more are added, which makes 50 Squares opposite to each Nation; but as the *English* have but 17 Battalions, and being only to give in Proportion to that Number, all the Squares but 17 are filled up: The same is observed by those of *Prussia*, *Hanover*, and *Denmark*, each having no more blank Squares left than they have Battalions.

The Method of placing the blank Squares at a Distance, and filling up of those between them, may be seen by the Plan; but the Reason for dividing of them in this Manner will appear very plain, when the Method of detaching of Battalions, by the Roster, is known.

As 17 to 50 is almost 1 to 3, the dividing of the blank Squares opposite to the *English*, is very regular and easy; as 10 to 50 is 1 to 5, which is the *Danes*, theirs is quite regular; but those of *Prussia*, and *Hanover* not bearing so near a Proportion, the Number of the fill'd up Squares between the Blanks, will, of course, vary.

All the Columns are number'd on the Top from 1 to 50, and as the Blank Squares in the several Columns are supposed to be Battalions, I have number'd them from 1 to 104 as they are to be detach'd the one after the other; which shews the Method of detaching of them in so clear a manner, that it must be conceiv'd at first View, and will enable any one to form Rosters for any Number, and save me the Trouble of adding more Plans of this Nature.

But in order to see how the Proportion answers, let us suppose three Sieges to be undertaken at different Times, to each of which 30 Battalions are to be detached.

The first 30 Battalions begins with Column 1, and ends with Column 14, the Blanks in which Columns I have mark'd with a Point, or Stop to distinguish them from the rest.

The Second begins with Column 13, and ends with Column 29, the Blanks in which are mark'd with a Stroke, thus (—). The third Siege begins with Column 30, and ends with Column 43, the Blanks in those Columns are mark'd with a Cross, thus (+).

The following Table will shew the Number of Battalions each Nation is to furnish to the several Sieges, and what Number remains undetach'd of the Whole: And as Calculations of this Nature won't admit of Fractions, it is impossible to bring the Proportions nearer, or invent a more proper Method for the Purpose, than this.

Nations.	Number of Battalions at the first Siege.	Number of Battalions at the second Siege.	Number of Battalions at the third Siege.	Number of Battalions remained undetach-ed.	Number of Battalions which belong'd to each Nation.
<i>English</i>	5	5	5	2	17
<i>Prussians</i>	4	4	4	2	14
<i>Hanoverians</i>	4	3	4	2	13
<i>Dutch</i>	14	15	14	7	50
<i>Danes</i>	3	3	3	1	10
Total.	30	30	30	14	104

Explanation

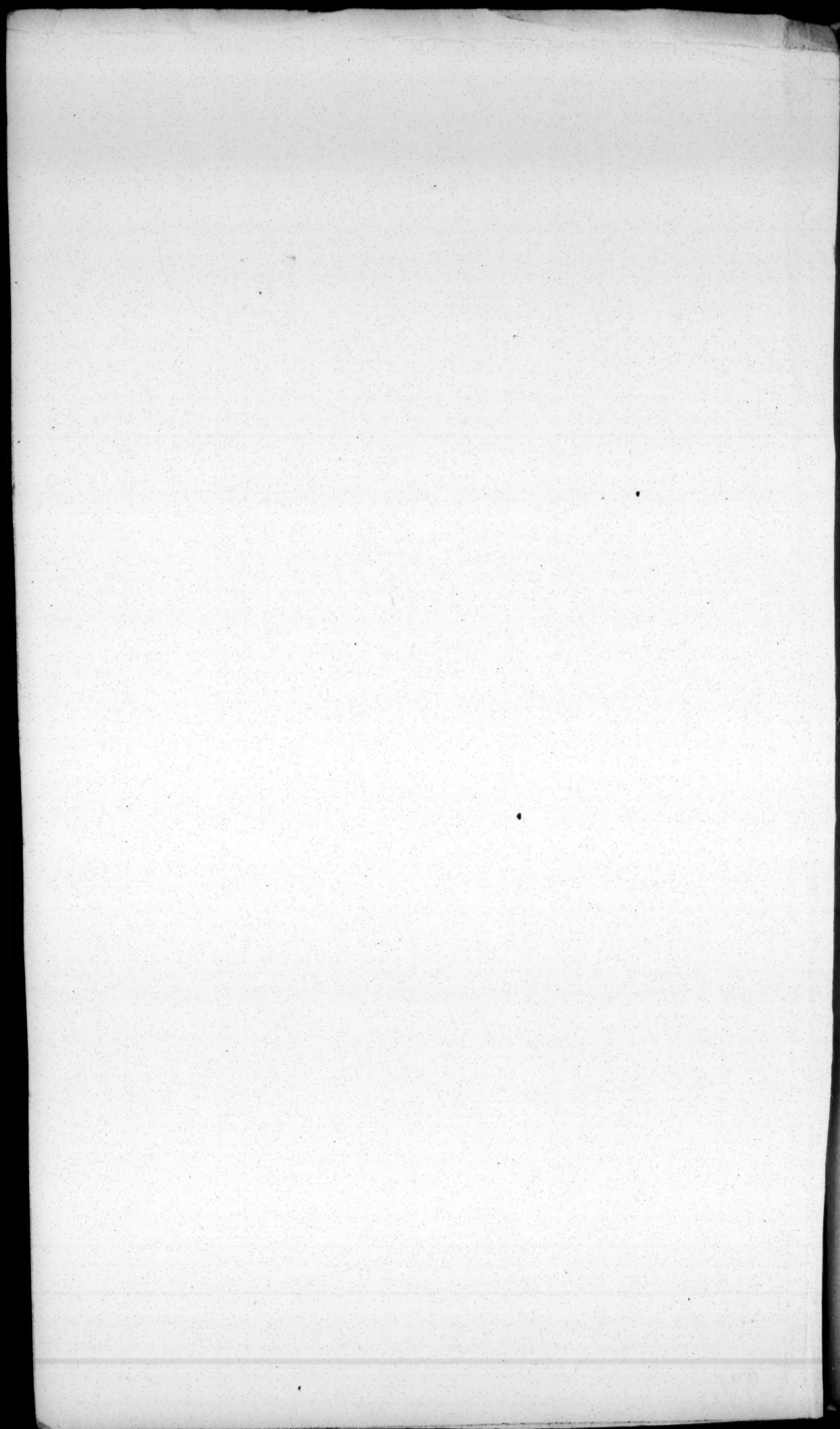
Nations	N ^o of Battalions belonging to each Nation.	Roster General for the Detatching of Battalions											
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
English	17	1			8			15			21		
Prussians	14	2				10				16			
Hannoverians	13	3				11				19			
Dutch	50	4	6	7	9	12	13	16	17	20	22	23	25
Danes	10	5					14					24	

Nations	N ^o of Battalions belonging to each Nation.	Continuation of the Roster.											
		26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37
English	17			58			64			70			76
Prussians	14		56			61			68			74	
Hannoverians	13	53				62				71			
Dutch	50	54	57	59	60	63	65	67	69	72	73	75	78
Danes	10	55					66					76	

ions, according to that in Flanders in 1708.

12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
	26 .			32 —			39 —			45 —			51 —
	27 .				35 —			41 —				49 —	
		29 .				37 —				46 —			
25 .	28 .	30 .	31 —	33 —	36 —	38 —	40 —	42 —	43 —	47 —	48 —	50 —	52 —
				34 —					44 —				

37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50
77 +			82 +			89 +			94			101	
			83 +				91				99		
	79 +				87 +				95				103
78 +	80 +	81 +	84 +	85 +	88 +	90 +	92	93	96	98	100	102	104
				86 +					97				



Explanation of the following Table.

As the Table is carried no farther than from 10 Battalions to 109, and from 2 Men a Battalion to 71, there may be an Objection for its not being more complete; since Detachments of a greater Number of Men than 71 in a Regiment are often Commanded, particularly at Sieges and in Garison: but as my principal Design is only to shew the Use of the Table, if that End is complied with, I think I have fully answered the Purpose; for when the Method is known, every one may make a Table of Proportion to as high a Number as they please for their own Use.

Every Leaf, or two Sides, compleats the Tables of Ten Battalions as far as the Calculation is carried.

The first Leaf begins with 10 Battalions, and ends with 19; the second Leaf begins with 20 Battalions, and ends with 29; and so with the rest, to 109 Battalions, as may be seen by the Figure on the Top.

The first Side of every Leaf begins with 2 Men a Battalion, and ends with 36; the second Side of every one begins with 37 Men a Battalion, and ends with 71, as may be seen by the Figures in the Margin, or first Column.

The Use of the Table is as follows:

When a Number of Men are to be detach'd, and that you want to know the Proportion which each Regiment is to give, you must find in the Top the Number which the Battalions in the Army consists of. After that carry your Eye down the Column 'till you find the Number order'd, and then trace the Line, in which the Number stands, 'till you come to the Margin, or first Column, and the Figures there shew you the Number which each Battalion is to furnish; but as it won't always happen that you can find in the Column the exact Number order'd, but that some will be wanting, or exceed it, you must stop at that which comes nearest to it, but always less than the Number requir'd. The Men thus wanting are call'd Odd Men, because they don't come exactly to a Man a Battalion. When this is the Case, you then order as many Battalions as there are Men wanting to give each a Man more than what are mention'd in the Margin, an Account of which is kept by the Majors of Brigade, that every Battalion may furnish Odd Men in their Turn.

But lest it should not be fully comprehended by the above Explanation, a few Examples, I believe, will make it indisputably so.

Suppose a Detachment is to be made of 560 Men from 16 Battalions; you must find out the Column on the Top Number 16, then look down the Column 'till you come to 544, (which is the nearest you can come to the Number ordered without exceeding it, which you are never to do) and you'll find the Figure in the Margin opposite to that Number to be 34, which is 34 Men a Battalion; but as 34 Men a Battalion makes only 544, and that 550 are requir'd, six Battalions must therefore give 35 Men each, and the other ten Battalions only 34 Men each.

Let us suppose further, that 1600 Men are order'd from 25 Battalions. You must find out the Number 25 on the Top, and look down that Column; but as the highest Number on the first side of that Leaf is 900, you must turn over and look down Column 25 on the back of it till you come to 1600, and you'll find the Figures opposite to it in the Margin to be 64, which is the Number each Battalion is to give.

I am persuaded that I need not trouble the Reader with a further Explanation, since it must be thoroughly understood by what is already said of it.

As Detachments from the Horse are made from the Squadrons as the Foot are from Battalions, the Table will be as useful to the Cavalry as it is to the Infantry, by putting in the Word Squadrons instead of Battalions.

T A B L E

TABLE of Proportion for detaching of Private Men.

Number of Men to be detach'd from each Battalion.	<i>Number of Battalions from which the Men are to be detach'd.</i>									
	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
2	20	22	24	26	28	30	32	34	36	38
3	30	33	36	39	42	45	48	51	54	57
4	40	44	48	52	56	60	64	68	72	76
5	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95
6	60	66	72	78	84	90	96	102	108	114
7	70	77	84	91	98	105	112	119	126	133
8	80	88	96	104	112	120	128	136	144	152
9	90	99	108	117	126	135	144	153	162	171
10	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	190
11	110	121	132	143	154	165	176	187	198	209
12	120	132	144	156	168	180	192	204	216	228
13	130	143	156	169	182	195	208	221	234	247
14	140	154	168	182	196	210	224	238	252	266
15	150	165	180	195	210	225	240	255	270	285
16	160	176	192	208	224	240	256	272	288	304
17	170	187	204	221	238	255	272	289	306	323
18	180	198	216	234	252	270	288	306	324	342
19	190	209	228	247	266	285	304	323	342	361
20	200	220	240	260	280	300	320	340	360	380
21	210	231	252	273	294	315	336	357	378	399
22	220	242	264	286	308	330	352	374	396	418
23	230	253	276	299	322	345	368	391	414	437
24	240	264	288	312	336	360	384	408	432	456
25	250	275	300	325	350	375	400	425	450	475
26	260	286	312	338	364	390	416	442	468	494
27	270	297	324	351	378	405	432	459	486	513
28	280	308	336	364	392	420	448	476	504	532
29	290	319	348	377	406	435	464	493	522	551
30	300	330	360	390	420	450	480	510	540	570
31	310	341	372	403	434	465	496	527	558	589
32	320	352	384	416	448	480	512	544	576	608
33	330	363	396	429	462	495	528	561	594	627
34	340	374	408	442	476	510	544	578	612	646
35	350	385	420	455	490	525	560	595	630	665
36	360	396	432	468	504	540	576	612	648	684

*Battalions from which the Number*Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
37	370	407	444	481	518	555	592	629	666	703
38	380	418	456	494	532	570	608	646	684	722
39	390	429	468	507	546	585	624	663	702	741
40	400	440	480	520	560	600	640	680	720	760
41	410	451	492	533	574	615	656	697	738	779
42	420	462	504	546	588	630	672	714	756	798
43	430	473	516	559	602	645	688	731	774	817
44	440	484	528	572	616	660	704	748	792	836
45	450	495	540	585	630	675	720	765	810	855
46	460	506	552	598	644	690	736	782	828	874
47	470	517	564	611	658	705	752	799	846	893
48	480	528	576	624	672	720	768	816	864	912
49	490	539	588	637	686	735	784	833	882	931
50	500	550	600	650	700	750	800	850	900	950
51	510	561	612	663	714	765	816	867	918	969
52	520	572	624	676	728	780	832	884	936	988
53	530	583	636	689	742	795	848	901	954	1007
54	540	594	648	702	756	810	864	918	972	1026
55	550	605	660	715	770	825	880	935	990	1045
56	560	616	672	728	784	840	896	952	1008	1064
57	570	627	684	741	798	855	912	969	1026	1083
58	580	638	696	754	812	870	928	986	1044	1102
59	590	649	708	767	826	885	944	1003	1062	1121
60	600	660	720	780	840	900	960	1020	1080	1140
61	610	671	732	793	854	915	976	1037	1098	1159
62	620	682	744	806	868	930	992	1054	1116	1178
63	630	693	756	819	882	945	1008	1071	1134	1197
64	640	704	768	832	896	960	1024	1088	1152	1216
65	650	715	780	845	910	975	1040	1105	1170	1235
66	660	726	792	858	924	990	1056	1122	1188	1254
67	670	737	804	871	938	1005	1072	1139	1206	1273
68	680	748	816	884	952	1020	1088	1156	1224	1292
69	690	759	828	897	966	1035	1104	1173	1242	1311
70	700	770	840	910	980	1050	1120	1190	1260	1330
71	710	781	852	923	994	1065	1136	1207	1278	1349

*in the Margin are to be Detach'd.*Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29
2	40	42	44	46	48	50	52	54	56	58
3	60	63	66	69	72	75	78	81	84	87
4	80	84	88	92	96	100	104	108	112	116
5	100	105	110	115	120	125	130	135	140	145
6	120	126	132	138	144	150	156	162	168	174
7	140	147	154	161	168	175	182	189	196	203
8	160	168	176	184	192	200	208	216	224	232
9	180	189	198	207	216	225	234	243	252	261
10	200	210	220	230	240	250	260	270	280	290
11	220	231	242	253	264	275	286	297	308	319
12	240	252	264	276	288	300	312	324	336	348
13	260	273	286	299	312	325	338	351	364	377
14	280	294	308	322	336	350	364	378	392	406
15	300	315	330	345	360	375	390	405	420	435
16	320	336	352	368	384	400	416	432	448	464
17	340	357	374	391	408	425	442	459	476	493
18	360	378	396	414	432	450	468	486	504	522
19	380	399	418	437	456	475	494	513	532	551
20	400	420	440	460	480	500	520	540	560	580
21	420	441	462	483	504	525	546	567	588	609
22	440	462	484	506	528	550	572	594	616	638
23	460	483	506	529	552	575	598	621	644	667
24	480	504	528	552	576	600	624	648	672	696
25	500	525	550	575	600	625	650	675	700	725
26	520	546	572	598	624	650	676	702	728	754
27	540	567	594	621	648	675	702	729	756	783
28	560	588	616	644	672	700	728	756	784	812
29	580	609	638	667	696	725	754	783	812	841
30	600	630	660	690	720	750	780	810	840	870
31	620	651	682	713	744	775	806	837	868	899
32	640	672	704	736	768	800	832	864	896	928
33	660	693	726	759	792	825	858	891	924	957
34	680	714	748	782	816	850	884	918	952	986
35	700	735	770	805	840	875	910	945	980	1015
36	720	756	792	828	864	900	936	972	1008	1044

*Battalions from which the Number*Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29
37	740	777	814	851	888	925	962	999	1036	1073
38	760	798	836	874	912	950	988	1026	1064	1102
39	780	819	858	897	936	975	1014	1053	1092	1131
40	800	840	880	920	960	1000	1040	1080	1120	1160
41	820	861	902	943	984	1025	1066	1107	1148	1189
42	840	882	924	966	1008	1050	1092	1134	1176	1218
43	860	903	946	989	1032	1075	1118	1161	1204	1247
44	880	924	968	1012	1056	1100	1144	1188	1232	1276
45	900	945	990	1035	1080	1125	1170	1215	1260	1305
46	920	966	1012	1058	1104	1150	1196	1242	1288	1334
47	940	987	1034	1081	1128	1175	1222	1269	1316	1363
48	960	1008	1056	1104	1152	1200	1248	1296	1344	1392
49	980	1029	1078	1127	1176	1225	1274	1323	1372	1421
50	1000	1050	1100	1150	1200	1250	1300	1350	1400	1450
51	1020	1071	1122	1173	1224	1275	1326	1377	1428	1479
52	1040	1092	1144	1196	1248	1300	1352	1404	1456	1508
53	1060	1113	1166	1219	1272	1325	1378	1431	1484	1537
54	1080	1134	1188	1242	1296	1350	1404	1458	1512	1566
55	1100	1155	1210	1265	1320	1375	1430	1485	1540	1595
56	1120	1176	1232	1288	1344	1400	1456	1512	1568	1624
57	1140	1197	1254	1311	1368	1425	1482	1539	1596	1653
58	1160	1218	1276	1334	1392	1450	1508	1566	1624	1682
59	1180	1239	1298	1357	1416	1475	1534	1593	1652	1711
60	1200	1260	1320	1380	1440	1500	1560	1620	1680	1740
61	1220	1281	1342	1403	1464	1525	1586	1647	1708	1769
62	1240	1302	1364	1426	1488	1550	1612	1674	1736	1798
63	1260	1323	1386	1449	1512	1575	1638	1701	1764	1827
64	1280	1344	1408	1472	1536	1600	1664	1728	1792	1856
65	1300	1365	1430	1495	1560	1625	1690	1755	1820	1885
66	1320	1386	1452	1518	1584	1650	1716	1782	1848	1914
67	1340	1407	1474	1541	1608	1675	1742	1809	1876	1943
68	1360	1428	1496	1564	1632	1700	1768	1836	1904	1972
69	1380	1449	1518	1587	1656	1725	1794	1863	1932	2001
70	1400	1470	1540	1610	1680	1750	1820	1890	1960	2030
71	1420	1491	1562	1633	1704	1775	1846	1917	1988	2059

in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39
2	60	62	64	66	68	70	72	74	76	78
3	90	93	96	99	102	105	108	111	114	117
4	120	124	128	132	136	140	144	148	152	156
5	150	155	160	165	170	175	180	185	190	195
6	180	186	192	198	204	210	216	222	228	234
7	210	217	224	231	238	245	252	259	266	273
8	240	248	256	264	272	280	288	296	304	312
9	270	279	288	297	306	315	324	333	342	351
10	300	310	320	330	340	350	360	370	380	390
11	330	341	352	363	374	385	396	407	418	429
12	360	372	384	396	408	420	432	444	456	468
13	390	403	416	429	442	455	468	481	494	507
14	420	434	448	462	476	490	504	518	532	546
15	450	465	480	495	510	525	540	555	570	585
16	480	496	512	528	544	560	576	592	608	624
17	510	527	544	561	578	595	612	629	646	663
18	540	558	576	594	612	630	648	666	684	702
19	570	589	608	627	646	665	684	703	722	741
20	600	620	640	660	680	700	720	740	760	780
21	630	651	672	693	714	735	756	777	798	819
22	660	682	704	726	748	770	792	814	836	858
23	690	713	736	759	782	805	828	851	874	897
24	720	744	768	792	816	840	864	888	912	936
25	750	775	800	825	850	875	900	925	950	975
26	780	806	832	858	884	910	936	962	988	1014
27	810	837	864	891	918	945	972	999	1026	1053
28	840	868	896	924	952	980	1008	1036	1064	1092
29	870	899	928	957	986	1015	1044	1073	1102	1131
30	900	930	960	990	1020	1050	1080	1110	1140	1170
31	930	961	992	1023	1054	1085	1116	1147	1178	1209
32	960	992	1024	1056	1088	1120	1152	1184	1216	1248
33	990	1023	1056	1089	1122	1155	1188	1221	1254	1287
34	1020	1054	1088	1122	1156	1190	1224	1258	1292	1326
35	1050	1085	1120	1155	1190	1225	1260	1295	1330	1365
36	1080	1116	1152	1188	1224	1260	1296	1332	1368	1404

*Battalions from which the Number*Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39
37	1110	1147	1184	1221	1258	1295	1332	1369	1406	1443
38	1140	1178	1216	1254	1292	1330	1368	1406	1444	1482
39	1170	1209	1248	1287	1326	1365	1404	1443	1482	1521
40	1200	1240	1280	1320	1360	1400	1440	1480	1520	1560
41	1230	1271	1312	1353	1394	1435	1476	1517	1558	1599
42	1260	1302	1344	1386	1428	1470	1512	1554	1596	1638
43	1290	1333	1376	1419	1462	1505	1548	1591	1634	1677
44	1320	1364	1408	1452	1496	1540	1584	1628	1672	1716
45	1350	1395	1440	1480	1530	1575	1620	1665	1710	1755
46	1380	1426	1472	1518	1564	1610	1656	1702	1748	1794
47	1410	1457	1504	1551	1598	1645	1692	1739	1786	1833
48	1440	1488	1536	1584	1632	1680	1728	1776	1824	1872
49	1470	1519	1568	1617	1676	1715	1764	1813	1862	1911
50	1500	1550	1600	1650	1700	1750	1800	1850	1900	1950
51	1530	1581	1632	1683	1734	1785	1836	1887	1938	1989
52	1560	1612	1664	1716	1768	1820	1872	1924	1976	2028
53	1590	1643	1696	1749	1802	1855	1908	1961	2014	2067
54	1620	1674	1728	1782	1836	1890	1944	1998	2052	2106
55	1650	1705	1760	1815	1870	1925	1980	2035	2090	2145
56	1680	1736	1792	1848	1904	1960	2016	2072	2128	2184
57	1710	1767	1824	1881	1938	1995	2052	2109	2166	2223
58	1740	1798	1856	1914	1972	2030	2088	2146	2204	2262
59	1770	1829	1888	1947	2006	2065	2124	2183	2242	2301
60	1800	1860	1920	1980	2040	2100	2160	2220	2280	2340
61	1830	1891	1952	2013	2074	2135	2196	2257	2318	2379
62	1860	1922	1984	2046	2108	2170	2232	2294	2356	2418
63	1890	1953	2016	2079	2142	2205	2268	2331	2394	2457
64	1920	1984	2048	2112	2176	2240	2304	2368	2432	2496
65	1950	2015	2080	2145	2210	2275	2340	2405	2470	2535
66	1980	2046	2112	2178	2244	2310	2376	2442	2508	2574
67	2010	2077	2144	2211	2278	2345	2412	2479	2546	2613
68	2040	2108	2176	2244	2312	2380	2448	2516	2584	2652
69	2070	2139	2208	2277	2346	2415	2484	2553	2622	2691
70	2100	2170	2240	2310	2380	2450	2520	2590	2660	2730
71	2130	2201	2272	2343	2414	2485	2556	2627	2698	2769

*in the Margin are to be Detach'd.*Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49
2	80	82	84	86	88	90	92	94	96	98
3	120	123	126	129	132	135	138	141	144	147
4	160	164	168	172	176	180	184	188	192	196
5	200	205	210	215	220	225	230	235	240	245
6	240	246	252	258	264	270	276	282	288	294
7	280	287	294	301	308	315	322	329	336	343
8	320	328	336	344	352	360	368	376	384	392
9	360	369	378	387	396	405	414	423	432	441
10	400	410	420	430	440	450	460	470	480	490
11	440	451	462	473	484	495	506	517	528	539
12	480	492	504	516	520	540	552	564	576	588
13	520	533	546	559	572	585	598	611	624	637
14	560	574	588	602	616	630	644	658	672	686
15	600	615	630	645	660	675	690	705	720	735
16	640	656	672	688	704	720	736	752	768	784
17	680	697	714	731	748	765	782	799	816	833
18	720	738	756	774	792	810	828	846	864	882
19	760	779	798	817	836	855	874	893	912	931
20	800	820	840	860	880	900	920	940	960	980
21	840	861	882	903	924	945	966	987	1008	1029
22	880	902	924	946	968	990	1012	1034	1056	1078
23	920	943	966	989	1012	1035	1058	1081	1104	1127
24	960	984	1008	1032	1056	1080	1104	1128	1152	1176
25	1000	1025	1050	1075	1100	1125	1150	1175	1200	1225
26	1040	1066	1092	1118	1144	1170	1196	1222	1248	1274
27	1080	1107	1134	1161	1188	1215	1242	1269	1296	1323
28	1120	1148	1176	1204	1232	1260	1288	1316	1344	1372
29	1160	1189	1218	1247	1276	1305	1334	1363	1392	1421
30	1200	1230	1260	1290	1320	1350	1380	1410	1440	1470
31	1240	1271	1302	1333	1364	1395	1426	1457	1488	1519
32	1280	1312	1344	1376	1408	1440	1472	1504	1536	1568
33	1320	1353	1386	1419	1452	1485	1518	1551	1584	1617
34	1360	1394	1428	1462	1496	1530	1564	1598	1632	1666
35	1400	1435	1470	1505	1540	1575	1610	1645	1680	1715
36	1440	1476	1512	1548	1584	1620	1656	1692	1728	1764

*Battalions from which the Number*Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49
37	1480	1517	1554	1591	1628	1665	1702	1739	1776	1813
38	1520	1558	1596	1634	1672	1710	1748	1786	1824	1862
39	1560	1599	1638	1677	1716	1755	1794	1833	1872	1911
40	1600	1640	1680	1720	1760	1800	1840	1880	1920	1960
41	1640	1681	1722	1763	1804	1845	1886	1927	1968	2009
42	1680	1722	1764	1806	1848	1890	1932	1974	2016	2058
43	1720	1763	1806	1849	1892	1935	1978	2021	2064	2107
44	1760	1804	1848	1892	1936	1980	2024	2068	2112	2156
45	1800	1845	1890	1935	1980	2025	2070	2115	2160	2205
46	1840	1886	1932	1978	2024	2070	2116	2162	2208	2254
47	1880	1927	1974	2021	2068	2115	2162	2209	2256	2303
48	1920	1968	2016	2064	2112	2160	2208	2256	2304	2352
49	1960	2009	2058	2107	2156	2205	2254	2303	2352	2401
50	2000	2050	2100	2150	2200	2250	2300	2350	2400	2450
51	2040	2091	2142	2193	2244	2295	2346	2397	2448	2499
52	2080	2132	2184	2236	2288	2340	2392	2444	2496	2548
53	2120	2173	2226	2279	2332	2385	2438	2491	2544	2597
54	2160	2214	2268	2322	2376	2430	2484	2538	2592	2646
55	2200	2255	2310	2365	2420	2475	2530	2585	2640	2695
56	2240	2296	2352	2408	2464	2520	2576	2632	2688	2744
57	2280	2337	2394	2451	2508	2565	2622	2679	2736	2793
58	2320	2378	2436	2494	2552	2610	2668	2726	2784	2842
59	2360	2419	2478	2537	2596	2655	2714	2773	2832	2891
60	2400	2460	2520	2580	2640	2700	2760	2820	2880	2940
61	2440	2501	2562	2623	2684	2745	2806	2867	2928	2989
62	2480	2542	2604	2666	2728	2790	2852	2914	2976	3038
63	2520	2583	2646	2709	2772	2835	2898	2961	3024	3087
64	2560	2624	2688	2752	2816	2880	2944	3008	3072	3136
65	2600	2665	2730	2795	2860	2925	2990	3055	3120	3185
66	2640	2706	2772	2838	2904	2970	3036	3102	3168	3234
67	2680	2747	2814	2881	2948	3015	3082	3149	3216	3283
68	2720	2788	2856	2924	2992	3060	3128	3196	3264	3332
69	2760	2829	2898	2967	3036	3105	3174	3243	3312	3381
70	2800	2870	2940	3010	3080	3150	3220	3290	3360	3430
71	2840	2911	2982	3053	3124	3195	3266	3337	3408	3479

in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59
2	100	102	104	106	108	110	112	114	116	118
3	150	153	156	159	162	165	168	171	174	177
4	200	204	208	212	216	220	224	228	232	236
5	250	255	260	265	270	275	280	285	290	295
6	300	306	312	318	324	330	336	342	348	354
7	350	357	364	371	378	385	392	399	406	413
8	400	408	416	424	432	440	448	456	464	472
9	450	459	468	477	486	495	504	513	522	531
10	500	510	520	530	540	550	560	570	580	590
11	550	561	572	583	594	605	616	627	638	649
12	600	612	624	636	648	660	672	684	696	708
13	650	663	676	689	702	715	728	741	754	767
14	700	714	728	742	756	770	784	798	812	826
15	750	765	780	795	810	825	840	855	870	885
16	800	816	832	848	864	880	896	912	928	944
17	850	867	884	901	918	935	952	969	986	1003
18	900	918	936	954	972	990	1008	1026	1044	1062
19	950	969	988	1007	1026	1045	1064	1083	1102	1121
20	1000	1020	1040	1060	1080	1100	1120	1140	1160	1180
21	1050	1071	1092	1113	1134	1155	1176	1197	1218	1239
22	1100	1122	1144	1166	1188	1210	1232	1254	1276	1298
23	1150	1173	1196	1219	1242	1265	1288	1311	1334	1357
24	1200	1224	1248	1272	1296	1320	1344	1368	1392	1416
25	1250	1275	1300	1325	1350	1375	1400	1425	1450	1475
26	1300	1326	1352	1378	1404	1430	1456	1482	1508	1534
27	1350	1377	1404	1431	1458	1485	1512	1539	1566	1593
28	1400	1428	1456	1484	1512	1540	1568	1596	1624	1652
29	1450	1479	1508	1537	1566	1595	1624	1653	1682	1711
30	1500	1530	1560	1590	1620	1650	1680	1710	1740	1770
31	1550	1581	1612	1643	1674	1705	1736	1767	1798	1829
32	1600	1632	1664	1696	1728	1760	1792	1824	1856	1888
33	1650	1683	1716	1749	1782	1815	1848	1881	1914	1947
34	1700	1734	1768	1802	1836	1870	1904	1938	1972	2006
35	1750	1785	1820	1855	1890	1925	1960	1995	2030	2065
36	1800	1836	1872	1908	1944	1980	2016	2052	2088	2124

Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

Battalions from which the Number

	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59
37	1850	1887	1924	1961	1998	2053	2072	2109	2146	2183
38	1900	1938	1976	2014	2052	2090	2128	2166	2204	2242
39	1950	1989	2028	2067	2106	2145	2184	2223	2262	2301
40	2000	2040	2080	2120	2160	2200	2240	2280	2320	2360
41	2050	2091	2132	2173	2214	2255	2296	2337	2378	2419
42	2100	2142	2184	2226	2268	2310	2352	2394	2436	2471
43	2150	2193	2236	2279	2322	2365	2408	2451	2494	2537
44	2200	2244	2288	2332	2376	2420	2464	2508	2552	2596
45	2250	2295	2340	2385	2430	2475	2520	2565	2610	2655
46	2300	2346	2392	2438	2484	2530	2576	2622	2668	2714
47	2350	2397	2444	2491	2538	2585	2632	2679	2726	2773
48	2400	2448	2496	2544	2592	2640	2688	2736	2784	2832
49	2450	2499	2548	2597	2646	2695	2744	2793	2842	2891
50	2500	2550	2600	2650	2700	2750	2800	2850	2900	2950
51	2550	2601	2652	2703	2754	2805	2856	2907	2958	3009
52	2600	2652	2704	2756	2808	2860	2912	2964	3016	3068
53	2650	2703	2756	2809	2862	2915	2968	3021	3074	3127
54	2700	2754	2808	2862	2916	2970	3024	3078	3132	3186
55	2750	2805	2860	2915	2970	3025	3080	3135	3190	3245
56	2800	2856	2912	2968	3024	3080	3136	3192	3248	3304
57	2850	2907	2964	3021	3078	3135	3192	3249	3306	3363
58	2900	2958	3016	3074	3132	3190	3248	3306	3364	3422
59	2950	3009	3068	3127	3186	3245	3304	3363	3422	3481
60	3000	3060	3120	3180	3240	3300	3360	3420	3480	3540
61	3050	3111	3172	3233	3294	3355	3416	3477	3538	3599
62	3100	3162	3224	3286	3348	3410	3472	3534	3596	3658
63	3150	3213	3276	3339	3402	3465	3528	3591	3654	3717
64	3200	3264	3328	3392	3456	3520	3584	3648	3712	3776
65	3250	3315	3380	3445	3510	3575	3640	3705	3770	3835
66	3300	3366	3432	3498	3564	3630	3696	3762	3828	3894
67	3350	3417	3484	3551	3618	3685	3752	3819	3886	3953
68	3400	3468	3536	3604	3672	3740	3808	3876	3944	4012
69	3450	3519	3588	3657	3726	3795	3864	3933	4002	4071
70	3500	3570	3640	3710	3780	3850	3920	3990	4060	4130
71	3550	3621	3692	3763	3834	3905	3976	4047	4118	4189

*in the Margin are to be Detach'd.*Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69
2	120	122	124	126	128	130	132	134	136	138
3	180	183	186	189	192	195	198	201	204	207
4	240	244	248	252	256	260	264	268	272	276
5	300	305	310	315	320	325	330	335	340	345
6	360	366	372	378	384	390	396	402	408	414
7	420	427	434	441	448	455	462	469	476	483
8	480	488	496	504	512	520	528	536	544	552
9	540	549	558	567	576	585	594	603	612	621
10	600	610	620	630	640	650	660	670	680	690
11	660	671	682	693	704	715	726	737	748	759
12	720	732	744	756	768	780	792	804	816	823
13	780	793	806	819	832	845	858	871	884	897
14	840	854	868	882	896	910	924	938	952	966
15	900	915	930	945	960	975	990	1005	1020	1035
16	960	976	992	1008	1024	1040	1056	1072	1088	1104
17	1020	1037	1054	1071	1088	1105	1122	1139	1156	1173
18	1080	1098	1116	1134	1152	1170	1188	1206	1224	1242
19	1140	1159	1178	1197	1216	1235	1254	1273	1292	1311
20	1200	1220	1240	1260	1280	1300	1320	1340	1360	1380
21	1260	1281	1302	1323	1344	1365	1386	1407	1428	1449
22	1320	1342	1364	1386	1408	1430	1452	1474	1496	1518
23	1380	1403	1426	1449	1472	1495	1518	1541	1564	1587
24	1440	1464	1488	1512	1536	1560	1584	1608	1632	1656
25	1500	1525	1550	1575	1600	1625	1650	1675	1700	1725
26	1560	1586	1612	1638	1664	1690	1716	1742	1768	1794
27	1620	1647	1674	1701	1728	1755	1782	1809	1836	1863
28	1680	1708	1736	1764	1792	1820	1848	1876	1904	1930
29	1740	1769	1798	1827	1856	1885	1914	1943	1972	2001
30	1800	1830	1860	1890	1920	1950	1980	2010	2040	2070
31	1860	1891	1922	1953	1984	2015	2046	2077	2108	2139
32	1920	1952	1984	2016	2048	2080	2112	2144	2176	2208
33	1980	2013	2046	2079	2112	2145	2178	2211	2244	2277
34	2040	2074	2108	2142	2176	2210	2244	2278	2312	2346
35	2100	2135	2170	2205	2240	2275	2310	2345	2380	2415
36	2160	2196	2232	2268	2304	2340	2376	2412	2448	2484

*Battalions from which the Number*Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69
37	2220	2257	2294	2331	2368	2405	2442	2479	2516	2553
38	2280	2318	2356	2394	2432	2470	2508	2546	2584	2622
39	2340	2379	2418	2457	2496	2535	2574	2613	2652	2691
40	2400	2440	2480	2520	2560	2600	2640	2680	2720	2760
41	2460	2501	2542	2583	2624	2665	2706	2747	2788	2829
42	2520	2562	2604	2646	2688	2770	2732	2814	2856	2898
43	2580	2623	2666	2709	2752	2795	2838	2881	2924	2967
44	2640	2684	2728	2772	2816	2860	2904	2948	2992	3036
45	2700	2745	2790	2835	2880	2925	2970	3015	3060	3105
46	2760	2806	2852	2898	2944	2990	3036	3082	3128	3174
47	2820	2867	2914	2961	3008	3055	3102	3149	3196	3243
48	2880	2928	2976	3024	3072	3120	3168	3216	3264	3312
49	2940	2989	3038	3087	3136	3185	3234	3283	3332	3381
50	3000	3050	3100	3150	3200	3250	3300	3350	3400	3450
51	3060	3111	3162	3213	3264	3315	3366	3417	3468	3519
52	3120	3172	3224	3276	3328	3380	3432	3484	3536	3588
53	3180	3233	3286	3339	3392	3445	3498	3551	3604	3657
54	3240	3294	3348	3402	3456	3510	3564	3618	3672	3726
55	3300	3355	3410	3465	3520	3575	3630	3685	3740	3795
56	3360	3416	3472	3528	3584	3640	3696	3752	3808	3864
57	3420	3477	3534	3591	3648	3705	3762	3819	3876	3933
58	3480	3538	3596	3654	3712	3770	3828	3886	3944	4002
59	3540	3599	3658	3717	3776	3835	3894	3953	4012	4071
60	3600	3660	3720	3780	3840	3900	3960	4020	4080	4140
61	3660	3721	3782	3843	3904	3965	4026	4087	4148	4209
62	3720	3782	3844	3906	3968	4030	4092	4154	4216	4278
63	3780	3843	3906	3969	4032	4095	4158	4221	4284	4347
64	3840	3904	3968	4032	4096	4160	4224	4288	4352	4416
65	3900	3965	4030	4095	4160	4225	4290	4355	4420	4485
66	3960	4026	4092	4158	4224	4290	4356	4422	4488	4554
67	4020	4087	4154	4221	4288	4355	4422	4489	4556	4623
68	4080	4148	4216	4284	4352	4420	4488	4556	4624	4692
69	4140	4209	4278	4347	4416	4485	4554	4623	4692	4761
70	4200	4230	4340	4410	4480	4550	4620	4690	4760	4830
71	4260	4331	4402	4473	4544	4615	4686	4757	4828	4899

*in the Margin are to be Detach'd.*Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79
2	140	142	144	146	148	150	152	154	156	158
3	210	213	216	219	222	225	228	231	234	237
4	280	284	288	292	296	300	304	308	312	316
5	350	355	360	365	370	375	380	385	390	395
6	420	426	432	438	444	450	456	462	468	474
7	490	497	504	511	518	525	532	539	546	553
8	560	568	576	584	592	600	608	616	624	632
9	630	639	648	657	666	675	684	693	702	711
10	700	710	720	730	740	750	760	770	780	790
11	770	781	792	803	814	825	836	847	858	869
12	840	852	864	876	888	900	912	924	936	948
13	910	923	936	949	962	975	988	1001	1014	1027
14	980	994	1008	1022	1036	1050	1064	1078	1092	1106
15	1050	1065	1080	1095	1110	1125	1140	1155	1170	1185
16	1290	1136	1152	1168	1184	1200	1216	1232	1248	1264
17	1190	1207	1224	1241	1258	1275	1292	1309	1326	1343
18	1260	1278	1296	1314	1332	1350	1368	1386	1404	1422
19	1330	1349	1368	1387	1406	1425	1444	1463	1482	1501
20	1400	1420	1440	1460	1480	1500	1520	1540	1560	1580
21	1470	1491	1512	1533	1554	1575	1596	1617	1638	1659
22	1540	1562	1584	1606	1628	1650	1672	1694	1716	1738
23	1610	1633	1656	1679	1702	1725	1748	1771	1794	1817
24	1680	1704	1728	1752	1776	1800	1824	1848	1872	1896
25	1750	1775	1800	1825	1850	1875	1900	1925	1950	1975
26	1820	1847	1872	1898	1924	1950	1976	2002	2028	2054
27	1890	1917	1944	1971	1998	2025	2052	2079	2106	2133
28	1960	1988	2016	2044	2072	2100	2128	2156	2184	2212
29	2030	2059	2088	2117	2146	2175	2204	2233	2262	2291
30	2100	2130	2160	2190	2220	2250	2280	2310	2340	2370
31	2170	2201	2232	2263	2294	2325	2356	2387	2418	2449
32	2240	2272	2304	2336	2368	2400	2432	2464	2496	2528
33	2310	2343	2376	2409	2442	2475	2508	2541	2574	2607
34	2380	2414	2448	2482	2516	2550	2584	2618	2652	2686
35	2450	2485	2520	2555	2590	2625	2660	2695	2730	2765
36	2520	2556	2592	2628	2664	2700	2736	2772	2808	2844

*Battalions from which the Number*Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79
37	2590	2627	2664	2701	2738	2775	2812	2849	2886	2923
38	2660	2698	2736	2774	2812	2850	2888	2926	2964	3002
39	2730	2769	2808	2847	2886	2925	2964	3003	3042	3081
40	2800	2840	2880	2920	2960	3000	3040	3080	3120	3160
41	2870	2911	2952	2993	3034	3075	3116	3157	3198	3239
42	2940	2982	3024	3066	3108	3150	3192	3234	3276	3318
43	3010	3053	3096	3139	3182	3225	3268	3311	3354	3397
44	3080	3124	3168	3212	3256	3300	3344	3388	3432	3476
45	3150	3195	3240	3285	3330	3375	3420	3465	3510	3555
46	3220	3266	3312	3358	3404	3450	3496	3542	3588	3634
47	3290	3337	3384	3431	3478	3525	3572	3619	3666	3713
48	3360	3408	3456	3504	3552	3600	3648	3696	3744	3792
49	3430	3479	3528	3577	3626	3675	3724	3773	3822	3871
50	3500	3550	3600	3650	3700	3750	3800	3850	3900	3950
51	3570	3621	3672	3723	3774	3825	3876	3927	3978	4029
52	3640	3692	3744	3796	3848	3900	3952	4004	4056	4108
53	3710	3763	3816	3869	3922	3975	4028	4081	4134	4187
54	3780	3834	3888	3942	3996	4050	4104	4158	4212	4266
55	3850	3905	3960	4015	4070	4125	4180	4235	4290	4345
56	3920	3976	4032	4088	4144	4200	4256	4312	4368	4424
57	3990	4047	4104	4161	4218	4275	4332	4389	4446	4503
58	4060	4118	4176	4234	4292	4350	4408	4466	4524	4582
59	4130	4189	4248	4307	4366	4425	4484	4543	4602	4661
60	4200	4260	4320	4380	4440	4500	4560	4620	4680	4740
61	4270	4331	4392	4453	4514	4575	4636	4697	4758	4819
62	4340	4402	4464	4526	4588	4650	4712	4774	4836	4898
63	4410	4473	4536	4599	4662	4725	4788	4851	4914	4977
64	4480	4544	4608	4672	4736	4800	4864	4928	4992	5056
65	4550	4615	4680	4745	4810	4875	4940	5005	5070	5135
66	4620	4686	4752	4818	4884	4950	5016	5082	5148	5214
67	4690	4757	4824	4891	4958	5025	5092	5159	5226	5293
68	4760	4828	4896	4964	5032	5100	5168	5236	5304	5372
69	4830	4899	4968	5037	5106	5175	5244	5313	5382	5451
70	4900	4970	5040	5110	5180	5250	5320	5390	5460	5530
71	4970	5041	5112	5183	5254	5325	5396	5467	5538	5609

in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89
2	160	162	164	166	168	170	172	174	176	178
3	240	243	246	249	252	255	258	261	264	267
4	320	324	328	332	336	340	344	348	352	356
5	400	405	410	415	420	425	430	435	440	445
6	480	486	492	498	504	510	516	522	528	534
7	560	567	574	581	588	595	602	609	616	623
8	640	648	656	664	672	680	688	696	704	712
9	720	729	738	747	756	765	774	783	792	801
10	800	810	820	830	840	850	860	870	880	890
11	880	891	902	913	924	935	946	957	968	979
12	960	972	984	996	1008	1020	1032	1044	1056	1068
13	1040	1053	1066	1079	1092	1105	1118	1131	1144	1157
14	1120	1134	1148	1162	1176	1190	1204	1218	1232	1246
15	1200	1215	1230	1245	1260	1275	1290	1305	1320	1335
16	1280	1296	1312	1328	1344	1360	1376	1392	1408	1424
17	1360	1377	1394	1411	1428	1445	1462	1479	1496	1513
18	1440	1458	1476	1494	1512	1530	1548	1566	1584	1602
19	1520	1539	1558	1577	1596	1625	1634	1653	1672	1691
20	1600	1620	1640	1660	1680	1700	1720	1740	1760	1780
21	1680	1701	1722	1743	1764	1785	1806	1827	1848	1869
22	1760	1782	1804	1826	1848	1870	1892	1914	1936	1958
23	1840	1863	1886	1909	1932	1955	1978	2001	2024	2047
24	1920	1944	1968	1992	2016	2040	2064	2088	2112	2136
25	2000	2025	2050	2075	2100	2125	2150	2175	2200	2225
26	2080	2006	2132	2158	2184	2210	2236	2262	2288	2314
27	2160	2187	2214	2241	2268	2295	2322	2349	2376	2403
28	2240	2268	2296	2324	2352	2380	2408	2436	2464	2492
29	2320	2349	2378	2407	2436	2465	2494	2523	2552	2581
30	2400	2430	2460	2490	2520	2550	2580	2610	2640	2670
31	2480	2511	2542	2573	2604	2635	2666	2697	2728	2759
32	2560	2592	2624	2656	2688	2720	2752	2784	2816	2848
33	2640	2673	2706	2739	2772	2805	2838	2871	2904	2937
34	2720	2754	2788	2822	2856	2890	2924	2958	2992	3026
35	2800	2835	2870	2905	2940	2975	3010	3045	3080	3115
36	2880	2916	2952	2988	3024	3060	3096	3132	3168	3204

*Battalions from which the Number*Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89
37	2960	2997	3034	3071	3108	3145	3182	3219	3256	3293
38	3040	3078	3116	3154	3192	3230	3268	3306	3344	3382
39	3120	3159	3198	3237	3276	3315	3354	3393	3432	3471
40	3200	3240	3280	3320	3360	3400	3440	3480	3520	3560
41	3280	3321	3362	3403	3444	3485	3526	3567	3608	3649
42	3360	3402	3444	3486	3528	3570	3612	3654	3696	3738
43	3440	3483	3526	3569	3612	3655	3698	3741	3784	3827
44	3520	3564	3608	3652	3696	3740	3784	3828	3872	3916
45	3600	3645	3690	3735	3780	3825	3870	3915	3960	4005
46	3680	3726	3772	3818	3864	3910	3956	4002	4048	4094
47	3760	3807	3854	3901	3948	3995	4042	4089	4136	4183
48	3840	3888	3936	3984	4032	4080	4128	4176	4224	4272
49	3920	3969	4018	4067	4116	4165	4214	4263	4312	4361
50	4000	4050	4100	4150	4200	4250	4300	4350	4400	4450
51	4080	4131	4182	4233	4284	4335	4386	4437	4488	4539
52	4160	4212	4264	4316	4368	4420	4472	4524	4576	4628
53	4240	4293	4346	4399	4452	4505	4558	4611	4664	4717
54	4320	4374	4428	4482	4536	4590	4644	4698	4752	4806
55	4400	4455	4510	4565	4620	4675	4730	4785	4840	4895
56	4480	4536	4592	4648	4704	4760	4816	4872	4928	4984
57	4560	4617	4674	4731	4788	4845	4902	4959	5016	5073
58	4640	4698	4756	4814	4872	4930	4988	5046	5104	5162
59	4720	4779	4838	4897	4956	5015	5074	5133	5192	5251
60	4800	4860	4920	4980	5040	5100	5160	5220	5280	5340
61	4880	4941	5002	5063	5124	5185	5246	5307	5368	5429
62	4960	5022	5084	5146	5208	5270	5332	5394	5456	5518
63	5040	5103	5166	5229	5292	5355	5418	5481	5544	5607
64	5120	5184	5248	5312	5376	5440	5504	5568	5632	5696
65	5200	5265	5330	5395	5460	5525	5590	5655	5720	5785
66	5280	5346	5412	5478	5544	5610	5676	5742	5808	5874
67	5360	5427	5494	5561	5628	5695	5762	5829	5896	5963
68	5440	5508	5576	5644	5712	5780	5848	5916	5984	6052
69	5520	5589	5658	5727	5796	5865	5934	6003	6072	6141
70	5600	5670	5740	5810	5880	5950	6020	6090	6160	6230
71	5680	5751	5822	5893	5964	6035	6106	6177	6248	6319

in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99
2	180	182	184	186	188	190	192	194	196	198
3	270	273	276	279	282	285	288	291	294	297
4	360	364	368	372	376	380	384	388	392	396
5	450	455	460	465	470	475	480	485	490	495
6	540	546	552	558	564	570	576	582	588	594
7	630	637	644	651	658	665	672	679	686	693
8	720	728	736	744	752	760	768	776	784	792
9	810	819	828	837	846	855	864	872	882	891
10	900	910	920	930	940	950	960	970	980	990
11	990	1001	1012	1023	1034	1045	1056	1067	1078	1089
12	1080	1092	1104	1116	1128	1140	1152	1164	1176	1188
13	1170	1183	1196	1209	1222	1235	1248	1261	1274	1287
14	1260	1274	1288	1302	1316	1330	1344	1358	1372	1386
15	1350	1365	1380	1395	1410	1425	1440	1455	1470	1485
16	1440	1456	1472	1488	1504	1520	1536	1552	1568	1584
17	1530	1547	1564	1581	1598	1615	1632	1649	1666	1683
18	1620	1638	1656	1674	1692	1710	1728	1746	1764	1782
19	1710	1729	1748	1767	1786	1805	1824	1843	1862	1881
20	1800	1820	1840	1860	1880	1900	1920	1940	1960	1980
21	1890	1911	1932	1953	1974	1995	2016	2037	2058	2079
22	1980	2002	2024	2046	2068	2090	2112	2134	2156	2178
23	2070	2093	2116	2139	2162	2185	2208	2231	2254	2277
24	2160	2184	2208	2232	2256	2280	2304	2328	2352	2376
25	2250	2275	2300	2325	2350	2375	2400	2425	2450	2475
26	2340	2366	2392	2418	2444	2470	2496	2522	2548	2574
27	2430	2457	2484	2511	2538	2565	2592	2619	2646	2673
28	2520	2548	2576	2604	2632	2660	2688	2716	2744	2772
29	2610	2639	2668	2697	2726	2755	2784	2813	2842	2871
30	2700	2730	2760	2790	2820	2850	2880	2910	2940	2970
31	2790	2821	2852	2883	2914	2945	2976	3007	3038	3069
32	2880	2912	2944	2976	3008	3040	3072	3104	3136	3168
33	2970	3003	3036	3069	3102	3135	3168	3201	3234	3267
34	3060	3094	3128	3162	3196	3230	3264	3298	3332	3366
35	3150	3185	3220	3255	3290	3325	3360	3395	3430	3465
36	3240	3276	3312	3348	3384	3420	3456	3492	3528	3564

*Battalions from which the Number*Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99
37	3330	3367	3404	3441	3478	3515	3552	3589	3626	3663
38	3420	3458	3496	3534	3572	3610	3648	3686	3724	3762
39	3510	3549	3588	3627	3666	3705	3744	3783	3822	3861
40	3600	3640	3680	3720	3760	3800	3840	3880	3920	3960
41	3690	3731	3772	3813	3854	3895	3936	3977	4018	4059
42	3780	3822	3864	3906	3948	3990	4032	4074	4116	4158
43	3870	3913	3956	3999	4042	4085	4128	4171	4214	4257
44	3960	4004	4048	4092	4136	4180	4224	4268	4312	4356
45	4050	4095	4140	4185	4230	4275	4320	4365	4410	4455
46	4140	4186	4232	4278	4324	4370	4416	4462	4508	4554
47	4230	4277	4324	4371	4418	4465	4512	4559	4606	4653
48	4320	4368	4416	4464	4512	4560	4608	4656	4704	4752
49	4410	4459	4508	4557	4606	4655	4704	4753	4802	4851
50	4500	4550	4600	4650	4700	4750	4800	4850	4900	4950
51	4590	4641	4692	4743	4794	4845	4896	4947	4998	5049
52	4680	4732	4784	4836	4888	4940	4992	5044	5096	5148
53	4770	4823	4876	4929	4982	5035	5088	5141	5194	5247
54	4860	4914	4968	5022	5076	5130	5184	5238	5292	5346
55	4950	5005	5060	5115	5170	5225	5280	5335	5390	5445
56	5040	5096	5152	5208	5264	5320	5376	5432	5488	5544
57	5130	5187	5244	5301	5358	5415	5472	5529	5586	5643
58	5220	5278	5336	5394	5452	5510	5568	5626	5684	5742
59	5310	5369	5428	5487	5546	5605	5664	5723	5782	5841
60	5400	5460	5520	5580	5640	5700	5760	5820	5880	5940
61	5490	5551	5612	5673	5734	5795	5856	5917	5978	6039
62	5580	5642	5704	5766	5828	5890	5952	6014	6076	6138
63	5670	5733	5796	5859	5922	5985	6048	6111	6174	6237
64	5760	5824	5888	5952	6016	6080	6144	6208	6272	6336
65	5850	5915	5980	6045	6110	6175	6240	6305	6370	6435
66	5940	6006	6072	6138	6204	6270	6336	6402	6468	6534
67	6030	6097	6164	6231	6298	6365	6432	6499	6566	6633
68	6120	6188	6256	6324	6392	6460	6528	6596	6664	6732
69	6210	6279	6348	6417	6486	6555	6624	6693	6762	6831
70	6300	6370	6440	6510	6580	6650	6720	6790	6860	6930
71	6390	6461	6532	6603	6674	6745	6816	6887	6958	7029

in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

Number of
Men to be
detach'd.

	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109
2	200	202	204	206	208	210	212	214	216	218
3	300	303	306	309	312	315	318	321	324	327
4	400	404	408	412	416	420	424	428	432	436
5	500	505	510	515	520	525	530	535	540	545
6	600	606	612	618	624	630	636	642	648	654
7	700	707	714	721	728	735	742	749	756	763
8	800	808	816	824	832	840	848	856	864	872
9	900	909	918	927	936	945	954	963	972	981
10	1000	1010	1020	1030	1040	1050	1060	1070	1080	1090
11	1100	1111	1122	1133	1144	1155	1166	1177	1188	1199
12	1200	1212	1224	1236	1248	1260	1272	1284	1296	1308
13	1300	1313	1326	1339	1352	1365	1378	1391	1404	1417
14	1400	1414	1428	1442	1456	1470	1484	1498	1512	1526
15	1500	1515	1530	1545	1560	1575	1590	1605	1620	1635
16	1600	1616	1632	1648	1664	1680	1696	1712	1728	1744
17	1700	1717	1734	1751	1768	1785	1802	1819	1836	1853
18	1800	1818	1836	1854	1872	1890	1908	1926	1944	1962
19	1900	1919	1938	1957	1976	1995	2014	2033	2052	2071
20	2000	2020	2040	2060	2080	2100	2120	2140	2160	2180
21	2100	2121	2142	2163	2184	2205	2226	2247	2268	2289
22	2200	2222	2244	2266	2288	2310	2332	2354	2376	2398
23	2300	2323	2346	2369	2392	2415	2438	2461	2484	2507
24	2400	2424	2448	2472	2496	2520	2544	2568	2592	2616
25	2500	2525	2550	2575	2600	2625	2650	2675	2700	2725
26	2600	2626	2652	2678	2704	2730	2756	2782	2808	2834
27	2700	2727	2754	2781	2808	2835	2862	2889	2916	2943
28	2800	2828	2856	2884	2912	2940	2968	2996	3024	3052
29	2900	2929	2958	2987	3016	3045	3074	3103	3132	3161
30	3000	3030	3060	3090	3120	3150	3180	3210	3240	3270
31	3100	3131	3162	3193	3224	3255	3286	3317	3348	3379
32	3200	3232	3264	3296	3328	3360	3392	3424	3456	3488
33	3300	3333	3366	3399	3432	3465	3498	3531	3564	3597
34	3400	3434	3468	3502	3536	3570	3604	3638	3672	3706
35	3500	3535	3570	3605	3640	3675	3710	3745	3780	3815
36	3600	3636	3672	3708	3744	3780	3816	3852	3888	3924

Number of
Men to be
detach'd.*Battalions from which the Number*

	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109
37	3700	3737	3774	3811	3848	3885	3922	3959	3996	4033
38	3800	3838	3876	3914	3952	3990	4028	4066	4104	4142
39	3900	3939	3978	4017	4056	4095	4134	4173	4212	4251
40	4000	4040	4080	4120	4160	4200	4240	4280	4320	4360
41	4100	4141	4182	4223	4264	4305	4346	4387	4428	4469
42	4200	4242	4284	4326	4368	4410	4452	4494	4536	4578
43	4300	4343	4386	4429	4472	4515	4558	4601	4644	4687
44	4400	4444	4488	4532	4576	4620	4664	4708	4752	4796
45	4500	4545	4590	4635	4680	4725	4770	4815	4860	4905
46	4600	4646	4692	4738	4784	4830	4876	4922	4968	5014
47	4700	4747	4794	4841	4888	4935	4982	5029	5076	5123
48	4800	4848	4896	4944	4992	5040	5088	5136	5184	5232
49	4900	4949	4998	5047	5096	5145	5194	5243	5292	5341
50	5000	5050	5100	5150	5200	5250	5300	5350	5400	5450
51	5100	5151	5202	5253	5304	5355	5406	5457	5508	5559
52	5200	5252	5304	5356	5408	5460	5512	5564	5616	5668
53	5300	5353	5406	5459	5512	5565	5618	5671	5724	5777
54	5400	5454	5508	5562	5616	5670	5724	5778	5832	5886
55	5500	5555	5610	5665	5720	5775	5830	5884	5940	5995
56	5600	5656	5712	5768	5824	5880	5936	5992	6048	6104
57	5700	5757	5814	5871	5928	5985	6042	6099	6156	6213
58	5800	5858	5916	5974	6032	6090	6148	6206	6264	6322
59	5900	5959	6018	6077	6136	6195	6254	6313	6372	6431
60	6000	6060	6120	6180	6240	6300	6360	6420	6480	6540
61	6100	6161	6222	6283	6344	6405	6466	6527	6588	6649
62	6200	6262	6324	6386	6448	6510	6572	6634	6696	6758
63	6300	6363	6426	6489	6552	6615	6678	6741	6804	6867
64	6400	6464	6528	6592	6656	6720	6784	6848	6912	6976
65	6500	6565	6630	6695	6760	6825	6890	6955	7020	7085
66	6600	6666	6732	6798	6864	6930	6996	7062	7128	7194
67	6700	6767	6834	6901	6968	7035	7102	7169	7236	7303
68	6800	6868	6936	7004	7072	7140	7208	7276	7344	7412
69	6900	6969	7038	7107	7176	7245	7314	7383	7452	7521
70	7000	7070	7140	7210	7280	7350	7420	7490	7560	7630
71	7100	7171	7242	7313	7384	7455	7526	7597	7668	7739



C H A P. XX.

*Manual Exercise and Evolutions of the
Cavalry.*

A R T I C L E I.

*Directions for the Forming of Squadrons, Posting
the Officers, sending for and returning the Stand-
ards, &c.*

TIS presumed that the Troopers are taught to ride,
and the Horses dress'd, in order to perform the fol-
lowing Exercise.

The proper Arms for a Trooper are a Carbine, Pistols,
and a Broad-Sword.

The Carbine is to be placed in a Bucket (which is fix'd by
Straps to the Right Side of the Saddle, so as to hang below the
Holster-Pipe) and to be fastened about twelve Inches above the
Lock, by a Strap that comes from the Bur, or Fore-part of
the Saddle, the Barrel upward, and running between the
Man's Right-Arm and Side.

The Sword is to be placed on the Man's Left Thigh, the
Point something lower than the Hilt. As to the placing of
the Pistols, and other Accoutrements, it is so generally known,
that it will be unnecessary to mention it. If they link with
Collars (as is customary at present) the End is to be fasten'd
to the Right Side of the Saddle, above the Holster-pipe, by a
running Knot.

When the Regiment is order'd to draw out to Exercise,
the Troopers are to Parade at their Captain's Quarters, or
Place appointed by him, completely arm'd and accoutred.
The Lieutenant, Cornet, and Quarter-Master are to be there
likewise at the Time appointed; from which Place the Cap-
tain or Officer commanding the Troop is to march them to
the general Place of Parade, where they are to Form in
Squadrons.

A Regiment consisting of nine Troops is formed into three Squadrons, three Troops in each. The first Squadron is compos'd of the Colonel's, first and fourth Captain's Troops. The second Squadron of the Lieutenant-Colonel's, second and fifth Captains Troops. The third Squadron of the Major's, third and sixth Captains Troops.

A Regiment of six Troops is formed into two Squadrons. The first Squadron is compos'd of the Colonels, Major's, and second Captain's Troops. The second Squadron is compos'd of the Lieutenant-Colonels, first and third Captains Troops.

When the Troops are come to the general Place of Parade, and Form in Squadron, they are to draw up in three Ranks (which is called three deep) and to compleat their Files. The Officers are to remain at the Head of their Troops, the Captain in the Center, the Lieutenant on the Right, and the Cornet on the Left, and the Quarter-Master in the Rear of the Troop. Care is to be taken that the Troops are well siz'd, that is, the tallest Men and Horses are to be in the Front and Rear-Ranks, and the lowest in the Center.

The Troops that compose the several Squadrons are to draw up in the following manner in Squadron. The eldest Troop of each Squadron is to be on the Right, the second on the Left, and the youngest in the Center; except the Lieutenant-Colonel's Squadron, which is on the Left of the Regiment, and is to draw up the Reverse; the Lieutenant-Colonel's Troop is to be on the Left, the next eldest on the Right, and the youngest in the Center.

If a Regiment be compos'd of more than two Squadrons, the others are to be drawn up in the same manner as the first; but in case the Lieutenant-Colonel's Squadron be separated from the Colonel's, the Lieutenant-Colonels Troop is then to take the Right.

A Regiment consisting of three Squadrons is to be drawn up as follows; the eldest Squadron on the Right, the second on the Left, and the youngest in the Center. The Interval or Distance between each Squadron, is to be equal to the Ground one Squadron stands on. The Distance between the Ranks, when drawn up in Squadron, is to be at *Open Order*; which is explain'd in the following Article.

The several Distances between the Ranks are, *Open Order*, *Order*, *Close Order*, and *Close to the Troop*.

Open

Open Order, is the Distance between each Rank when drawn up into Squadron, which Distance must be equal to half the Front of the Squadron.

Order, is the Distance the Ranks are to be at when the Squadrons march, which is equal to a Third of the Front.

Close Order, is the Distance the Ranks are to be at when moving up to an Enemy; which Distance is, that four Men may just wheel round.

Close to the Troop, is as close as they can be; in which Position they are to Charge.

When the Squadrons are form'd, the Major, or Officer that is to Exercise the Regiment, is to order the Officers to take their Posts, by saying, *Officers to your Posts*. The Officers of each Squadron are to take their Posts at the Head of their Squadrons by Seniority of Commission, that is, the eldest Captain on the Right, the second on the Left, the next eldest on the Right, and the next eldest Officer on the Left, and so on, till the youngest comes in the Center; taking care to divide the Ground equally between them, so as to cover the Front of the Squadron. When the Officers have taken their Posts, they are to dress in the same Rank, and to be advanced a Horse's Length before the Front-Rank of Men. The Quarter-Masters are to post themselves by Seniority in the Rear of their respective Squadrons, a Horse's Length behind the Rear-Rank. The Trumpets are to draw up on the Right of their Squadrons, even with the Front-Rank of Men, leaving a small Interval between them and the Squadron. The Kettle-Drummer is to place himself on the Right of the Trumpets of the Colonel's Squadron. This Rule does not extend to the Lieutenant-Colonel's Squadron when the Colonel is present, but the Officers are to take their Posts from the Left to the Right, and the Quarter-Masters of that Squadron are to do the same, and the Trumpets are to place themselves on the Left, as the others do on the Right.

As soon as the Officers are posted in the manner aforesaid, the Standards are to be sent for in the following manner. The Trumpets and Kettle-Drummer are to be ordered to the Center Squadron, where they are to be formed into Ranks according to their Number, and the Kettle-Drummer advanced before them, all facing outward. This being done, the Major is to order the eldest Cornet of that Squadron to march for the Standards, with a Quarter-Master, and four, five, or more Files from the Center of that Squadron,

dron, the Cornet marching at the Head of the said Detachment, the Trumpets and Kettle-Drummer before him, and the Quarter-Master in the Rear of the whole. When the Cornet comes to the Place where the Standards are lodg'd (which is always at the Colonel or commanding Officer's of the Regiment's Quarters) he is to form his Detachment into a Rank entire, facing the House, by saying, *To the Right or Left* (according as it stands) *Form a Rank entire, March.* The Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets are to form into a Rank entire with the Detachment. When this is done, the Cornet is to order the Detachment (the Men that are to carry the Standards excepted) to draw their Swords (it being the Custom of the Cavalry to go for the Standards without Sound of Trumpet or drawn Swords;) which being done, and the Standards received, which must be by those of the Front-Rank, he is to form his Detachment by these Words of Command, *To the Right (or Left) Form your Ranks, March.* At which the Trumpets are likewise to form as before. The Cornet is then to march back to the Regiment with the Standards, the Trumpets sounding a March; but instead of marching along the Front of the Regiment, as they do in the Foot, he is to march along the Rear, till he comes to the Interval, which was made by their marching out, and then he is to wheel and march his Men into their former Places. As soon as the Standards are come near the Regiment, the Major is to order the Men to draw their Swords; which is a Ceremony always to be paid the Standards, both in bringing them to, and carrying them from the Regiment. When the Standards are come, the eldest Cornets of the Right and Left Squadrons are to march with three Men from the Center of the Front-Rank along the Front; and when they come opposite to the Standards they are to halt, and to order those Men that are to carry the Standards to return their Swords, and take their several Standards. The Cornets are then to march back with their Standards, taking with them their respective Trumpets, who are to found a March; and as soon as they have got to the Center of the Intervals between the Squadrons, they are to wheel to the Rear, and march till they come opposite to the Intervals of the Front and Center Ranks, and then to wheel to their Squadrons, and march between those Ranks till they come to their Places, and then to wheel up. The Trumpets are then to go to their Posts, and the Regiment to return their Swords.

When

When the Standards are to be returned, the Major is to order the Cornets of the Right and Left Squadrons to carry the Standards to the Center Squadron; which they are to do in the same manner they brought them from thence, the Trumpets founding a March; and when they have deliver'd them to that Squadron, the Cornets are to return with the Men to their Squadrons, marching between the Front and Center Ranks till they come to their own Places, and then wheel up. The Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets are to remain with the Standards, and form the Ranks as they did before. This being done, and the Cornets of the other Squadrons return'd, the Cornet that brought the Standards is to march back with the same Number of Files (the Trumpets founding a March) and lodge the Standards, drawing up his Men in a Rank entire as he did when he receiv'd them, and then to return the Swords, form them into Ranks, and march back to the Regiment without Sound of Trumpet.

Note, Before the Standards are carried to the Center Squadron, the Major is to order the Regiment to draw their Swords, and as soon as the Standards are gone, to return them.

A Regiment of two Squadrons must send a Detachment from the first Squadron for the Standards. All the other Ceremonies are to be observ'd as before mention'd.

The Standards being brought to their respective Squadrons, the next thing to be done is, the telling off, or dividing the several Squadrons into proper Divisions for the Exercise. *First*, each Squadron is to be told off by *Files*, then *Ranks by Fours*; *Quarter-Ranks*; *Ranks by three Divisions*; and *Half-Ranks*.

Telling off by Files. You begin at the Right of each Squadron, and say to the Right-hand File, *You stand*; to the Second File, *You move*; the Third, *You stand*; the Fourth, *You move*; and so on thro' the Squadrons.

Ranks by Fours. You begin at the Right of each Rank, and say to the First Man, *You are the Right-hand Man of Ranks by Fours*; to the Fourth Man, *You are the Left-hand Man of Ranks by Fours*; to the Fifth Man, *You are the Right-hand Man*, &c. to the Eighth Man, *You are the Left-hand Man*, &c. to the Ninth, *You are the Right*, &c. to the Twelfth, *You are the Left*, &c. and so on through each Squadron.

Quarter-Ranks. Each Squadron is to be divided into four equal Parts, which are to be call'd, *First, Second, Third and Fourth Quarter-Ranks*, beginning at the Right, by saying to the Right-hand Man, *You are the Right-hand Man of the First Quarter-Rank*; and to the Left-hand Man of that Quarter-Rank, *You are the Left*; and so on to the rest in the same manner.

Ranks of three Divisions. Each Squadron is to be divided into three equal Parts. The Right and Left-hand Men are to be told in the same manner as the others.

Ranks by two Divisions. Each Squadron is to be divided into two equal Parts. The Right and Left-hand Men are to be told as above.

As the telling off, or dividing each Squadron into the above-mention'd Divisions, will prove tedious by doing it distinctly thro' every Rank, I will lay down a shorter Method of performing it.

The Major is to order the Center and Rear Ranks to close to the Croop, at which time the Officers are to advance so far, that the Major or Adjutant may go with Ease between them and the Front-Rank. By the Ranks being clos'd, the telling off in the Front will serve for the other Ranks. When they are told off, the Ranks are to be open'd backward to open Order, and the Officers at the same time are to rein back to their former Distance.

For the better understanding the several Wheelings, it will be proper to give an Explanation. The Circle is divided into four Parts. Wheeling to the Right or Left is a Quarter of the Circle; to the Right or Left-about is one Half; the Circle entire is quite round till you come on the former Ground.

Rules for Wheeling.

When you wheel to the Right, you are to close to the Right, and look to the Left; and when you wheel to the Left, you are to close to the Left, and look to the Right. This Rule will serve for all wheeling by Ranks; but when you wheel in Squadron, or by Divisions, the following Rules must be observ'd.

When you wheel by Squadron, or by Divisions, the three Ranks wheel together, the Center and Rear-Ranks wheeling directly in the Rear of the Front-Rank, keeping their proper Distance, and each Man covering his File-Leader.

The

The first Rank of each Squadron or Division is to observe the same Rules as are already given; that is, when you wheel to the Right, to close to the Right, and look to the Left; and when you wheel to the Left, to close to the Left, and look to the Right. But the Center and Rear-Ranks are to close to the Left, when they wheel to the Right, that the Men may keep opposite to their File-Leaders, and those Ranks are to move quicker than the Front, the Circumference they take being larger.

The Center and Rear-Ranks are to take particular Care, not to close their Ranks in wheeling, but to keep directly behind their File-Leaders. All Wheelings are to be done briskly, but no Man to exceed a large Trot. The Motion of each Man is quicker or slower according to the Distance he is from the Right or Left: Thus when you wheel to the Right, each Man from the Right moves quicker than his Right-hand Man, the Circle that every Man wheels being larger according to the Distance he is from the Right. When you wheel to the Left, the Motion of every Man is also different, according to the Distance he is from the Left.

All things being thus dispos'd, they may proceed to the Exercise; unless they are to perform it before a General Officer; for the Reception of whom I will give some Directions at the End of this Chapter; as also the Manner of passing in Review, and Officers Saluting.

The Major, or Officer that is to exercise the Regiment, is to place himself opposite to the Center of the Center-Squadron, if the Regiment consists of three Squadrons; but if only of two, he is to place himself opposite to the Center of the Interval between them.

Those who think the following Exercise too long to be perform'd at one Time, (as no doubt, most People will) may very easily shorten it, by leaving out those things which they do not approve of, which in my Opinion, is a sufficient Answer to an Objection of that Kind.

The Manual Exercise on Horse-back.

ARTICLE II.

I. *Center and Rear-Ranks, move forward to close Order. March.*

[*Note, that no Movement is to be made 'till the Word March is given.*]

The two Rear-Ranks of each Squadron march forward and close so near, that only four Men may just wheel round between each Rank. The Quarter-Masters are to be on the Right of their respective Squadrons, to give the Ranks their proper Distance, and to dress them, and then repair to their Posts in the Rear. This Movement is to be done at a Walk, and the Men are to observe their Right and Left-hand Men, that the Rank may be even in Marching.

II. *Officers rein back into the Front-Rank.*

At this Word of Command, the Front-Rank of each Squadron is to open a little to the Right and Left, to make proper Intervals for the Officers to fall into, and the Officers are to wait for the following Word of Command.

III. *March.*

At this the Commission Officers rein back in a direct Line into the Front-Rank of Men and dress with them, and the Cornets are to take the Standards from the Men.

IV. *Shorten your Bridles. 5 Motions.*

First, seize the upper End of the Reins of the Bridle, which is to lie on the Right Side of the Horse, with the Right Hand. 2. Bring it up as high as your Chin, keeping your Right Elbow on a Level with the Shoulder, which is called Square. 3. Slip your Left Hand along the Reins of the Bridle, and take hold of the Loop or Button, which is near the upper End of the Reins. 4. Slip the Loop down with the Left Hand as low as the Pommel of the Saddle; and 5thly, bring the Right Hand down with Life on the Right Holster-

Holster-Cap, quitting the Reins of the Bridle with both Hands.
[*Note, every Motion is to be done briskly, and the Time between each is to be the same as is practis'd in the Foot Exercise, of telling One, Two.*]

The Officers are not to perform these Motions.

V. *Make ready your Carbines.*

Unfasten the Strap that holds the Carbine, then bring your Arm under the Carbine, and take hold of it about the middle with the Right-Hand, letting it lie between the Fore-Finger and Thumb, and raising it a little, that the Muzzle may run up by the Point of the Right-Shoulder.

VI. *Advance your Carbines.* 3 Motions.

First, raise the Carbine upright in the Bucket, slipping your Right-Hand at the same time up the Barrel as high as your Shoulder, with the Elbow square. 2. Slip the Right-Hand down the Barrel as low as you can without inclining your Body, and grasp it with a full Hand. 3. Bring up the Carbine with the Right-Hand, and place the Butt-End on the upper Part of the Right-Thigh near the Body, turning the Barrel towards you at the same time, the Muzzle sloping to the Front.

VII. *Handle your Swivels.* 2 Motions.

First, seize the Swivel with your Left-Hand, placing the Thumb on the Spring. 2. Bring the Swivel to the Left Side of the Carbine opposite to the Ring which you are to Spring it to, raising your Elbow as high as your Hand.

VIII. *Spring your Carbines.* 3 Motions.

First, open the Swivel, by pressing your Left-Thumb, and put it into the Ring of the Carbine, and then ease your Thumb that the Spring may close. 2. Quit the Carbine with the Right-Hand, and take hold of the small Part of the Butt a little below the Lock with a full Hand. 3. Quit the Swivel with the Left-Hand, and bring it to its proper Place.

IX. *Drop*

IX. *Drop your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

Drop the Carbine on the Right Side, hanging by the Swivel, and the Muzzle lying cross the middle of the Right Toe; at the same time taking hold of the Bridle with the Left-Hand, and quitting the Carbine with the Right.

X. *Join your Right-Hands to your Swords.* 1 Motion.

Bring your Right-Hand over your Left-Arm, which Arm you are to press close to your Left Side, and seize the Handle of the Sword with a full Hand.

The Officers are to do the same.

XI. *Draw your Swords.* 2 Motions.

First, Draw your Sword quite out of the Scabbard, by raising up the Right-Hand as high as your Arm will permit, and keep the Point of the Sword a little higher than the Hilt. Second, Bring your Right-Hand to your Right Side, placing the Inside of the Hilt on the Outside of your Right Thigh, the Wrist bending a little out, raising the Point pretty high, and running in a Line with the Right Ear of the Horse with the Edge from you. The Officers do the same.

XII. *Place your Swords in the Bridle Hands.*
2 Motions.

First, Bring up the Sword opposite to the Center of the Body, resting the Pommel on the fore-part of the Saddle, the broad-part of the Blade toward you, and the Point upright; at the same time you are to slip your Left-Hand along the Reins of the Bridle as high as your Shoulder, and seize the Blade with the Left-Hand, keeping the Reins between the Palm and it, and squaring your Left Elbow. Second, Quit the Sword with the Right-Hand, and bring it to its proper Place.

XIII. *Handle your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

Seize the round or small Part of the Butt with your Right-Hand, by raising your Right-Hand as high as your Shoulder,
and

and bringing it immediately down to the aforementioned Place.

XIV. *Advance your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

Bring up your Carbine with your Right-Hand, placing it on your Right Thigh, as in Explan. 6.

XV. *Cock your Carbines.* 2 Motions.

First, bring forward the Right Elbow, and place your Right Thumb on the Cock. Second, Bring down your Right Elbow to your Body or Side, cocking the Carbine at the same time, and slipping the Thumb off the Cock.

XVI. *Present.* 1 Motion.

Bring up the Carbine, and place the Butt-End firm to the Hollow of the Right Shoulder, dropping the Muzzle to a Level on the Right Side of the Sword, and support it with the Fingers of the Left-Hand, which you are to extend for that Purpose, and place the Fore-finger of the Right-Hand before the Tricker, (yet without touching it) and the other three on the Guard, and the Thumb in the Hollow of the Butt, your Body inclining a little forward only to press against the Carbine, keeping your Head up, and looking strait forward.

XVII. *Fire.* 1 Motion.

At this Word of Command you draw the Tricker, with that Finger that was plac'd before it, quick and strong; but if it should not go off with the first Drawing, you are not to draw it a second time.

XVIII. *Drop your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

Drop your Carbines on the Right Side, as in Explan. 9.

XIX. *Handle your Right Pistols.* 1 Motion.

Bring your Right-Hand round, turning the Back towards you, and seize the Butt of the Right Pistol with a full Hand.

XX. *Draw*

XX. *Draw your Right Pistols.* 1 Motion.

Draw your Pistol out of the Holster, and bring it to the Right Side of the Sword, extending your Arm directly before you, with the Muzzle upright.

XXI. *Cock your Pistols.* 2 Motions.

First, Bring the Pistol close to your Breast, keeping the Muzzle up, and place your Thumb on the Cock. Second, throw off the Pistol to its former Place, cocking it at the same time, and slip your Thumb off the Cock.

XXII. *Present.* 1 Motion.

Drop the Muzzle to a Level, the Barrel upward, and place the Fore-finger on the Tricker, as in Explan. 16.

XXIII. *Fire.* 1 Motion.

Draw the Tricker, as in Explan. 17.

XXIV. *Return your Pistols.* 3 Motions.

First, Place the Muzzle of the Pistol in the Holster, the Back of your Hand turn'd towards you. Second, thrust it quite down. Third, quit the Pistol, and bring your Right-Hand to its proper Place.

XXV. *Handle your Left Pistols.* 1 Motion.

Do this as in Explan. 19. only the Back of the Hand from you.

XXVI. *Draw your Pistols.* 1 Motion, as in Explan. 20.XXVII. *Cock your Pistols.* 2 Motions, as in Explan. 21.XXVIII. *Present.* 1 Motion, as in Explan. 22.XXIX. *Fire.* 1 Motion, as in Explan. 17.XXX. *Return*

XXX. *Return your Pistols.* 3 Motions, as in Explan. 24.

XXXI. *Recover your Swords.* 2 Motions.

First, Sieze the Handle of the Sword with the Right-Hand, grasping it with the Thumb upward. Second, Bring the Sword to your Right Thigh, as in Explan. 11. at the same time slip down your Left-Hand, and take hold of the Bridle at the proper Place.

XXXII. *Point your Swords.* 1 Motion.

Bring the Sword over the Left Arm, and enter the Point in the Scabbard, and thrust it in so far, that you may look over the Right Arm. For the easier Performance of which, you must close your Left Arm to your Side.

The Officers to perform this Motion with the Men.

XXXIII. *Return your Swords.* 2 Motions.

First, Thrust your Sword up to the Hilt. Second, Bring your Hand back to its proper Place.

The Officers to do the same.

XXXIV. *Officers, move into the Front, March.*

The Commission-Officers are to march out of the Ranks, the Cornets bringing the Standards with them, and place themselves at the Head of the Squadrons. As soon as the Officers are clear of the Men, the Front Ranks are to close the Intervals, made by the Officers, to the Center.

XXXV. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Open Order, March.*

The Center and Rear Ranks of each Squadron are to rein back very slow in a direct Line to their former Ground, keeping their Ranks and Files even; of which the Quarter-Masters are to take particular Care, as also that there be a due Distance between the Ranks, according to the Directions in Article the 8th, *Of Rules and Observations*, &c.

Note, As my Intentions at first were only to treat of those Things that relate properly to the Exercise of the Horse, I
will

will proceed on that Scheme; but that this Work may not be defective, I will set down at the End of the Evolutions, the proper Words of Command, with an Explanation for Dis-mounting, Linking the Horses, and Forming into Battalion, with the Exercise on Foot, which is to be done immediately after the above 35th Article; but if the Foot Exercise is not to be perform'd, the above 34th and 35th Words of Command are not to be given 'till the Carbines are return'd.

XXXVI. *Handle your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

This is to be done as in Explan. 13.

XXXVII. *Advance your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

As in Explan. 14.

XXXVIII. *Unspring your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

Quit the Reins of your Bridle, and take hold of the Swivel with the Left-Hand, placing the Thumb on the Spring, and opening it, at the same time take it out of the Ring.

XXXIX. *Return your Swivels.* 2 Motions.

First, Place the Swivel on your Right Side, by thrusting your Left-Hand under your Right Arm. Second, Bring your Left-Hand back to its proper Place.

XL. *Return your Carbines.* 4 Motions.

First, Throw the Carbine to the Right with the Right-Hand, turning the Barrel to the Front, sinking it as low as you can without inclining your Body, seizing the Barrel at the same time with the Left-Hand, and keeping the Muzzle upright. 2. Quit the Right-Hand, and bring the Carbine with the Left under your Right Arm, sinking it near the Bucket, and at the same time seize the Barrel with the Right-Hand a little above the Left. 3. Place the Butt-End of the Carbine in the Bucket, and quit it with the Left-Hand. 4. Fasten the Carbine with the Strap, and place your Bridle in your Left-Hand.

The End of the Manual Exercise on Horseback.

Evolutions

Evolutions of the Horse.

ARTICLE III.

I. *Officers, take your Posts in the Front, March.*

[Note, That no Movement be made 'till the Word, March, is given.]

The Commission-Officers march strait forward, the Cornets carry the Standards, 'till they pass the Major, or Officer that exercises the Regiment eight or ten Paces, and then stand; taking Care both then and in the marching that their Ranks be even.

II. *Halt.*

The Officers of the right Squadron are to face to the Left-about, the Officers of the Left Squadron to the Right-about, and those of the Center Squadron to the Right and Left-about, that is, Half the Officers on the Right to face to the Left-about, and the Half on the Left to the Right-about, in which Posture they are to remain 'till order'd to the Front.

The Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets are to march with the Officers, and draw up in the Rear of them, as soon as the Word *Halt* is given, where they are to remain.

III. *Center and Rear Ranks, move forward to Order, March.*

The two Rear Ranks of each Squadron move up, and leave the Distance between the Ranks equal to a third of one Rank. They are to perform this and the following Movements only at a Walk, taking care to look to the Right and Left, but chiefly to the Right, that they may march even in the Ranks, and keep directly in a Line with their File-Leaders. The Quarter-Masters are to be on the Right Flanks of their respective Squadrons, to see that the Ranks keep their proper Distance, and to make them dress.

IV. *Center and Rear Ranks, move forward to Close Order, March.*

The aforesaid Ranks close so much, that four Men can just wheel round. Observe the other Rules above in Explan. 3.

V. *Center*

V. *Center and Rear Ranks, Close to the Croop, March.*

The foresaid Ranks move up so close, that the Horses Heads are to touch the Croops of their File-Leader's Horses.

VI. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Close Order, March.*

The Ranks that mov'd up are to rein back very slow, to the Ground from whence they last came, in a direct Line, casting their Eyes to the Right and Left to keep their Ranks strait.

VII. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Order, March.*

The same Ranks rein back, 'till the Distance between the Ranks is equal to a Third of the Front Rank of one Squadron; observe the other Directions as in Explan. 6.

VIII. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Open Order, March.*

The same Ranks rein back to the Ground they first stood on, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

Note, That during these Movements the Front Rank of each Squadron stands still.

IX. *Front and Center Ranks, rein back to Order, March.*

X. *Front and Center Ranks, rein back to Close Order, March.*

XI. *Front and Center Ranks, rein back to the Croop, March.*

The Rear Rank of each Squadron stands still, the Front and Center rein back to the several Distances, as are explain'd in the foregoing Articles, and to observe the Rules as in Explan. 6.

XII. *Front*

XII. *Front and Center Ranks, move forward to Close Order, March.*

XIII. *Front and Center Ranks, move forward to Order, March.*

XIV. *Front and Center Ranks, move forward to Open Order, March.*

The Front and Center Ranks are to move up to the several Distances, and to observe the Rules as in Explan. 3.

XV. *Center and Rear Ranks, move forward to Order, March.*

The same as in Explan. 3.

XVI. *Squadrons, to the Right open your Files, March.*

The Right-hand File of each Squadron is to pass to the Right very slow, and as soon as it is got to such a Distance from the second File that a Horse can come between them, the Second is to move the same Way, and so on 'till the whole is open'd. The Men of the Front Rank are to take particular Care in opening, to keep the above Distance, and those of the Center and Rear-Ranks are to keep directly in a Line with their File-Leaders, and the whole to take care that they don't advance or rein back, but pass in a strait Line to the Right.

XVII. *Halt.*

As soon as the Whole is open'd, the Major is to give the Word *Halt*, at which the Men are to stop their Horses, and to straiten their Ranks and Files.

XVIII. *To the Left close your Files, March.*

The Left-hand File of each Squadron stands fast, all the rest pass to the Left very slow; but they are not to close their Files, 'till the File on their Left stands; which will prevent the Horses treading upon each other, and make the Movement more regular and beautiful.

XIX. *To the Left open your Files, March.*

The Left-hand File of each Squadron passes to the Left, and the rest are to follow, as in Explan. 16.

A a

XX. *Halt.*

XX. *Halt.*

The Men are to stop the Horses, and to observe further as in Explan. 17.

XXI. *To the Right close your Files, March.*

The Right-hand File of each Squadron stands, the rest are to close by passage to the Right, and to observe the Rules as in Explan. 18.

XXII. *From the Center, to the Right and Left open your Files, March.*

The Right and Left-hand File of each Squadron passage to the Right and Left at the same time, keeping an equal, but slow Pace, (observing the Rules already given in opening) 'till the two Files in the Center are opened, and then the Major proceeds to the next Word of Command.

XXIII. *Holt.* As in Explan. 17.XXIV. *Close your Files to the Center, March.*

All the Files are to move at the same time, and close by passage to the Center of their Squadrons, and observe further as in Explan. 18.

XXV. *Ranks Countermarch to the Left, March.*

The Right-hand File of each Squadron moves directly forward about a Horse Length, before the Rank they stood in, that is, the Man in the Front Rank a Horse Length before that Rank, the Center Rank Man a Horse Length before the Center Rank, and the Rear Man a Horse Length before the Rear Rank, and then they passage in a direct Line to the Left; and as soon as that File begins to move, all the rest are to passage to the Right; and when the second File comes to the Ground where the first File stood, it is to move up as the first did, and passage to the Left, and so on, 'till the Whole is come up into the same Ranks, and then they all stand a little while and Rein back to the Ground the Ranks stood on before.

As

As Countermarching is a Movement extremely difficult, but if well perform'd, very beautiful, it will be necessary to give some further Rules for the doing it.

Countermarching by Ranks, is to bring the Right to the Left, and the Left to the Right; for the Performance of which, the Passage is to be done very flow, and to move in a direct Line, and each File to move up and passage together; and when the File that mov'd out first comes opposite to the Place where the Left Flank of the Squadron stood, it is to halt 'till the whole is done, and then the Squadrons are to rein back together to the Ground the Ranks stood on before. The File that leads (of each Squadron) should move in such a Manner as to come to the Ground where they are to stand, just as the Whole have done, that they may all halt together.

Note, That the Quarter-Masters are to be on the Flanks to mark out the Ground, which will be a great Help; but they are not to speak to the Men, only to place themselves on the Right and Left of the Front Rank, to direct them to move in a strait Line, and the Distance they are to move up and rein back to.

XXVI. *Ranks Countermarch to the Right, March.*

The Left-hand File of each Squadron (which are those that mov'd out before from the Right) move strait forward a Horse Length before the Ranks they stood in, and passage to the Right; the rest at the same time passage to the Left; and when each File comes to the Ground where the Left-hand File stood, they move forward and then passage to the Right, 'till the whole have done, and then rein back to their former Ground; and to observe further as explain'd in the foregoing Article. This brings the Squadrons to their former Position.

XXVII. *Ranks Countermarch to the Right, March.*

The Left-hand File moves out as already explain'd, and passages to the Right. Observe further in the foregoing Article.

XXVIII. *Ranks Countermarch to the Left, March.*

The Files that mov'd out from the Left, being now on the Right, move out again, and passage to the Left, The rest

A a z

to

to be observ'd as already explain'd in the 25th Article.

This reduces the Men to their first Position.

XXIX. *Ranks from the Right and Left, Countermarch to the Center, March.*

The Right and Left-hand Files of each Squadron move out, as before explain'd, and passage to the Right and Left inward; the rest divide in the Center, and passage to the Right and Left outward, and when they come to the Ground where the Flank Men stood, to move and passage to the Center, 'till the whole is done, and then the Squadrons rein back as is before explain'd. This brings the Flank Men into the Center, and the Center Men on the Flanks.

Note, The Flank Men that lead are to move very slow and observe each other, that they may keep an equal Pace, in order to join exactly in the Center; but not, if possible, 'till the Center Men are come to the Flanks, that they may all stop together.

XXX. *Ranks from the Center, Countermarch to the Right and Left, March.*

The two Files in the Center of each Squadron move out to their proper Distance, and divide by passage to the Right and Left outward; the rest close to the Center, and as they close, the next two Files move out together and passage to the Right and Left outward, 'till the whole are come to their former Places, and then rein back to their former Ground. The Files that lead are to move very slow, and not go beyond the Ground the Flank Men stood on.

XXXI. *Files to the Right double, March.*

The Second, Fourth, Sixth and every Even File of each Squadron, are to rein back in a strait Line, 'till they come to the Center of the Interval between each Rank, then to passage a little to the Right, and cover the Men that stood on their Right. This Movement brings each Squadron into six Ranks, or six deep, with their Files open.

Note, The Files are to rein back together very slow, looking to the Right and Left to keep a strait Rank, and then to passage to the Right together, taking care to be directly in a Line with their File-Leaders.

XXXII.

XXXII. *Files that doubled, to the Left form as you were, March.*

The Files that doubled, passage a little to the Left, to bring them opposite to their former Places, and then move into them pretty briskly ; but all at the same time.

XXXIII. *Files to the Left double, March.*

The First, Third, Fifth, and every odd File, rein back, and cover the Men that stood on the Left. See Explan. 31.

XXXIV. *Files that doubled, to the Right form as you were, March.*

The Files that doubled, passage a little to the Right, and then move into their former Places.

XXXV. *Second and Fourth Quarter-Ranks, to the Right double your Files, March.*

The Second and Fourth Quarter-Ranks of each Squadron rein back to the Center of the Intervals between the Ranks, and then passage to the Right, 'till the Right-hand File of the second Quarter-Rank comes opposite to the Right-hand File of the first Quarter-Rank ; and the Right-hand File of the fourth Quarter-Rank comes opposite to the Right-hand File of the third Quarter-Rank, and then halt, taking care to dress their Ranks and Files. This Movement must be done together, that they all may begin and finish at the same time. In the Passage they are not to open their Files, but keep as close as they can without treading on one another. This forms each Squadron into two Divisions, and each Division six deep.

XXXVI. *Quarter-Ranks that doubled, to the Left form as you were, March.*

The Quarter-Ranks that doubled, passage to the Left very slow, in a direct Line, and when they come opposite to their former Ground, or Intervals, they are to move up into their Places. Observe further as in the foregoing Article.

XXXVII. *First and Third Quarter-Ranks, to the Left double your Files, March.*

The First and Third Quarter-Ranks of each Squadron rein back and passage to the Left, and double the Second and Fourth Quarter-Ranks; observe further as in Explan. 35.

XXXVIII. *Quarter-Ranks that double, to the Right form as you were, March.*

The Quarter-Ranks that doubled, passage to the Right, and move up into their former Places, as in Explan. 36.

XXXIX. *Flank Quarter-Ranks, double your Files to the Center, March.*

The Flank Quarter-Ranks, or the First and Fourth of each Squadron, rein back (as in Explan. 35.) and passage to the Right and Left, inward, and join in the Center of the Squadron.

XL. *Quarter-Ranks that doubled, to the Right and Left form as you were, March.*

The Quarter-Ranks that doubled, passage to the Right and Left outward, 'till they are clear of the Center Quarter-Ranks, and then move into the former Places.

XLI. *Center Quarter-Ranks, to the Right and Left double your Files, March.*

The Center or Second and Third Quarter-Ranks of each Squadron rein back, and passage to the Right and Left outward, and double the First and Fourth Quarter-Ranks.

XLII. *Quarter-Ranks that doubled, form in the Center as you were, March.*

The Quarter-Ranks that doubled, passage to the Right and Left inward, and join in the Center of the Intervals, and then move up into their Places.

XLIII.

XLIII. *Half-Ranks, to the Right double your Files, March.*

The Left Half-Ranks of each Squadron rein back, as the Quarter-Ranks did, and passage to the Right in a strait Line, 'till they come to the Right Flank of those that stand, and then halt and cover their File-Leaders.

The same Rules that are given for the Quarter-Ranks will serve for Half-Ranks.

XLIV. *Half-Ranks that doubled, to the Left form as you were, March.*

The Half-Ranks that doubled, passage to the Left, 'till the Right-hand File comes opposite to the Left of those that stood, and then move up into their Places.

XLV. *Half-Ranks, to the Left double your Files, March.*

The Half-Ranks on the Right of each Squadron, rein back and passage to the Left, 'till the Left-hand File comes to the Left of those that Stand, and then Halt, taking care to cover their File-Leaders, and straiten their Ranks.

XLVI. *Half-Ranks that doubled, to the Right form as you were, March.*

The Half-Ranks that doubled, passage to the Right, 'till the Left-hand File comes to the Right of those that stood, and move into their Places.

XLVII. *Center and Rear-Ranks, move forward to Close Order, March.*

The Front-Rank of each Squadron Stands. The Center and Rear-Ranks March forward, and leave an Interval between the Ranks that only four Men can just wheel round.

XLVIII. *Ranks, to the Right wheel by Fours, March.*

The Right-hand Man of each Division, or Rank of Fours, is to keep his Horse's Fore-feet, as much as possible, on the same Ground he stood on; and as he finds the other three Men come about, he is to throw the Flank of his Horse to the Left.

Observe further, as in Article the 13th of *Rules and Observations*.

This Wheel is only a Quarter of the Circle.

XLIX. *Wheel to the Right, March.* L. *Wheel to the Right, March.* LI. *Wheel to the Right, March.*

Each of these is a Quarter of the Circle, and the Rules already given in Explanation 48, are to be observ'd in these and all other Wheelings to the Right by Ranks.

LII. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.* LIII. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

Each of these is half the Circle, and observe as in Explanation 48.

LIV. *Ranks to the Left wheel by Fours, March.*

The Left-hand Man of each Division or Rank of Fours, is to observe the same Rules as in Explanation 48, with this Difference only, that he is to throw his Horse's Flank to the Right, as the other did to the Left; and the whole to observe the General Rules in Wheeling, as explain'd in Article 13.

LV. *Wheel to the Left, March.* LVI. *Wheel to the Left March.* LVII. *Wheel to the Left, March.*

Each Movement is a Quarter of the Circle.

LVIII. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.* LIX. *Wheel to the Left about, March.*

Each Movement is half the Circle.

LX. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Order, March.*

The Center and Rear Ranks of each Squadron rein back to the Ground from whence they mov'd up last, leaving the Interval between the Ranks equal to the third of one Rank.

LXI. *Ranks by three Divisions, Wheel to the Right, March.*

Each Rank wheels by three Divisions, and the Right-hand Man of each Division is to observe the same Directions as are given in Explanation 48, and the Whole to observe further as in Article 13 of *Rules and Observations*.

This is a Quarter of the Circle.

LXII. *Wheel to the Right, March.* LXIII. *Wheel to the Right, March.* LXIV. *Wheel to the Right, March.*

Each Movement is a Quarter of the Circle.

LXV. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.* LXVI. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

Each of these is half the Circle.

LXVII. *Ranks by three Divisions, wheel to the Left, March.*

Each Rank wheels by three Divisions to the Left a Quarter of the Circle, and the Left-hand Man of each Division is to observe the same Directions as are given in Explanation 54, and the Whole to observe the Rules in Wheeling as set forth in Article 13 of *Rules, &c.*

LXVIII. *Wheel to the Left, March.* LXIX. *Wheel to the Left, March.* LXX. *Wheel to the Left, March.*

Each Movement is a Quarter of the Circle.

LXXI. *Wheel*

- LXXI. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.* LXXII. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.*

Each of these is half the Circle.

- LXXIII. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to open Order, March.*

The Center and Rear-Ranks of each Squadron rein back to open Order. The Intervals between the Ranks are to be equal to half the Front of one Squadron, that half of each Rank may just wheel round.

- LXXIV. *Ranks by two Divisions, wheel to the Right and Left Outward, March.*

Each Rank divides in the Center, and wheels to the Right and Left outward, by which each Squadron is brought into two Ranks, facing from one another.

The Flank-Men of each Rank are to observe the Rules as in Explanation 48, and the Whole to look to the Right and Left, as in Article 13 of *Rules and Observations*.

The two Center-Men of each Rank (being those that lead, or govern the Wheeling) are to move slow at first, till the Whole is in motion, and to increase it by degrees, till they come to a large Trot, but never to exceed. This is a Quarter of the Circle.

- LXXV. *Wheel to the Right and Left, March.*

By this Movement each Squadron is brought into two Divisions, facing to the Rear.

- LXXVI. *Wheel to the Right and Left Inward, March.*

This brings each Squadron into two Ranks, facing one another.

- LXXVII. *Wheel*

LXXVII. *Wheel to your proper Front, March.*

This bring them again into Squadron, and finishes the Circle.

LXXVIII. *Wheel to the Right and Left-about, March.*

Each Squadron is brought into two Divisions, with an Interval between them, facing to the Rear.

LXXIX. *Wheel to the Right and Left-about, March.*

This brings them into Squadron as before.

LXXX. *To the Right and Left wheel the Circle entire, March.*

As wheeling the Circle entire at one Wheel is difficult to be perform'd as it should, so the Men are to take care to close to the Hand they wheel to and to look to the Contrary, that each Rank may come about strait into the Ground it stood on before.

LXXXI. *Rear Ranks by four Divisions, to the Right and Left double your Front, March.*

The Rear-rank of each Squadron divides in four equal Parts or Divisions. The two on the Right wheel to the Right, and the two on the Left wheel to the Left, which forms them into two Divisions of two Ranks each, facing to the Right and Left outward.

The first Rank of each Division, as soon as they have made the first Wheel, is to wheel again to the Front, and march directly forward and join on the Right and Left, of the Front Rank; and at the same time that the Front Ranks of the said Divisions make the second Wheel, the Rear-ranks are to march directly Forward, 'till they come to the Ground where the Front Ranks wheel'd, and then they are to wheel towards the Front, and march forward, and form on the Right and Left of the Center-ranks.

This

This enlarges the Front of each Squadron one half, and forms them into two Ranks, or two Deep.

Care must be taken that they all wheel at the same time, and move up, and form on the Right and Left of each Squadron together.

This Wheeling must not be perform'd so quick as the other Wheelings, but yet with a Briskness.

LXXXII. *Rear Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Right and Left-about, and form as you were, March.*

The Rear-ranks that doubled, wheel to the Right and Left-about, and march directly to the Rear, only at a Walk, 'till they come even with the Ground they stood on before, and the two Ranks that lead, (which are those that were drawn up on the Right and Left of the Center Rank) wheel to the Right and Left inward, and march 'till the Flank Men come opposite to their File Leaders. The two other Ranks, when they come to the same Ground, wheel the same way, and march forward 'till they come even with the Flanks of the Squadrons, and then the Whole is to wheel up and form in a Rank entire, as before.

LXXXIII. *Rear Ranks by two Divisions, to the Right double your Front, March.*

The Rear-rank of each Squadron divides into two equal Parts, and wheels to the Right, which forms them into one Division of two Ranks each, facing to the Right. The first Rank of each Division wheels again to the Left, and marches forward and joins on the Right of the Front Rank: And the second Rank of each Division, as soon as the Front Ranks begin their second Wheel, marches strait forward, and wheels upon the same Ground the others did, and then marches up and forms on the Right of the Center Rank.

Both Ranks of each Division are to march and wheel in such a manner, that they form on the Right of their respective Squadrons at the same time.

LXXXIV. *Rear Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Right-about, and form as you were, March.*

The Rear-ranks that doubled wheel to the Right-about, and march directly to the Rear, 'till they come even with
the

the Right of the Ground they stood on before, and then wheel to the Right, and march towards the Left of the Squadrons, 'till the Right-hand Man of each Rank comes opposite to his File-Leader, and then they are all to wheel to the Right, and form in a Rank, as before.

LXXXV. *Rear Ranks by two Divisions, to the Left double your Front, March.*

The Rear-rank of each Squadron wheels by two Divisions to the Left, and forms on the Left of each Squadron, as they did before on the Right.

LXXXVI. *Rear Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Left-about and form as you were, March.*

The Rear-ranks that doubled, wheel to the Left-about, and form on their own Ground, as in Explan. 84. with this Difference only, that all their Wheelings are to the Left, as the others are to the Right.

LXXXVII. *Rear Ranks by two Divisions, double your Front in the Center, March.*

The Division on the Right of the Rear-rank of each Squadron is to move forward a Horse Length before the Division on the Left, and then Passage to the Left; the Divisions on the Left that stood, are at the same time to Passage to the Right, 'till their Left Flanks come opposite to each other, and then Halt 'till they can move up in the Center of each Squadron.

As soon as the Rear-ranks begin to move, each Squadron is to divide in the Center, and Passage to the Right and Left outward, and when the Interval in the Center is large enough to contain the Rear-rank, they are to Halt, and the Rear-ranks are to move up, and join the Front and Center-Ranks.

All the above Movements are to be perform'd together, for by the time that the Squadrons have open'd from the Center, the Rear-ranks of each will be form'd two Deep, and ready to move up, which they are to do, as soon as the Intervals will allow of it.

LXXXVIII. *Rear*

LXXXVIII. *Rear Ranks that doubled, rein back and form as you were, March.*

The Rear-ranks that doubled, are to rein back to the Ground from whence they mov'd up, and then Passage to the Right and Left outward. As soon as the Divisions on the Left come to the Ground they stood on at first, they are to Halt, and when the Right-hand Men of the Divisions on the Right come opposite to their File Leaders, they are to make a small Halt, and then all the Divisions on the Right are to rein back and dress in a Line with those on the Left. As soon as the Rear-ranks have rein'd back, the Squadrons are to Passage to, and close in the Center.

LXXXIX, *Officers, take your Posts on the Front of your Squadrons, March.*

The Officers are to march in a direct Line, 'till they come within a Horse Length of the Front Rank of Men, and then stand. The Kettle Drummer and Trumpets march likewise. and when they come to the Ground they stood on before, they stand also.

XC. *Halt.*

At this Word of Command, the Officers of the Squadron on the Right, face to the Right-about, and those of the Squadron on the Left to the Left-about; the Officers of the Center Squadron face to the Right and Left-about inward thus: half on the Right, to the Right-about, and the half on the Left, to the Left-about.

The Trumpets of the Right and Center Squadrons face to the Right-about, and those of the Left-Squadron to the Left-about.

XCI. *Center and Rear Ranks, close to the Croop, March.*

The Center and Rear-ranks of each Squadron close forward as close as they can, and the Commission Officers at the same time rein back close to the Front Rank, and the Quarter-Masters move up close to the Rear. The Cornets that carry the Standards are, if a General Officer be present,
to

to fall in between the Center Men of the Front Rank of each Squadron, but if not, they are to give the Standards to the Center Man of the Front Rank of each Squadron.

As the next Word of Command is to wheel by Division, before you proceed to it, the Officers are to be divided equally upon the several Divisions you intend to wheel by, thus; if by four Divisions, they are to be divided into four equal Parts; if by three Divisions, into three Parts; and if by two Divisions, into two Parts. The Quarter-Masters are likewise to be divided on the Rear of the several Divisions.

XCII. *Squadrons by three Divisions wheel to the Right, March.*

As wheeling by Divisions is already explain'd in the 13th Article of *Rules and Observations*, I will refer you to that.

The Officers are to wheel on the Front of their several Divisions, and a Quarter-Master in the Rear of each.

This Movement brings each Squadron into three distinct Bodies, or Divisions, all facing to the Right.

XCIII. *Wheel to the Right, March.*

This brings them into Squadron, all facing to the Rear.

XCIV. *Wheel to the Right, March.*

Each Squadron by this Movement is brought into three distinct Bodies, or Divisions, facing to the Left.

XCV. *Wheel to the Right March.*

This compleats the Circle to the Right, and brings each Squadron into its first Position.

XCVI. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

XCVII. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

This compleats the Circle to the Right at twice, each being half.

XCVIII. *Squa-*

XCVIII. *Squadrons by three Divisions, wheel to the Left, March.* XCIX. *Wheel to the Left, March.* C. *Wheel to the Left, March.* CI. *Wheel to the Left, March.*

Each of these is a Quarter of the Circle.

Observe the Rules as are already given in Explan. 92. and in the 13th Article of *Rules and Observations*.

CII. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.* CIII. *Wheel the Left-about, March.*

Each of these is half the Circle.

CIV. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Order, March.*

At this Word of Command the Commission Officers are to move forward in their proper Distance, and the Center and Rear-ranks are to rein back to Order. The Quarter-Masters are also to rein back to their proper Distance.

If the Cornets carry the Standards as before-mention'd, they are to remain in the Center of the Front-Rank of Men; but if they do not, they are to move up, and dress in the Rank of Officers.

CV. *Squadrons, move to the Right, March.*

The Squadrons are to Passage to the Right without opening their Files, and the Officers are to Passage with them, taking care to keep their Distances equally divided between them; and when the Left of each Squadron comes to the Ground where the Right stood, the following Word of Command is to be given.

CVI. *Halt.*

They are then to stand.

CVII. *Squadrons, move to the Left, March.*

The Squadrons are to Passage to the Left, without opening their Files, until they come to their former Ground, and then the Major proceeds to the next Word of Command.

CVIII. *Halt.*

CVIII. *Halt.*

They all stand.

CIX. *Squadrons, to the Right wheel, March.*

As the wheeling in Squadron is more difficult (particularly when the Ranks are open'd to Order) than by Division, the Men must observe with great Exactness the Directions that are given in the 13th Article of *Rules and Observations*.

The Beauty of wheeling consists in keeping the Ranks even, neither to close nor open the Distances between 'em, and the Men to keep opposite to their File-Leaders. For this end the Front-rank must move at an easy Trot, that the Center and Rear-ranks may not gallop, the Circumference they make being larger than that of the Front. The Officers are to wheel with the Squadrons.

This is a Quarter of the Circle.

CX. *To the Right wheel, March.* CXI. *To the Right wheel, March.* CXII. *To the Right wheel, March.*

These three Movements bring them to their former Ground.

CXIII. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.* CXIV. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

Each of these is half the Circle.

CXV. *Squadrons, to the Left wheel, March.* CXVI. *To the Left wheel, March.* CXVII. *To the Left wheel, March.* CXVIII. *To the Left wheel, March.*

Each is a quarter of the Circle.

CXIX. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.* CXX. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.*

Each is half the Circle.

CXXI. *Squadrons, to the Right wheel the Circle entire, March.*

The Squadrons are to wheel to the Right quite round, till they come to their proper Front.

CXXII. *Squadrons, to the Left wheel the Circle entire, March.*

They are to wheel to the Left quite round, till they come to their former Ground.

CXXIII. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Open Order, March:*

As in Explan. 8. of the *Evolutions*.

CXXIV. *Join your Right Hands to your Swords.*

As in Explan. 10. of the *Manual on Horseback*.

CXXV. *Draw your Swords.*

As in Explan. 11. of the *Manual on Horseback*.

The End of the Evolutions.

ARTICLE II.

The Words of Command for Dismounting, Linking the Horses, Forming into Battalion, and Exercising on Foot; as also Reducing them into their several Squadrons, returning to, and unlinking their Horses, mounting, and returning their Carbines, with an Explanation of those things that have not yet been treated of, or appear'd in Print.

When the Regiment is to dismount and exercise on Foot, you are to proceed in the following Manner, immediately after the 35th Word of Command in the Manual on Horseback.

I. Files to the Right, double, March.

This is to be perform'd as in Explanation 31 of the Evolutions on Horseback.

II. Make ready your Links.

As there are several Sorts of Links, there cannot be one Method prescrib'd for the whole; but as most Regiments link with Collars, I will proceed on that way, and give Directions accordingly.

The Collar being fasten'd by a running Knot to a Ring in the Saddle, a little above the Right Holster, the Men are to undo the Knot with the Right-hand, taking the Rein of the Collar out of the Ring, and laying it cross the Horse's Neck.

III. Handle your Carbines.

This is done as in Explanation 13 of the Manual Exercise on Horseback.

IV. Advance your Carbines.

As in Explanation 14 of the Manual on Horseback.

V. *Poize your Carbines.*

This is perform'd as in the Foot Exercise; only with this Difference, that you bring with the Right-hand at once to the Poize from the fore-mention'd Position.

VI. *Hang your Carbines over your Left-Shoulders.*
2 Motions.

First, place your Carbine on the Left-Shoulder, holding it between the Guard and Butt-End with the Right-hand, the Barrel upward, and the Butt higher than the Muzzle. Second, quit your Carbine, and bring your Right-hand down to its proper Place.

VII. *Quit your Right Stirrups.* 3 Motions.

First, take your Right Foot out of the Stirrup, at the same time thrusting forward your Bridle-hand, and keeping the Reins fast. 2. Take a Lock of the Horse's Mane with the Right-hand, and place it in the Left, over the Bridle, and grasp it fast with the Left-hand. 3. Take hold with the Right-hand of the right Burr of the Saddle, placing your Fingers on the Inside and your Thumb on the Out. The Officers are to do the same.

VIII. *Dismount.* 3 Motions.

As this is Part of what the Men are taught in Riding, it will not be necessary to mention all the Particulars; only as it is to be done at three Motions, the Men must perform each of them distinctly. First, by raising themselves with the Right-hand above the Saddle, and bringing the Right Leg over to the Near, or Left Side of the Horse, with an upright Body, and looking full to the Right. 2. They come to the Ground with the Right Foot, facing full to the Rear. and then quit the Stirrup with the Left, bringing it down to the Ground, and placing it even with the other. 3. They are to quit the Bridle and Mane with the Left-hand, turning at the same time to the Left-about on the Right Heel, and taking hold of the Left-cheek of the Bridle with the Right-hand.

The

The Officers are to do the same, and their Servants are to take their Horses from the Front of the Squadrons.

IX. *Files that doubled, move into your Places. March.*

This is done as in Explanation 32 of the Evolutions, by the Men leading their Horses into their former Places.

X. *Link your Horses to the Right.*

The Men face to the Right-about on the Left Heel, and give the Reins of their Collars to their Right-hand Men, who are to fasten them to the Left-cheek of their Horses Bridles, and remain facing to the Rear 'till the following Word of Command.

Note, That three Men of each Rank, which are commonly those of the Flanks and Center, are to remain with the Horses, to take care of them during the time the rest are exercising; as also one Quarter-Master of a Squadron. And though these Men remain'd formerly on Horse-back, yet it is evident they are more useful on Foot; but this may be done either way, as the commanding Officer shall think fit. One Trumpet of a Squadron must remain on Horse back, to hold the Horses of the other two Trumpets.

XI. *Face to the Left-about.*

All the Men, except those that are appointed to remain with the Horses, face to the Left-about upon the Right-heel; and the Officers at the same time, unless they have Fuzees, are to draw their Swords and rest them on their Left Arms, dividing themselves equally on the Front of their Squadrons, in the same manner as they did on Horseback, the Cornets carrying the Standards.

Note, The Cornets are to carry the Standards in the same manner as the Ensigns of Foot do the Colours, by advancing them in marching by the General, or other Forms and Ceremonies, saluting as they do, and planting them on their Right, during the Exercise, &c.

XII. *March.*

The Officers and Men (the Cornets advancing the Standards) march strait forward, and when they have march'd

four Paces, the following Word of Command is to be given.

Note, That in all Marching to the Front, the Men begin with their Left Feet.

XIII. *Halt.*

They are to stand, and immediately straiten their Ranks.

XIV. *Shoulder your Carbines.* 2 Motions.

First, seize the Carbine on the upper Part of the Butt with the Left-hand. 2. Bring it to your Shoulder, as is explain'd in the Foot-Exercise.

XV. *Unspring your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

Take hold of the Swivel with your Right-hand, placing your Thumb on the Spring, and pressing it down at the same time, take it out of the Ring, and keep your Elbow square.

XVI. *Return your Swivels.* 1 Motion.

Bring down the Swivel briskly with the Right-hand to the Right-side, and quit it.

XVII. *Squadrons, face to the Right.*

The Officers and Men face to the Right on the Left Heel.

XVIII. *March.*

They all begin their March at the same time with their Left Feet, moving very slow; and when the Left of each Squadron is two Paces beyond the Right of their Horses, the following Word of Command is to be given.

XIX. *Halt.*

They all face to the Left on the Left Heel, and immediately straiten their Ranks.

XX. *Center*

XX. *Center and Rear-Ranks, close forward to your proper Distance, March.*

The Center and Rear-Ranks of each Squadron march forward, 'till they come within four Paces of each other, and then halt. After this the Files are to be compleated, and the Ranks dress'd. Then the Major proceeds.

Squadrons have a care to March forward.

At this the Cornets advance the Standards.

XXI. *March.*

The three Squadrons march strait forward, keeping in a Line, taking care not to open or close their Ranks and Files, and covering their File-Leaders; and when they are advanc'd to a proper Distance from the Horses, the following Word of Command is to be given.

XXII. *Halt.*

At this they all stand, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files. The Cornets plant their Standards on their Right, as the Ensigns do the Colours.

XXIII. *To the Left, open your Files.*

All Face to the Left, on the Right Heel, and the Cornets advance the Standards.

XXIV. *March.*

The Left-hand File of each Squadron begins at the same time with the Right Feet, and marches very slow. The rest of the Files are to move as soon as the Files before them are at a proper Distance; and when the whole is open'd, and the three Squadrons join'd in Battalion, the next Word of Command is to be given.

The particular Directions for this will be seen more at large in the Foot-Exercise.

XXV. *Halt.*

They are to face to the Right on the Right-heel. The Men of the Front-Rank are immediately to divide their Ground equally between them; and those of the Center and Rear are to govern themselves by the Front, and cover their File-Leaders, and the whole to straiten their Ranks, which the Adjutant and Quarter-Masters are to see perform'd, and then return to their Posts.

XXVI. *Officers, take your Posts on the Front of the Battalion.*

Until the Word of Command is given, the Officers are to remain with their respective Squadrons; but then they are to take their Posts on the Head of the Battalion by Seniority of Commission, as they do in the Foot, the eldest on the Right, the next on the Left, and so on 'till the Cornets with the Standards come in the Center.

They are then to divide the Ground equally between them, and to dress in one Rank.

The Quarter-Masters are to take their Posts in the Rear, in the same manner.

The Trumpets are to be divided on the Right, Left, and Center, as the Drummers are in the Foot, but the Kettle-Drummer remains on Horse-back with the Squadrons.

XXVII. *Officers, take your Posts of Exercise in the Rear of the Battalion.*

The Officers face to the Right-about on the Right-heel, and the Cornets advance the Standards. Half the Quarter-Masters on the Right, face to the Right on the Right-heel, and the other half face to the Left on the Left-heel, and all remain in this Position 'till the next Word of Command.

Note, The Colonel, or Officer commanding the Regiment in his Absence, is not to face with the Officers, but remain facing to the Front; as also the Trumpets in the Center; but those on the Flanks face with the Officers.

XXVIII. *March.*

The Colonel, or Commanding Officer, marches strait forward, and places himself by the General during the Exercise;

cise; the other Officers march through the Ranks, beginning with the Right Feet, and keeping in Line, 'till they get six Paces beyond the Rear-Rank, and then stand; but the Lieutenant-Colonel is to march two Paces beyond the Officers.

The Quarter-Masters are to march pretty quick, and place themselves on the Right and Left of each Rank. The Trumpets on the Right and Left are to march to the Rear, and when they come two Paces beyond the Rear-Rank, they are to stand. Those in the Center are to march strait forward, and place themselves in the Rear of the Major, or Officer that exercises the Regiment.

XXIX. *Halt.*

The Lieutenant-Colonel, and the rest of the Officers in the Rear, as also the Trumpets of the Right and Left, face to the Right-about on the Right-heel, and remain in that Position during the Exercise, the Cornets planting the Standards on the Right.

XXX. *Have a Care.* 2 Motions.

First, Bring your Right-hand briskly to your Hat, turning the Palm outward. 2. Bring it down on the Cartridge Box or Pouch with Life.

Note, The Foot-Exercise being already explain'd, it will be unnecessary to insert it here; I therefore refer you to the Account of it, both for the Manner of performing each Motion, and the proper Time between them.

XXXI. *Join your Right-hands to your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

XXXII. *Poize your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

XXXIII. *Join your Left-hands to your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

XXXIV. *Cock your Carbines.* 3 Motions.

XXXV. *Present.* 1 Motion.

XXXVI. *Fire.* 1 Motion.

XXXVII. *Recover your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

XXXVIII. *Half-cock your Carbines.* 3 Motions.

XXXIX. *Handle your Primers.* 3 Motions.

XL. *Prime.* 3 Motions.

XLI. *Shut your Pans.* 3 Motions.

XLII. *Cast*

- XLII. *Cast about to Charge.* 2 Motions.
- XLIII. *Handle your Cartridges.* 3 Motions.
- XLIV. *Open your Cartridges.* 2 Motions.
- XLV. *Charge with Cartridge.* 2 Motions.
- XLVI. *Draw your Rammers.* 4 Motions.
- XLVII. *Shorten your Rammers.* 3 Motions.
- XLVIII. *Put them in the Barrels.* 6 Motions.
- XLIX. *Ram down your Charge.* 2 Motions.
- L. *Withdraw your Rammers.* 3 Motions.
- LI. *Shorten your Rammers.* 3 Motions.
- LII. *Return your Rammers.* 6 Motions.
- LIII. *Your Right-hands under the Locks.* 5 Motions.
- LIV. *Poize your Carbines.* 1 Motion.
- LV. *Shoulder your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
- LVI. *Rest your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
- LVII. *Order your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
- LVIII. *Lay down your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
- LIX. *Take up your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
- LX. *Rest your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
- LXI. *Club your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
- LXII. *Rest your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
- LXIII. *Shoulder your Carbines.* 4 Motions.

Extraordinary Words of Command.

- LXIV. *Rest your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
- LXV. *Reverse your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
- LXVI. *Rest your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
- LXVII. *Rest your Carbines on your Left Arms.* 2 Motions.
- LXVIII. *Recover your Carbines.* 2 Motions.
- LXIX. *Rest on your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
- LXX. *Poize your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
- LXXI. *Secure your Carbines.* 2 Motions.
- LXXII. *Poize your Carbines.* 2 Motions.
- LXXIII. *Shoulder your Carbines.* 3 Motions.

LXXIV.

LXXIV. *Officers, take your Posts in the Front.*

At this the Cornets advance the Standards, and the Quarter-Masters on the Flanks face to the Right and Left-about. Those on the Right to the Right-about, and those on the Left to the Left-about, and all wait for the following Word of Command.

LXXV. *March.*

The Commission-Officers march strait forward, and place themselves on the Front of the Battalion as before; and the Quarter-Masters post themselves in the Rear.

The Trumpets remain in the Rear and Front, 'till the Officers are order'd to their several Squadrons.

LXXVI. *To the Front present your Arms.* 3 Motions.LXXVII. *Face to the Right.* 3 Motions.

This is perform'd at three Motions as in the Foot, *viz.* Recover the Arms, Face a Quarter of the Circle to the Right, and then come to the Rest. The Commission-Officers, Quarter-Masters, and Trumpets in the Rear, face with the Battalion, and are to perform it at the second Motion, which is when the Men Face.

LXXVIII. *Face to the Right.* 3 Motions.LXXIX. *Face to the Right.* 3 Motions.LXXX. *Face to the Right.* 3 Motions.LXXXI. *Face to the Right-about.* 3 Motions.LXXXII. *To the Left-about as you were.* 3 Motions.LXXXIII. *Face to the Left.* 3 Motions.LXXXIV. *Face to the Left.* 3 Motions.LXXXV. *Face to the Left.* 3 Motions.

LXXXVI.

LXXXVI. *Face to the Left.* 3 Motions.

LXXXVII. *Face to the Left-about.* 3 Motions.

LXXXVIII. *To the Right-about as you were.* 3 Motions.

LXXXIX. *Shoulder your Carbines.* 4 Motions.

XC. *Officers to your several Squadrons.*

The Commission-Officers and Quarter-Masters face to the Right and Left, as the Squadrons they belong to are posted, and remain so 'till the following Word of Command. The Cornets are to advance the Standards.

XCI. *March.*

The Commission-Officers and Quarter-Masters march to their several Squadrons, and post themselves on the Front and Rear, as before by Seniority.

The Trumpets also march to their respective Squadrons; the Trumpets of the Right Squadron post themselves on the Right of it in a Line with the Front-Rank; those of the Left Squadron on the Left; and those of the Center Squadron are to post themselves in the Rear of the Cornet with the Standard.

XCII. *To the Right close your Files.*

All face to the Right on the Left-heel.

XCIII. *March.*

They all begin at the same time with the Left-feet, marching very slow, and when the Right-hand File of each Squadron comes to the Ground they stood on before they open'd, they are to stand, and the rest are to march on and close to them; by which each Squadron will be opposite to the Interval on the Right of their Horses.

XCIV.

XCIV. *Halt.*

They all face to the Left on the left Heel, and the Trumpets of the Center Squadron post themselves on the Right of it.

XCV. *Squadrons, face to the Right-about.*

They all face to the Right-about on the left Heel.

XCVI. *March.*

They all begin with the Left Feet, and march very slow, till each Rank comes within four Paces of the Right of their Horses, and then stand facing to the Rear.

XCVII. *Squadrons, face to the Right.*

They all face to the Right on the right Heel.

XCVIII. *March.*

They all begin at the same time with the Right Feet, and march in a strait Line, till every Man comes opposite to his own Horse, and then stand facing to the Left of the Squadrons.

XCIX. *Squadrons, face to the Right.*

They face to the Right on the right Heel.

C. *Handle your Swivels. 2 Motions.*

This is done as in Explan. 7. of the Manual on Horseback, only with this difference, that this is to be perform'd with the Right-hand as that is with the Left, and the right Elbow kept square.

CI. *Spring your Carbines. 2 Motions.*

This is done as is explain'd by the first and third Motions of Explan. 8. of the Manual on Horseback.

CII. *Face*

CII. *Face to the Right-about.*

The Officers and Men face to the Right-about on the left Heel.

CIII. *Quit your Carbines.* 2 Motions.

First, Thrust your Carbine back with the Left-hand till the Guard is behind the Shoulder, and raise the Butt higher than the Muzzle. 2. Quit your Carbine with your Left-hand, letting it hang over the left Shoulder by the Swivel, and bring your Hand to its proper Place.

At this Word of Command the Officers return their Swords, and their Servants bring their Horses to the Head of the Squadrons.

CIV. *March to your Horses.*

The Men march to their Horses, placing themselves on the Near or Left Side, and facing full to the Rear.

CV. *Unlink your Horses.*

The Men unfasten their Collars, and throw them over the right Side of the Horse's Neck, and take hold of the left Cheek of their Horse's Bridle with the Left-hand, still facing to the Rear.

CVI. *Files to the Right double, March.*

Every even File reins back, as in Explan. 31. of the Evolutions.

CVII. *Face to the Left-about.*

They all face to the Left-about on the right Heel, taking hold of the left Cheek of the Bridle with the Right-hand, and the Officers to place themselves on the near Side of their Horses.

The Colonel, or commanding Officer, at this quits the General, and returns to the Regiment, in order to Mount when they do.

CVIII. *Shorten*

CVIII. *Shorten your Bridles.*

The Officers and Men face to the Right-about on the Left Heel, taking hold of the Reins of their Bridles with their Left-hands, and shortning them to a proper Length, and with the Right-hand they take Part of the Horse's Mane and place it in the Left upon the Bridle, facing full to the Rear.

CIX. *Your Left Feet in the Stirrups.* 2 Motions.

First take hold of the Stirrup with the Right-hand, and place the Left Foot in it. 2. Come to the Left Side of the Horse with a Hop, and take hold of the Cantle, or hind Part of the Saddle, with the Right-hand, the Left Knee touching the Horse's Side, and looking full to the Right of the Squadron.

The Officers are to do the same.

CX. *Mount.* 2 Motions.

As this is Part of Riding, I will not explain it at large; only first, the Men raise themselves upright in the Stirrups. 2. They bring the Right Leg over the Horse, placing themselves in the Saddle, and putting the Foot in the Stirrup. Then dress their Ranks and Files.

CXI. *Shoulder your Carbines.*

As is explain'd in Explan. 14.

CXII. *Unspring your Carbines.*

As in Explan. 15.

CXIII. *Return your Swivels.*

As in Explan. 16.

CXIV. *Poize your Carbines.*

This is done as in the Foot-Exercise, by joining your Right-hand to your Carbine, and poizing it.

CXV. *Return*

CXV. *Return your Carbines.*

As in Explan. 40. of the Manual on Horse.

CXVI. *Return your Links.*

They are to take the Reins of the Collars and fasten them by a running Knot to the Ring above the right Holster.

CXVII. *Files that doubled, move into your Places, March.*

This is done as in Explan. 32. of the Evolutions.

The Cornets with the Standards are to rein back into the Front-Rank, and the Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets to post themselves as before.

The End of the Exercise.

ARTICLE V.

As this Exercise is calculated for the dismounting and forming into Battalion a Regiment consisting of three Squadrons, it will be proper to give some Directions how a Regiment of two Squadrons is to perform it.

Before you proceed to the necessary Motions for dismounting, the two Squadrons are to be open'd to a greater Distance than usual, that the Interval between them may be sufficient to contain the Men of the two Squadrons when dismounted, at close Order.

When the Men are dismounted, the Carbines shoulder'd, and the Swivels return'd, they are to face to the Right and Left inward, and then march and join in the Center of the Interval, and to face to their proper Front. After which, the Center and Rear-Ranks are to be closed forward to their proper Distance, the Files compleated, and the Officers to take their Posts by Seniority at the Head of the Battalion. This being done, the Regiment is to march forward, to a proper Distance from the Horses, and halt. Then the Files to be open'd from the Center, the Officers to take their Posts in the Rear, and proceed to the Foot-Exercise.

As

As soon as the Foot Exercise is over, the Files are to be clos'd to the Center, and then faced to their proper Front; the Officers order'd to their several Squadrons, and the Battalion to face to the Right-about and march to the Interval; and when each Rank comes within four Paces of the Heads of their Horses, they are to stand; then they are to face to the Right and Left outward and march to their Horses, as is explain'd in the foregoing Exercise.

When the Men are mounted, the Carbines and Links returned, and the Files moved into their Places, the Squadrons are to close the Interval to its proper Distance, and then to proceed to the Evolutions.

A R T I C L E VI.

Rules for the Reception of a General Officer, who comes to Review the Regiment, or see the Exercise perform'd.

When the General comes in View, the Field-Officers are to post themselves on the Front of their Squadrons, a Horse Length before the Rank of Officers, in a direct Line with the Standards. The Colonel on the Right, the Lieutenant-Colonel on the Left Squadron, and the Major on the Center: But if the Regiment consists only of two Squadrons, the Major is to post himself a little to the Left of the Colonel on the First Squadron, and about half a Horse Length further back. The Cornets are at the same time to take the Standards and to fall into the Center of the Front Rank and dress with the Men, unless they are to Salute, and then they are to be half a Horse Length before them, for the easier performing it.

As soon as the General comes near the Right Flank of the first Squadron, the Colonel is to order the Swords to be drawn, at which time the Trumpets are to sound a March, and as the General passes along the Front, the Officers are to salute him with their Swords. If he is to be saluted with the Standard, the Cornet is to do it, when the Colonel or Commanding Officer of the Squadron salutes, and to keep it down 'till he is past him.

When he approaches the Center Squadron, it is to do the same as the First, and so with the Left Squadron, they being not to draw their Swords or sound a March 'till he comes near them, each Squadron being then a distinct Body.

When the General has review'd them Standing, it is usual, if Time permits, to see the Exercise perform'd ; after which to review them Marching, either by entire Squadrons, single Troops, by Fours, or by Ranking off singly, as he shall be pleas'd to order.

If by entire Squadrons (as soon as the General has taken his Place) the Center and Rear-ranks are to move up to Order, and the Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets are to place themselves in the Front of the Colonel, or Officer commanding the Squadron, and to march in that Order by the General, leaving but two or three Paces between the Right Flank of the Squadron and him. When the Commanding Officer comes within a proper Distance of the General, he is to salute him ; and when the Rank of Officers comes upon the same Ground, they are to salute together ; as is also the Cornet with the Standard (if order'd to salute) when he comes to the same Place. When the Squadrons have pass'd the General, they are to wheel and march back and draw up on their former Ground.

If by single Troops, the Ranks are to close to Order, the Officers and Trumpets order'd to their Troops, and the Standards to the Center of the Front Rank of the eldest Troop in each Squadron. When this is done, they are to march in Squadron, 'till they come within twenty or thirty Paces of the General, and then the Troops on the Left and Center halt, but the Troop on the Right marches on, and the other Troops (as soon as it is pass'd them) pass to the Right, 'till they come to the same Ground, and then march forward, keeping directly in the Rear of one another. In this Position the Captain is to be in the Center, the Lieutenant on his Right, and the Cornet on his Left ; but the Captain half a Horse Length before them. In those Troops that have the Standards, the Cornets are to remain in the Front Rank of Men and march and dress with them, unless they are to salute, and then they are to be half a Horse Length advanc'd before them, for the Conveniency of performing it. In this Case the Lieutenant is to be on the Left of the Captain, but not so far advanc'd. The Trumpets are to march before the Captains, and the Quarter-Masters in the Rear of the Troops.

If they are to march thus by the General, the Officers are to salute together ; but as it is more usual when they are in single Troops, to rank off singly, I will set down the Directions accordingly.

The

The Squadrons being reduc'd into Troops, as soon as the First Troop comes within ten Paces of the General, it is to halt, but the Trumpets keep moving on, and the Captain follows, then the Lieutenant and next the Cornet (unless he carries the Standard, and then he remains in the Front Rank, 'till the Men on his Right are march'd off before him) then the Right-hand Man of the Front Rank follows him, and the rest of that Rank passages to the Right, and when the Men come upon the Ground where the Right-hand Man stood, they are to move out and march directly in the Rear of one another. When the Front Rank is march'd off, the Center moves up into their Ground and marches off singly as the First did, and the Rear Rank moves up at the same time to the Ground on which the Center Rank stood, and then halt, 'till that Rank is march'd off, and then it moves up and Ranks off singly, as the others.

The other Troops are to pass by the General in the same Manner, and not rank off 'till they come upon the same Ground.

When the Men have got about twenty Paces beyond the General, they are to Rank up, and the Troop is to march about twenty Paces more, when it is to halt, 'till the other Troops join; and when the Squadron is again form'd, it is to march and draw up on the former Ground.

The other Squadrons are to follow the same Directions.

When the Squadrons are to march by Fours, the Ranks are to be clos'd to Order, and the Officers order'd to the Front of the First four Men on the Right, the Captains placing themselves by Seniority in one Rank, the Lieutenants in another in the Rear of the Captains, and the Cornets in the Rear of the Lieutenants, (except the Cornet that carries the Standard, who remains in the Front Rank of Men, and is to march in the Center of the Rank of Fours he then is plac'd in) and the Quarter-Masters to march in the Rear of their respective Squadrons. The Commanding Officer of each Squadron is to march before the Captains, and the Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets before him. All things being thus dispos'd, the Commanding Officer is to give the Word, *March*, at which the Officers and first four Men on the Right of the Front Rank are to march strait forward, and the rest of the Front Rank are to wheel to the Right by Fours, and March 'till they come to the Ground where the first Rank of Fours stood, and then wheel to the Left, taking care to keep their proper Distance and to cover the Rank before them.

As

As soon as the last four Men of the Front Rank are come to the Ground where the Right stood, the Center Rank is to move up to the Ground of the Front Rank, and the Rear Rank up to the Ground of the Center, and then halt 'till the Center Rank is march'd off, which they are to do in the same Manner as the Front Rank did. The same Rule is to be observ'd by the Rear Rank as soon as the Center is march'd off.

Each Rank of Officers is to salute as they come on the Ground, where the Commanding-Officer saluted.

When they are got to a proper Distance beyond the General they should then form into a Squadron, either by ranking up, or each Rank forming at once a Rank entire to the Left.

Ranking up, is when the Second Rank of Fours draws up on the Left of the First, the Third on the Left of the Second, and so on through those of the Front Rank. The First Rank of Fours of the Center Rank draws up in the Rear of the Right of the Front Rank, leaving a proper Interval between them, and the rest of that Rank draws up on their Left, as those of the Front Rank did. The Rear Rank observes the same Rules in drawing up in the Rear of the Center, as the Center did in regard to the Front Rank. As they are drawing up, the Officers are to divide themselves on the Front of the Squadron.

If you would form each Rank into a Rank entire at once, you must order all Ranks of Fours of the Front Rank to wheel at once to the Left, which forms them into a Rank entire, and consequently forms the Front of the Squadron. As soon as that is done, the Officers are immediately to divide themselves on the Front, and to march forward; that the Center Rank may march in the Rear of the Front and form a Rank entire, which it is to do when the first Four come near the Right of the Front Rank, without any Word of Command, and then march forward that the Rear Rank may do the same. After this the Squadrons are to draw up on their former Ground with their Ranks at Open Order, and to keep their Swords drawn 'till the General quits the Field.

F I N I S.

21 NO 67

